**HINDUISM, SIKHISM AND ISLAM: ARE THESE GOD’S RELIGIONS**

By

HARMANJIT SINGH SAINI

(Website: www.ChurchOfGodMessage.com)

February 25, 2019

Member of the United Church of God

P.O. Box 541027

Cincinnati, OH 45254-1027

USA

Church Web site: www.ucg.org

PH : 1-888-886-8632 (USA) OR 1-513-576-9796 (WORLDWIDE)

[Unless otherwise stated, the King James Version (KJV) of the Bible has been for reference, but common modern words such as you for ‘thou’, ‘thee’ and ‘ye’ have been used, so that readers not familiar with the KJV Bible may find it easier to read. Mostly the New King James Version (NKJV) translation has been used as an alternate]

The world has many religions. Only five are based on the existence of a supreme Creator God while others are not. In Hinduism, Krishna claims that he is the supreme creator and sustainer of the universe. But it acknowledges the existence of other gods and demi-gods. Sikhism claims that there is only one supreme God, and all others are His creation. Allah of Islam claims that he is the only God and there is none other. Is the supreme God in all these religions the same God?

There are vast differences in these three religions. Each of them has different holy books as their scripture which do not resemble each other in any way. This leads one to suspect that the claimed supreme God in each of these religions is not the same true Almighty God. Which one of these is the true religion, if any? If anyone of them is the true religion, that its holy book should be the word of God.

How do we evaluate whether the holy book of a religion is the word of God? The only fool proof criterion is demonstration of the almighty power of God in the pages of the holy book. God’s almighty power can only be demonstrated by God foretelling numerous events and demonstrating His power to bring about those events precisely as foretold.

A second way to determine that the holy book is NOT the word of God is to determine if it contains unrealistic tales, too fantastic to be believed. The third way to reject the divine inspiration of a holy book is if it contains scientific or historical errors.

We will use these three criteria in this book to determine whether the holy books of Hinduism, Sikhism and Islam are God inspired, and whether God’s almighty power is demonstrated in their pages.

[The author comes from a background of Sikhism on his father’s side (a religion that has borrowed mainly from Hinduism but also some from Islam), and Hinduism on his mother’s side. He studied in a Christian boarding school. He, therefore, has the ideal background to address this issue in depth.]

CONTENTS

Introduction 4

Chapter 1 – Hinduism – Tales from the Ramayana 6

Chapter 2 – Hinduism – Tales from the Mahabharata 26

Chapter 3 – Are Ramayana, Mahabharata and Gita the Word of God? 45

Chapter 4 – Biblical Identity of Manu, Rama, Krishna, Indra, Kaali Maa 55

Chapter 5 – How Ancient History was Mythologized 62

Chapter 6 – God of Sikhism 67

Chapter 7 – Why Punjabis/Sikhs Discarded Their Original Holy Book 74

Chapter 8 – Islam – Themes in the Quran 87

Chapter 9 – Was the Bible Altered 92

Chapter 10 – There is No Other God but Allah 103

Chapter 11 – Answering Muslim Arguments Against Divinity of Jesus 122

Chapter 12 – God is not a Trinity 138

Chapter 13 – Quran on Jesus’ Death and Resurrection 143

Chapter 14 – Why Were Death and Resurrection of Jesus Necessary 147

Chapter 15 – Proofs of the Crucifixion and Death of Jesus 166

Chapter 16 – Proofs of the Resurrection of Jesus Christ 183

Chapter 17 – Three Days and Three Nights Between Death and Resurrection 204

Chapter 18 – Four Gospels Not God Inspired as Each is Different 206

Chapter 19 – Coming of Muhammed Prophesied in the Bible 208

Chapter 20 – Muhammed: The Unlettered (Illiterate) Prophet 213

Chapter 21 – The Miracle of the Quran 216

Chapter 22 -- Abraham Built the Kaaba 220

Chapter 23 – Conclusion 222

Suggested Reading 226

**INTRODUCTION**

There are five major religions in the world that believe in the existence of God or multiple gods, and contain instructions for their adherents on how to live their lives and attain salvation. These in descending order of the number of adherents are: Christianity (2.4 billion), Islam (1.8 billion), Hinduism (1.15 billion), Sikhism (30 million) and Judaism (14.5 million). All these religions have their holy books complete and nothing is being added to them. Therefore, we should be able to understand what each of these religions stands for from what is written in their holy books.

Of all the holy books as to when they were compiled in their final form, the Old Testament of the Bible, the Jewish scriptures are the oldest, followed by the Hindu scriptures the Ramayana, Mahabharata and the Gita; then the New Testament of the Bible; followed by the Quran of Islam and the Guru Granth of the Sikhs.

It may be debated that the Hindu scriptures are the oldest, but scholars have not been able to know the approximate date they were compiled with certainty. On the other hand, there is absolutely no doubt about the approximate dates the scriptures of the other religions were compiled. So I am using the best estimates for the Hindu scriptures that scholarship could make.

The question I will answer in this book is whether these religions, followed by virtually all people in the Indian sub-continent (the number of Christians in India is about 28 million and the Jews is estimated to be less than 5,000) are God’s religions or not.

I will first discuss the Hindu holy books, followed by the Guru Granth of the Sikhs, and finally the Quran of Islam.

**Are these Holy Books the Word of God**

The first question we need to answer is “How do we prove whether the holy book of a particular religion is the word of God or not?” There are three ways to do so.

The first way is to demonstrate the holy book is NOT the word of God. One way we could demonstrate that is by proving that the holy book contains enormous amount of information that is simply too fantastic to be believed. It defies human reason.

The second way to prove that the holy book is not the word of God is to find some provable scientific or historical errors. Since we are trying to prove that the holy book is the word of God, it should contain no errors at all, because God cannot make mistakes.

The third way we can prove that the holy book is the word of God is seeing God’s Almighty power being demonstrated in its pages. The only way God could have demonstrated that is if He foretold numerous events that would come to pass, and they came to pass exactly as foretold, decades, hundreds or even thousands of years later. One, two or three events coming to pass exactly as foretold would not be convincing enough, as a few events can come to pass by chance, or coincidence. But if God foretold numerous events and they came to pass precisely as foretold, then there can be no doubt that the true God inspired those prophecies.

In fact, the God of Judaism and Christianity challenges the gods of all religions to prove that they are gods with these words in Isaiah 41:21-24 states (Moffatt Translation): “Now, the Eternal cries, bring your case forward, now, Jacob’s King (God) cries, STATE YOUR PROOFS. Let us hear what happened in the past, that we may ponder it, or show Me what is yet to be, that we may watch how it turns out; yes, let us hear what is coming, that we may be sure you are gods; come, do something or other that we may marvel at the sight!—why, you are things of naught, you can do nothing at all!”

Has the god of any religion dared to take up this challenge of the God of the Bible? No. Not one! God of the Bible further declares in Isaiah 46:9-10: “I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like Me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand…”

God of the Bible emphatically declares that He alone is God and there is no other God. How has He proved that? By taking up His own challenge, foretelling the future numerous times and fulfilling all His hundreds of prophecies precisely as foretold. He has prophesied the establishment and then demise of great kingdoms. He foretold the blessings on Abraham’s descendants (the American and British peoples) and brought them to pass as advance proof that He’ll also bring His promises of eternal life to all of humanity also to pass. For proof of the fulfillment of all these prophecies, I urge Hindus, Sikhs and Muslims to read either of my free books *“Which Religion is True?”* Or *“Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”,* available free at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com

However, one word of caution is in order here. One legitimate way God demonstrates His Almighty power is through miracles. But miracles described in a holy book are by themselves not proof that the book is the word of God. Miracles described could simply be lies. The point here is that like the atheist, do not reject a holy book as the word of God merely because it describes miracles. To prove that a holy book is the word of God, we must use one or more of our three criteria.

Now let’s analyze the holy books of Hinduism, Sikhism and Islam in that order to determine if they stand up to our tests that they are the word of God.

**CHAPTER 1**

**Hinduism – Tales from The Ramayana**

We shall consider only three widely followed Hindu scriptures for our analysis. First is the Ramayana, which the story of the life of its hero Rama, his birth as the reincarnation of the god Vishnu and exploits as a young prince, his exile and destruction of the demon king Ravana. Nowhere in the Ramayana is there any claim that Rama is the creator God, though by claiming to be the reincarnation of Vishnu, he claims to be a god.

The second scripture is the epic Mahabharata, which is the story of the war between the group of brothers called the Pandavas and the brothers known as the Kauravas. In this epic, Krishna appears as the god, another reincarnation of the god Vishnu.

The third scripture is the Gita, which is an account of the dialogues between Krishna and Arjuna, one of the main heroes of the Mahabharata. The Gita provides much information about Hindu concepts of creation, what is salvation and how to live one’s life to attain it. Only in the Gita does Krishna claim to be the Creator God Himself.

For our analysis of Hinduism, we will use the Ramayana and Mahabharata as retold by C. Rajagopalachari, edited by Jay Mazo, American Gita Society. For The *Bhagavad Gita*, we will use the translation by Sir Purohit Swami.

Here is how Krishna claims to be the Supreme God, the Creator [my comments in square brackets].

**Chapter 3**: “There is nothing in this universe, O Arjuna, that I am compelled to do, nor anything for Me to attain; yet I am persistently active. For were I not to act without ceasing, O prince, people would be glad to do likewise. And if I were to refrain from action, the human race would be ruined; I should lead the world to chaos, and destruction would follow.”

**Chapter 5**: “Knowing me as Him who gladly receives all offerings of austerity and sacrifice, as the Mighty Ruler of all the Worlds and the Friend of all beings, he passes to Eternal Peace.”

**Chapter 7**: “Earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, intellect and personality; this is the eightfold division of My Manifested Nature.

“This is My inferior Nature; but distinct from this, O Valiant One, know thou that my Superior Nature is the very Life which sustains the universe. It is the womb of all being; for I am He by Whom the worlds were created and shall be dissolved. [Krishna leaves no doubt about his claim to be the creator of the universe. He claims to be the creator of all the worlds. These worlds are where other Hinduism’s gods and demi-gods live.]

“O Arjuna! There is nothing higher than Me…”

**Chapter 8**: “Arjuna asked: O Lord of Lords! What is that which men call the Supreme Spirit, what is man’s Spiritual Nature, and what is the Law? What is Matter and what is Divinity? Who is it who rules the spirit sacrifice in many; and at the time of death how may those who have learned self-control come to the knowledge of Thee?

“The Lord Shri Krishna replied: The Supreme Spirit is the Highest Imperishable Self, and Its Nature is spiritual consciousness. The worlds have been created and are supported by an emanation from the Spirit which is called the Law.

“Matter consists of the forms that perish; Divinity is the Supreme Self; and He who inspires the spirit of sacrifice in man, O noblest of thy race, is I Myself, Who now stand in human form before thee.”

**Chapter 9**: “The whole world is pervaded by Me [thus Krishna claims to be omnipresent], yet My form is not seen. All living things have their being in Me, yet I am not limited by them. Nevertheless, they do not consciously abide in Me. Such is My Divine Sovereignty that though I, the Supreme Self, am the cause and upholder of all, yet I remain outside. As the mighty wind, though moving everywhere, has no resting place but space, so have all these beings no home but Me.

“All beings, O Arjuna, return at the close of every cosmic cycle into the realm of Nature, which is a part of Me, and at the beginning of the next I send them forth again. With the help of Nature, again and again I pour forth the whole multitude of beings, whether they will or not, for they are ruled by My Will. But these acts of mine do not bind Me. I remain outside and unattached. Under my guidance, Nature produces all things movable and immovable. Thus it is, O Arjuna, that this universe revolves

.

“Fools disregard Me, seeing Me clad in human form. They know not that in My higher nature I am the Lord-God of all.”

**Chapter 10**: “Neither the professors of divinity nor the great ascetics know My origin, for I am the source of them all. He who knows Me as the unborn, without beginning, the Lord of the universe, he, stripped of his delusion, becomes free from all conceivable sin…I am the source of all; from Me everything flows. Therefore, the wise worship Me with unchanging devotion.

“O Arjuna! I am the Self, seated in the hearts of all beings; I am the beginning and the life, and I am the end of them all. Of all the creative Powers I am the Creator, of luminaries the Sun; the Whirlwind among the winds, and the Moon among planets. [If this is the correct translation, this is an obvious error. It proves that Krishna was no god.] I am the Beginning, the Middle and the End in creation…I am Time inexhaustible; and I am the all-pervading Preserver. I am all-devouring Death; I am the Origin of all that shall happen…I am the Seed of all being, O Arjuna! No creature moving or unmoving can live without Me…O Arjuna! I sustain this universe with only small part of Myself.”

After seeing a vision of Krishna in a part of his form, in Chapter 10 Arjuna says: “Thou art the Supreme Spirit, the Eternal Home, the Holiest of the Holy, the Eternal Divine Self, the Primal God, the Unborn and the Omnipresent.”

**Chapter 12**: “Those who worship Me as the Indestructible, the Undefinable, the Omnipresent, the Unthinkable, the Primeval [Thus Krishna claims himself to be the primeval source of everything, meaning the original cause], the Immutable and the Eternal…”

**Chapter 15**: Krishna claims: “But higher than all am I, the Supreme God, the Absolute Self, the Eternal Lord, Who pervades the worlds and upholds them all. Beyond comparison of the Eternal with the non-eternal am I, Who am called by scriptures and sages the Supreme Personality, the Highest God.”

So in the Bhagavad Gita Krishna leaves no doubt about what he claims to be: The original primeval source of all life, creator and sustainer of the universe, the Lord-God of all.

These are very tall claims made by Krishna. However, Krishna has provided no demonstration of his Almighty power. The Mahabharata and the Gita are totally absent on any great events that Krishna foretold which came to pass unerringly. Therefore, Krishna has given us no reason to believe his claims. Similarly, the Ramayana is also totally absent on prophecies of any great events. Thus, Rama also provides us no proof at all that he is a god. Therefore, all the Hindu scriptures fail to provide proof that they are the word of God, based on our third criterion of foretelling numerous great events and bringing them to pass exactly a foretold.

Another way to prove that these scriptures are NOT the word of God if we find anything in them that is too fantastic to believe, except occurrences that could be classified as miracles. The problem with the Mahabharata and the Ramayana is that they are literally full of fantastic, completely unbelievable, huge lies from the beginning to the end.

Here are some examples of fantastic tales in the Ramayana [with my comments in square brackets].

***Quotes from the Ramayana***

**Chapter 2**: **Sage Viswamitra**:

“One day as the King was contemplating his sons' matrimony, ushers rushed in to announce that the great Sage Viswamitra had arrived to see him. Viswamitra was held in awe by all as the most powerful among rishis. Viswamitra's arrival at Ayodhya was unexpected; and King Dasaratha stepped down from his throne and advanced a few paces respectfully to receive the sage. Viswamitra was a king who attained sainthood through terrible austerities. He had long ago exhibited his spiritual powers by starting to create another Brahma and a rival universe. He had gone as far as the creation of new constellations but was prevailed upon to stop by the entreaties of the alarmed gods. [Here a mere man who has supposedly attained sainthood is ready to create a universe. He is also supposedly creating another god, another creator.]

“Viswamitra, while he was king once went out with his army and chanced to visit Vasishtha’s ashrama. The rishi cordially welcomed his royal guest and his huge entourage and extended to them all hospitality so sumptuous that the King wondered where all the rich abundance came from in a forest hermitage. Questioned by him, Vasishtha called his cow Sabala and explained that she was the fountain of unfailing plenty. [A cow that produces rich abundance of everything. How can Hindu engineers, scientists, lawyers, business leaders and other professionals be so gullible as to believe this as holy scripture!] Expressing gratitude to the sage, King Viswamitra said: "You must give me this cow as she would be more useful with me than with you. Such things of power and wealth by right belong to the King."

“Now Vasishtha could not part with the divine cow [So this cow is divine]. He gave many reasons and asked the King not to press his request. But the more unwilling Vasishtha was to give the cow, the more eager the king became to possess her. Failing in his efforts to tempt or persuade the sage to part with the cow, Viswamitra became angry and ordered his men to seize the cow by force. [Vasvamitra is supposed to be a saint but does not respect others’ right to property. There are such ‘holy men’ in abundance in all the Hindu scriptures. The gods in Hinduism are no different in their conduct, some committing vile acts.] Sabala could not understand why she was being roughly handled and she was unwilling to go away from the sage and his ashrama. Shedding tears, she wondered how she had offended Vasishtha that he should stand by and look on while she was being dragged away. The cow easily put to flight the soldiers and sought refuge at the feet of the sage. Moved by the piteous appeal of his beloved cow, who was like a younger sister to him, the sage said: "Bring forth soldiers to resist Viswamitra's men." Sabala instantaneously did so [So this ‘divine’ cow creates men, soldiers instantly], and the aggressors were soon worsted. Wild with rage, Viswamitra got into his chariot and, taking up his bow, rained arrows on the soldiers brought forth by the cow, but their strength was inexhaustible, and the royal forces suffered utter defeat. The sons of Viswamitra now chose Vasishtha himself as their target, only to be reduced to ashes.

“Defeated and disgraced, Viswamitra then and there entrusted his kingdom to one of   his sons and proceeded to the Himalayas to perform tapas {Tapas, (Sanskrit: “heat,” or “ardour”), in Hinduism, ascetic practice voluntarily carried out to achieve spiritual power or purification. In the Vedas, tapas refers to the “inner heat” created by the practice of physical austerities and figured in the creation myths…In later Hinduism the practice of tapas was especially associated with yogic discipline as a way of purifying the body in preparation for the more exacting spiritual exercises leading to liberation (moksha). Among the austerities mentioned in the sacred literature are fasting, the holding of difficult and often painful bodily postures, vigils kept in the presence of fires or extreme cold, and breath control (www.Britannica.com/topic/tapas)}, directing his devotions to Lord Siva to gain power with which to subdue Vasishtha. So firm and steadfast was   Viswamitra in his austerities that Lord Siva [Hindu gods are pleased when their devotees go endure abnegation or rigorous, painful tortures of the body] was pleased and appeared before him. He asked the king what his object was in performing tapas. Viswamitra replied: "If you, Umapati, are satisfied with my tapas let me be blessed with divine arrows and be master of every weapon. "So be it," said Siva, and gave Viswamitra all the weapons available to the Devas, Gandharvas, Rishis, Yakshas and the Demons [hey presto, suddenly Viswamitra has every weapon that has ever been invented. If Shiva was a real god, could he have not known why Viswamitra wanted these weapons and rebuked him? Hindu gods give boons to people to use at whim to destroy other people, or anyone who gets in their way, or denies them something].

“Swelling with pride like the ocean, Viswamitra considered Vasishtha as already vanquished. He straightway made for the abode of the sage. Frightened at the fearful sight of the onrushing Viswamitra, Vasishtha's disciples and the animals in his ashrama ran helter-skelter. Hit by the fire-weapon of Viswamitra, Vasishtha's ashrama was reduced to cinders. Vasishtha regretted the turn of events but determined to end the haughtiness of the erstwhile king, he faced him calmly with his Brahmadanda (holy staff) in hand. Mad with rage, Viswamitra shot at him all the divine weapons he had   acquired, but they were quenched as they approached the rishi's staff and were absorbed by it [Vasishtha was a rishi. Viswamitra was supposed to have acquired all the weapons of even the rishis].

“Viswamitra had but one more weapon in his armory, and that was the most powerful of   all, the Brahmastra. As he hurled it against Vasishtha the world became wrapped in   gloom as in some huge eclipse, and the very immortals trembled with fear. [Wow! Even the immortals tremble in fear at the deeds of a rishi, a ‘saint.’] But the terrible astra itself was merged in the rishi's staff, making both it and the holy man glow with the glory they had absorbed. Viswamitra stood dazed. Openly accepting defeat, he said: "Of what use is the Kshatriya's might in arms? With but a staff in his hand, this Vasishtha has nullified all my weapons. Lord Siva has indeed fooled me. There is no alternative for me but to become a Brahma Rishi like Vasishtha." So saying, he withdrew from the field of battle and proceeded south for more rigorous tapas.”

Here are some deeds of Rama and his brother Lakshmana when they were mere youth:

**Chapter 5** – **Rama slays the Monsters**

“The arrival of Viswamitra and the two princes [Rama and his brother Lakshmana] was a signal for rejoicing at the ashrama. The rishis offered water and fruits according to   custom. Rama told Viswamitra that he might begin the preparations for his yaga immediately and Viswamitra took the vows that very night. Getting up very early the next morning, the princes went to Viswamitra and asked when the Rakshasas [demons, who live on earth as human beings, have physical cities and houses, but can fly in the sky like birds. How come none of these things exist today. Surely, they have not all been destroyed. The reality is that these are figments of the imagination of the Hindu priests. What really happened is that priests made up these tales, supposedly hundreds of thousands of years ago. Then someone penned them a couple of thousand years ago, as not many people could write or read, the tales became accepted as everyone felt the need to worship the supernatural to receive help in times of distress] were expected so that they might hold themselves in readiness to receive them. Viswamitra was under a vow of silence [how foolish], and could not answer, but the rishis, his juniors, told the princes that they should be ceaselessly vigilant for six nights and days to safeguard the sacrifice.

“The princes, fully armed, kept vigil for six days and nights. On the morning of the sixth day Rama told Lakshmana: "Brother, now is the time for the enemies to come. Let us be wary.” Even as he was saying this, flames shot up from the sacrificial fire, for Agni, the god of Fire, knew that the Rakshasas had arrived. As the rites were being performed, there was heard from the sky a great roar. Rama looked up and saw Maricha and Subahu and their followers preparing to shower unclean things on the sacrificial fire. The army of Rakshasas covered the sky like a great black cloud. Rama said, “Look Lakshmana," and let go the Manavastra [a supernatural weapon, how ridiculous] at Maricha. As was intended, it did not kill Maricha, but wrapping him up in resistless force hurled him a full hundred yojanas [yojana is a unit of length equal to about 7.64 miles] near the sea. With the Agneyastra [a fire weapon] Rama killed Subahu; and then the two princes utterly destroyed the entire army of Rakshasas [while on earth, they destroyed the army of beings that could fly, because of their supernatural weapons]. The sky was bright again.”

Here is another story from the Ramayana:

**Chapter 36: The Good Bird Jatayu** – Talks about the abduction of Sita by Ravana [My comments in square brackets].

The Rakshasa [Ravana] {“Rakshasa, Sanskrit (male) Rākṣasa, or (female) Rākṣasī, in Hindu mythology, a type of demon or goblin. Rakshasas have the power to change their shape at will and appear as animals, as monsters, or in the case of the female demons, as beautiful women… The term rakshasa, generally applies to those demons who haunt cemeteries, eat the flesh of men, and drink the milk of cows dry as if by magic.” https://www.britannica.com/topic/rakshasa} held her [Sita, wife of Rama] firmly down and drove on in the aerial car. [Here we have a flying chariot-like vehicle. What a fantastic lie. If they had flying vehicles before the Flood, the knowledge would have been passed down to us through Noah or his daughter-in-Law Naamah. If they had flying vehicles, some would have probably escaped Noah’s Flood, as there is no indication that these flying vehicles needed fuel of any kind to power them] Sita addressed the trees and plants down below and begged them to tell Rama of her fate. [Here a human is communicating with trees to convey a message to other humans or gods].

“It happened that old Jatayu, half-asleep upon a tree, saw the chariot flying past. Startled by a woman's cry of distress he was wide awake in a moment and recognized Sita by her voice. She also saw him and appealed to him for rescue. Jatayu's blood was fired by the sight of her piteous plight and he threw himself in the way of the aerial car crying: "Hold, hold! What is all this?" "The King of Lanka is carrying me away by force," wailed Sita, "but what can you do to prevent it, my poor old friend? O fly to Rama and Lakshmana and tell them my helpless plight!" But Jatayu's fighting blood, the blood of generations of lordly ancestors who ruled the air and knew not fear, was on fire.  He cared not for Ravana and his might. He only saw a princess in distress. He thought of his friend Dasaratha and his promise to Rama and he was resolved that this outrage should not occur while he lived to prevent it. Jatayu now addressed Ravana directly: "Oh king, I am Jatayu, king of the eagles, [So here we have an old eagle coming to Sita’s rescue. This bird can also talk, as most animals in the Hindu holy books can talk to humans, befriend humans and make promises to them] a king like you. Listen to me, brother king! Forbear from this wicked act. How can you call yourself a king and do this shameful wrong? Is it not the rule of kings to protect the honor of women? And Sita is a princess. I warn you, you shall surely perish unless you leave her and go. Her very look will reduce you to ashes. You are carrying a venomous cobra in your bosom. The noose of Yama [the god of death] is round your neck and dragging you to perdition. I am old and unarmed, and you are young, fully armed and seated in a chariot. Yet I cannot look on, while you carry off Sita.

“Why do you do this cowardly act behind Rama's back? If you have any grievance against him, meet him face to face. [This is also a righteous bird and can teach demons and humans righteousness]. O, you would fly away from me, would you? You shall not escape while I am alive!  I care not for your chariot or your ten heads, or your glittering arms! Your heads shall roll on the ground that you have polluted with your presence.  Get down from your car, and fight if you are not a coward as well as a thief!"

“Ravana flared up in a rage. He attacked Jatayu. It was like a clash between a mighty wind and a massive rain-cloud. The battle raged in the sky above the forest. Jatayu fought like a winged mountain. Ravana aimed deadly darts at him. But the eagle intercepted them all and with his talons tore Ravana's flesh. The enraged Rakshasa despatched sharp, serpent-like missiles against the bird. The bird-hero was desperately wounded but fought on undauntedly while Sita watched the unequal combat with beating heart and tearful eyes. The sight of her made Jatayu all the fiercer in his attacks on Ravana. But his years were telling on him and he felt he must gather all his strength for a supreme attempt to conquer. Regardless of the wounds, he attacked Ravana fiercely and with his wings broke off and threw down his jeweled crown and deprived him of his bow. He attacked the chariot and killed the demon-faced mules and the charioteer and smashed the vehicle into a thousand pieces. Ravana fell on the ground, still clutching Sita. The elements rejoiced to see Ravana fall. The gallant old bird swooped down on Ravana's back and tore great chunks of flesh off it and tried to wrench off the arms which held Sita. But Ravana had twenty arms, [It’s a pity that Hindus cannot recognize these as mythical figures and not anything real. The Greeks, Romans and Egyptians long-ago recognized their myths as myths and turned to reality] and no sooner was one pulled off than another took its place and Sita was held in writhing helplessness. At last Ravana let go Sita and unsheathing his sword cut off the bird's wings and talons. The old bird was now helpless and fell on the ground unable to move.

Later Rama and Lakshmana were desperately searching for Sita. “They had not proceeded far when they came on Jatayu, bloody and mutilated, unrecognizable, lying on the ground…After a few moments Jatayu spoke again in a low voice: "Be not afraid, Rama. You will surely find Sita. No harm will come to her. Regaining the treasure you have lost, you will greatly rejoice." With these words, he spat out blood and gave up life.”

There is more to the eagle’s story. He also had a brother. Here is that part of the story:

**Chapter 46 – The Search Begins** [Search for Sita’s whereabouts after her abduction by Ravana]

Swayamprabha, that was the name of the ascetic woman, said: "Alas! You cannot by yourselves go out of this cave. No stranger who enters it can go out of it with life. But yours is a great mission and I must, by my tapasya, transport you out. Now shut your eyes. "Accordingly, they shut their eyes. All at once they found themselves on the seashore.

“Listening to these lamentations, Sampati stared at the mention of Jatayu, who was his brother. Hearing him spoken of as dead, he naturally wished to hear the whole story. Sampati was very old. He and Jatayu were the children of Aruna, the god of Dawn and brother of Garuda, Hari's vehicle. Jatayu and Sampati in their youth competed with each other as to who could fly higher and rose in the sky. As they approached the sun the heat became intolerable and Jatayu was about to be burnt up. But Sampati spread his wings and protected his brother from the fury of the sun. Jatayu was saved, but Sampati's wings were burnt off. Unable to fly, he fell down on a hill. Since then he could not move but stayed in the same place ever hungry for meal and just alive.

"Who brings sad news of my dear brother Jatayu?" he cried in agony. "Oh, Vanaras [monkeys who were searching for Sita], is beloved Jatayu dead indeed? Why did Rama son of King Dasaratha, go to the forest? Why did he lose his wife? Was Jatayu killed by Ravana? Tell me all." The Vanaras had resolved to end their lives. The wingless, old vulture had desired to make an easy meal of them. But now things turned out otherwise. The Vanaras got up, went to Sampati and gently led him down from the hill. Then they talked and exchanged information. Sampati recounted his story. Angada related all that had happened in Kishkindha [capitol of the kingdom of the monkeys] and asked old Sampati how Rama could be helped.

“Sampati was old and weak, but his eyes had not lost their keenness. He could see things very far off. He could see Sita captive in Lanka and described in detail the wealth of Ravana's kingdom.  He saw and described how Sita sat surrounded by Rakshasis in Lanka. The Vanaras were wild with joy. They jumped about saying, "Now we know all about Sita. There is no need for us to die, Rama's purpose will be achieved.” Sampati's troubles were also over.  The boon he had received that when he helped Rama, he would get back his wings came true and even as they were talking, young feathers began to spring and grow on his sides. Sampati now shone with fresh beauty and he found satisfaction in performing the funeral obsequies of Jatayu.”

Here are some more deeds of Rama and Lakshmana.

**Chapter 40** – **Left Eyelid Throb**

“Passing through the forest, the two princes were suddenly caught by a tremendously big Rakshasa of ugly form without head or feet. His mouth was in his great belly and he had two enormous arms which, without moving from his place, he would stretch out and clutch tiger, bear or any other living thing within reach, and swallow them. [How much more divorced from reality can it get?] He had only one eye which was placed in his chest, but which was terrible to behold. Caught by this monster, the princes were, for a while, bewildered and did not know what to do. Then Rama told Lakshmana: "Let us not be confused. You will cut off one arm, I shall cut off the other.” And so they did. The name of the monster was Kabandha, which means the barrel-shaped one. Once his arms were severed, he was helpless and began to explain: "On account of my evil deeds I was cursed by Indra to bear this form and this name. [Hindu gods impose curses on people to take various ugly forms, and grant boons for austerities which the recipients of the boons can use to any purpose they choose.] I believe you are Rama   and Lakshmana. Indra promised me freedom from the curse when you two should come and cut off my arms and commit this body of mine to the flames. [That’s why Hindus believe in fate, as if everything is already pre-written.] “The princes set fire to his body as desired by the unfortunate monster and there arose from the flames a lovely being which entered a heavenly chariot and ascended to the celestial world. Before going, he said to Rama: "You will assuredly regain Sita. Go to the beautiful banks of the Pampa and seek the help of Sugriva [a monkey] living there on the Rishyamuka hill. Driven out of the kingdom by his brother Vali, he lives in constant fear and danger. Gain his friendship, and you will succeed in your attempt." Saying this Kabandha disappeared.”

Here is where Rama uses deceit to kill Vali, the Vanara [monkey] king, brother of Sugriva:

“Sugriva assumed the form of a handsome man [in this Hindu epic, monkeys can assume the form of men and back to monkeys again] and had a long and heart-to-heart talk with the princes. Stretching forth his hand to Rama, he said: "Princes, if you care for the friendship of a Vanara, here is my hand, accept it. Hanuman has told me all about your virtue and greatness."

Then Sugriva tells Rama the story of how he and his brother became deadly enemies:

“Once a Rakshasa named Mayavi came at midnight to the gate of Kishkindha, their

capital, and vauntingly challenged Vali to instant combat in pursuance of an ancient

feud. Vali, who never refused a fight, rushed forth impetuously, followed by Sugriva;

and seeing them, the Rakshasa fled. Pursuing him they saw him disappear into a great cave the mouth of which was overgrown with brushwood. Vali bade Sugriva, exacting an oath from him, to wait at the entrance for him and plunged into the darkness of the cave after the foe.

“Sugriva waited long, but Vali did not come out. As he stood racked with doubt, indistinct shouts and groans, which seemed to his horror-struck ears his brother's, issued from the cave. Presently there gushed out of it foaming blood which made him sure that Vali had perished in the struggle.

“To make sure that the victorious Rakshasa would not rush out in the elation of triumph and destroy Kishkindha, Sugriva blocked the entrance of the cave with a huge rock and returned to Kishkindha with his tale of Vali's death.

As a rulerless state invites disaster, he was persuaded by the ministers and elders to

occupy the vacant throne. While he was enjoying the sweets of power, like a bolt from the blue, Vali burst on them. Haggard with wrath and wounds, and accusing him of treason and unnatural conduct towards one who was at once his brother and his king, Vali drove him out with scorn and contumely as a wretch too vile to live, but whom he

forebore to slay only because he was unfortunately also his brother. So, by a cruel fate he had been deprived of his home, throne, and all, including even his wife, and had to seek asylum in the forest with a few faithful friends. Here at least he was safe, for Vali had been forbidden by a rishi from entering the precincts on pain of instant death.”

Sugriva concluded his story with a piteous appeal to Rama. "For fear of Vali I am a wanderer in the forest. I live concealing myself here. Could you, will you, kill Vali and restore to me my kingdom and my wife?" Rama answered: "Certainly I will. Vali cannot escape this now. Be assured."

Here is how Rama used deceit to kill Vali:

They [Rama, Lakshmana and Sugriva] talked how to set about and it was finally agreed that Sugriva should appear in Kishkindha and challenge Vali to single combat. Vali was sure to come out, and as the brothers were fighting, Rama would kill Vali with an arrow. They proceeded to Kishkindha. Sugriva went ahead. Rama followed him and stood away behind a tree in the dense forest.

Sugriva shouted. Vali heard the shout and in great rage emerged from the fortress, radiant like the morning sun. The two brothers fought each other fiercely. But Rama, who was standing bow in hand behind a tree, was bewildered. As they wrestled together the brothers were so similar in form and feature, in equipment and method of fighting, that Rama could not distinguish Vali from Sugriva and was afraid to shoot lest he kill the wrong combatant.

Meantime Sugriva, having the worst of the fight, broke from his brother's grip with a desperate effort and, wounded and weary, disappointed and despondent, fled for life and reached Rishyamuka forest. Even this he was able to do because Vali did not wish to slay him and was not unwilling to give his brother another lease of life.

Rama and Lakshmana rejoined the woebegone Sugriva. He looked down at the ground without lifting his eyes. He was angry that Rama had broken his word and failed to help him. "If you did not like to kill Vali," said Sugriva, "you could have told me so earlier. In that case, I, who know Vali's might, would never have challenged him to fight. On the contrary, you made me believe you, and I have had such a drubbing that it is a wonder I am alive."

"Do not be angry, Sugriva, but listen," said Rama. "There was a good reason why I could not send forth my deadly arrow. You and Vali were alike in height and girth, in gait and shouts, in dress and ornaments. [Monkeys in dresses and ornaments?] Once the fight began, I could not tell you from Vali. And I stood bewildered and helpless. It would have been terrible if I killed you instead of Vali. Do not be angry. Challenge Vali once again. This time I shall surely slay him. Here, Lakshmana, fetch that flowering creeper. Tie it round Sugriva's neck as a garland. I shall then know who is our friend and who is Vali as they fight. Now, Sugriva, you shall see Vali rolling on the ground."

Sugriva was satisfied. His spirits recovered. Lakshmana tied the creeper round his neck. Once again, and handsomer than ever, Sugriva proceeded to Kishkindha. And Rama and Lakshmana followed him as before. [Story completed in the next Chapter].

**Chapter 43. The Slaying Of Vali**

Evening was approaching. Once more Sugriva roared at the gate of Kishkindha and challenged Vali to fight. Vali who was then resting happily was startled and for a moment paled with puzzled concern but was presently overwhelmed with rage and sprung stamping the earth as though he would split it.’’

After rejecting the advice of “Tara his queen… leaving [her] and her companions behind, Vali issued from the fort hissing like an angry cobra and went to meet Sugriva.

As he saw him standing there, radiant and courageous, he girt his loins and sprang on him. And Sugriva too ran forward to meet Vali. "If you love your life," warned Vali, "run away. Do not fall a victim to this fist of mine!"

Sugriva retorted angrily and the battle began. Fierce with remembered wrongs and keyed up above himself by the certainty of Rama's help, Sugriva maintained for long an equal combat. But presently Vali's greater might began to prevail and Sugriva was in such obvious distress that Rama who was watching with ready bow knew he could not hold out much longer.

It was now or never and placing a deadly arrow on the string and pulling it to his ear, Rama sped it at Vali's mighty chest. Pierced by that irresistible shaft Vali crashed down as falls a great forest tree cut asunder by the woodman's axe and lay stretched on the ground empurpled with blood as lies the festival flag-staff pulled down when the festival is ended.”

Here is part of the story of Hanuman, the monkey god, the Chief Minister of Sugriva. Rama’s side needed to locate where Sita was being held captive. For this purpose, someone had to cross the ocean to Lanka, the country of Sita’a captor Ravana. Here is how Hanuman is being praised to urge him to leap across the ocean to search out where Sita is being held captive:

**Chapter 47** – **The Son of Vayu [the wind god]**

While the monkeys were discussing who should undertake the task of leaping across the ocean to Lanka, the conversation turned to Hanuman [the monkey god, son of the wind god. How much more ridiculous can Hinduism’s gods get]:

Then Jambavan cast an appraising and admiring look at Hanuman, who had sat apart, listening to the talk, but saying nothing. "I feel that the son of Vayu, sitting there in silence is the one best fitted by strength and skill to do this deed," said the old Vanara [monkey] and walked up to Hanuman and brought him to their midst.

“Addressing Hanuman in the hearing of the myriads of gloomy Vanaras, Jambavan said: "O warrior, learned in all branches of knowledge, why are you sitting silent and apart? You are the equal of King Sugriva, are you not? In strength and splendor do you not surpass all the rest of us? Why, are you not the equal of Rama and Lakshmana themselves? I have seen Garuda, the king of birds crossing the sea. The might of your shoulders is not less than that of Garuda's wings. You are not inferior to the son of Vinata in strength or speed, but you are not aware of your own prowess and intelligence. There is no equal to you in the whole world.

“Anjana, your mother, was a maiden among the goddesses [only Hinduism and the Greek, Roman and Egyptian myths have goddesses] above. By the curse of a rishi [curses, lifting of curses by someone who has accumulated merits [merit points] by hard austerities] and specific boons to be able to do some specific acts, or protection of some kind is major part of Hinduism she was born as a Vanari [female monkey. But the only reality we observe in the universe of beings born are that they bear young after their kind as stated in the bible.] One day, while she was wandering carefree on a mountain slope, Vayu saw her beauty [the beauty of a female monkey] and fell in love with her and embraced her. She was wroth: 'Who are you, O wicked one' she asked, 'who dares insult me? [All the animals can communicate freely with humans and gods. Never observed in real life.] The Wind-God answered: 'Be not angry, your body is not tainted by my touch and loses not its virgin purity. Not in body but in my heart's desire did I embrace you and out of this ethereal embrace, a child will be born to you, equal to me in strength and vigor. He will be the mightiest and most intelligent amongst the Vanaras.' [The offspring of a monkey and a god would be born a monkey]. Thus, did the Wind-God pacify Anjana.

“When you were a little child, O Hanuman, you imagined the rising sun to be a fruit and flew towards it in order to pluck it. Seeing your effortless and fearless flight Indra, king of the gods, became concerned for the sun's safety and hurled    his thunderbolt [This is how Indra can be identified as the same god Zeus of the Greeks and Jupiter of the Romans] at you. Struck down by it, you fell on a, mountain and your right jaw was broken. Enraged by this, your father the Wind-God stopped his movements and stood still. All living creatures became breathless and felt strangled in the stillness. The gods begged Vayu to lay aside his anger and showered blessings on you. Brahma and Indra gave you boons. No weapon can slay you. Death can only come to you at your will and not otherwise. You are immortal. [Do we see any evidence of Hanuman today? Has he given us any proof of his existence? No! None at all. Yet Hindus by the hundreds of millions worship him, the immortal monkey god.]

“Born of Anjana and begotten of the spirit of the Wind-God, you are equal to him in splendor, intelligence and power. But, for all your strength, you are virtuous and modest. You alone can help us to fulfill Rama's purpose. Crossing the sea is no hard task to you. This great army of Vanaras, struggling in a sea of distress, you should rescue. You, who can cross the sea, should not leave your power unused. Increase your stature. [Here Hanuman is being asked to increase his size and assume the form of a huge monkey.] You are the equal of Garuda [the bird, a swan, that is the transport of the god Vishnu, whose reincarnation is Rama].

“The aged Jambavan thus praised Hanuman, reminded him of his strength and roused his dormant courage. At once Hanuman's form began to swell like the sea in high tide. Even as the Vanaras were watching him, the son of Vayu grew in size. The radiance of his body filled Angada and his companions with wonder and joy…

“Reminded of his might by Jambavan, Hanuman was now determined to fulfill Rama's purpose. And with fervor he uttered his faith: "May your words come true. Flying through the sky and alighting in Lanka, I shall see Janaki [Sita]. I have no doubt. I shall return and bring you good news. To take the jump I must press my foot hard against the earth. This hill may stand it," he said and climbed up the Mahendra hill. There, for a while he threw his whole strength into his foot and walked a few steps. The creatures in the hill could not endure it and came out.

“Standing on the hill, Hanuman looked at the sea and directed his yoga - concentrated mind towards Lanka. He said to himself: "I shall search and find Sita. I shall fly in the sky and cross the sea.

“With this resolve he offered worship and prayer to Surya [the sun god], Indra, Vayu, Brahma [the creator god, one of the Trinity of Hinduism, the others being Vishnu and Shiva], and all creation. Then facing east, he made obeisance to his father Vayu and, magnifying his frame still further [grew in bodily size], turned towards the south. He pressed the hill with his feet and struck it with his hands. At this impact the flowers fell from the trees and covered the hill. Squeezed irresistibly by the pressure of his feet the hill threw out springs of water, like the rut flowing down the cheeks of the elephant. Many colored veins of ore burst out of the rock. From the caves the beasts emerged with panic-stricken outcries. Hooded serpents emitting venom bit the rock and sparks flew out. The hair of Hanuman's body stood on end and he roared and lashed his tail on the ground. He contracted his hind parts, held his breath, pressed down his feet, folded his ears and stiffened his muscles. Then with a roar of triumph he rose into the sky and like Garuda flew with the speed of Rama's arrow. With the momentum of his speed, many trees were uprooted and followed in his wake. Like friends who speed a parting guest, they accompanied him a little way, showering down their flowers, and dropped. One by one the trees that followed Hanuman fell into the sea like the mountains which of old were pursued by Indra and denuded of their wings. Covered with bright-colored flowers the sea shone like the sky with its stars.

“Hanuman's arms with their outspread hands as he flew through the sky appeared like two five headed cobras. He seemed to swallow the sky as he flew forward. His eyes glistened like mountain forests on fire. His red nose shone like the evening sun. His huge frame spanned the sky like an enormous comet. The air roared as he sped fast. Beneath him his shadow traveled like a ship on the sea. It looked as though a huge mountain with wings was flying in the sky. Hidden at times by clouds and again emerging from them, he shone like the moon sailing across the sky. The Gandharvas showered flowers. The Devarishis blessed him.

“With courage equal to every occasion, with foresight, skill and resolution, Hanuman, met and survived the trials on the way. Shooting up suddenly from the sea, a mighty mountain rose and stood, in his way. Hanuman struck it with his chest and the Mynaka Mountain yielded, like a cloud struck by the wind. The mountain said: “My son, I am Mount Mynaka. My king Ocean bade me help Sri Rama, the descendant of the Sagara race. The Ocean is an old friend of that race. In honor of that ancient, association, stay here on me for a while. You will fulfil Rama's purpose all the better for this rest. When Indra struck with his thunder all the hills, I fled from his persecution and hid myself in the ocean and survived. The Ocean who gave me shelter now bids me help you. The sons of Sagara dug and deepened the ocean. Did not your father Vayu help me escape from Indra’s thunderbolt and find sanctuary in the sea? Both the Ocean and myself will be pleased if you will accept my hospitality and rest for a while.”

“But Hanuman could not yield to Mynaka's importunity and said politely: "I cannot stop, my friend. I have no time to lose. My vow to fulfil Rama's purpose permits no delay. Your kind words are enough to please me." He stroked the mountain affectionately with his hand and took its leave.

“Later, a huge form stood in his way and said: "Enter my mouth. I have been without food for a long time and am eagerly waiting for you," and the monster opened its mouth wide like a cave. [This is supposed to be Hindu holy scripture. It just boggles the mind to understand how this can be accepted as the truth and worship such gods.] Hanuman answered: "I am bent on doing Rama's purpose. Do not stop me.” “Impossible!” said the monster. "You must enter my mouth." Hanuman thought quickly and decided what to do. Step by step he made his body grow bigger and bigger. The Rakshasa form (which had been assumed by Surasa, the Naga [snake or cobra] maiden opened its mouth correspondingly wider and wider. When the mouth was thus enormously wide, all of a sudden Hanuman contracted his body into a speck and, darting through the demon’s mouth and body, came out again and resumed his former normal shape. He then laughed and said: "You have had your wish, mother. I have entered your mouth. What more do you need?" And the Naga goddess blessed him saying: “Your effort will be crowned with success. I did this at the bidding of the gods who wanted to test you. Rama’s purpose, which you seek to serve, will assuredly triumph.”

“This was not the last of his trials. As he was flying in the sky, for no reason which he could discover, he found his speed obstructed and he suffered like a ship against a contrary wind. Some mighty force, he felt, was holding him and dragging him down. He looked up and down and on all four sides. Then he discovered the cause. It was a huge she-demon in the sea holding him by his shadow below, arresting his speed, and dragging him down. The demon, holding him by his shadow said: “Come, come! Long have I been waiting for you. No longer can I bear my hunger,” and she opened her mouth like a cave. At once Hanuman entered her mouth and ripped a way out through her entrails and emerged. The demon died and sank down in the water. Like the full moon emerging from an eclipse, Hanuman shone in the sky and resumed his journey.

“Thus, surviving many trials with the help of his subtle wit, courage and strength, he flew across the ocean and approached the coast of Lanka covered with plantain and coconut trees. On the shore of the island he saw groves and mountains and forests and the mouths of rivers. Hanuman saw the wealth of Ravana's kingdom and the beauty of the fortified city. "I have reached the destination," said Hanuman to himself." Now without letting the Rakshasas know who or what I am, I must search the place and find out where Sita is kept." He reduced his huge form to the size of a normal monkey and alighted on a hilltop in Lanka.”

Here are some descriptions of the actual battle to kill Ravana to free Sita:

**Chapter 69** - **Serpent Darts**

RAVANA as duly informed that Rama's Vanara host surrounded Lanka like a tumultuous sea. In an angry mood he went up the tower of his mansion and surveyed the scene. On every side he saw Vanara warriors who had armed themselves with trees and boulders. He wondered how he could destroy this vast invading force.

At the same time, Rama saw the City of Lanka guarded by the Rakshasas. He could see with his mind's eye the sad figure of Sita held captive within those walls. He ordered an immediate assault. Shouting: "Victory to the Vanara king! Victory to Rama and Lakshmana! Polish off the Rakshasas," the Vanara army rushed on the doomed city. Some hurled big boulders against the fortress wall and on the city gates. Others armed with huge trees torn up by the roots rushed on the Rakshasas.

Then Ravana sent forth a big army. He commanded it to go out and slay at once all the Vanaras. They beat their drums and blew their trumpets till the sky resounded. They fell upon the Vanaras. The Vanaras used boulders and trees and their own nails and fists to oppose the Rakshasas. Thousands fell dead on either side. The field was covered with blood and mangled bodies.

Besides this gruesome engagement, there were many duels between individual warriors. Angada encountered Indrajit like Rudra against Yama. There was a duel

between the Rakshasa Prajangha and Sampati, one of the companions of Vibhishana [brother of Ravana]. Hanuman fought a duel with Jambumali, Nila with Nikumbha, Lakshmana with Viroopaksha, and so on. The chariot and horses of Indrajit were

destroyed and Angada received a blow from the mace of Indrajit. Jambumali hit Hanuman with his weapon and Hanuman smashed his chariot to pieces. The

Rakshasas concentrated their attack on Rama, and fell in thousands under his

arrows. Vidyunmali aimed his darts at Sushena. The latter smashed with a rock the chariot of the Rakshasa. Vidyunmali jumped out with his mace and attacked Sushena who crushed him to death with a rock. In this way many warriors fought and many died.

“The battle raged throughout the day. And at night the Rakshasas would not stop fighting. The battle became fierce. Blood flowed in streams. There was terrible slaughter on both sides. Angada [son of the former monkey king Vali] attacked Indrajit [the son of Ravana], slew his horses and charioteer and smashed the chariot. The Vanaras admired the skill and strength of their prince and raised shouts of joy. All the warriors in the army praised the Vanara prince's prowess.

“Indrajit lost his temper along with his chariot and resorted to sorcery. Making himself invisible he aimed many darts at Rama and Lakshmana who were greatly harassed at

this attack from a foe whose whereabouts no one could discover and who seemed to

shower deadly missiles from all sides. Then Indrajit shot serpent darts at Rama and Lakshmana. Bound by them, they could not move and lay helpless on the battlefield. [Rama is supposed to be an incarnation of the god Vishnu. If he was so, nothing should be able to make him helpless.] They looked at one another, wondering what to do. Lakshmana's grief at Rama's plight was great. As for the Vanaras they stood round in mournful bewilderment.

“Indrajit congratulated the Rakshasa army and returned to the city. Exulting in his victory, he went to his father and announced that the story of Rama and Lakshmana was over. Ravana was beside himself with joy. He embraced his son and praised his prowess.

The Vanara warriors wounded and downcast, seeing Rama and Lakshmana laid low, concluded that all was over.

“Vibhishana [the brother of Ravana who had counseled him to honorably restore Sita to Rama but had now come to Rama’s camp after Ravana was wroth with him for giving such advice and said a brother is the worst enemy], who saw Sugriva standing helpless and forlorn, put courage in the Vanara king. "It is foolish to lose hope," he said. "Look at Rama and Lakshmana. Their faces are still bright. They are not dead. Be not afraid. Soon they will recover from this swoon and resume fighting."

“The chief took heart and did everything to save the army from panic. The ranks were reformed with their respective chiefs. Meanwhile Ravana had it proclaimed in Lanka that Rama and Lakshmana had been slain by Indrajit. He sent for his women and said to them: "Go at once and inform Sita that Rama is no more; that the two princes lie dead on the battlefield and the Vanara army is destroyed. Also, to convince her finally, take her in the Pushpaka Vimana [flying palace or chariot] and show her the battlefield from above. Let the obstinate one see for herself what has happened. Seeing that she has now no one to look to besides myself, she will turn to me."

“The Rakshasis [female Rakshas] did as they were told. From the Vimana Sita saw the field of battle. She saw Rama and Lakshmana lying motionless on the ground with their

weapons scattered by their side. She was filled with grief. She thought that it was now all over and cried: "To this end has fate brought me, giving the lie to the predictions of saints and astrologers that I would live as a happy wife and mother and a glorious queen. Poor Kausalya! [Rama’s mother] Who shall console you now. Like one who, having, crossed the ocean, gets drowned in a little pond, these warriors, who had done so much, lie dead now. Oh princes! How did your divine weapons fail you. Alas, all-powerful is destiny!"

“When Sita was thus in the desperation of utter sorrow, Trijata, her Rakshasi companion, who was looking closely at the motionless figures of the princes, suddenly burst out: "Dear Sita, there is no cause for grief. Neither your husband nor Lakshmana is dead. Look at their faces. Is this how the dead look? They are bound by a charmed weapon and are unconscious for a while. Look at the orderly array of the army. Have courage. Be not frightened." Her words fell like nectar in Sita's ears. The Vimana returned to Lanka and Sita was taken back to the Asoka Vana [forest].

“In time the force of the arrows charged with sorcery weakened. Rama opened his eyes and sat up. Though sorely wounded, he recovered his strength by an exercise of will power and sat up. He looked at his brother lying on the ground and cried out: "Alas! What is the use of victory now for me? Why did I bring you, dear brother, with me to the forest and get you killed like this? How can I return without you to Ayodhya? You used ever to console me in my sorrow. You are silent now when I face the greatest sorrow. How can I survive you? Where in the world is a warrior like you? One can replace

anything lost, but where can I find anyone to fill your place? Like Kartaviryarjuna

with his thousand hands, you with your two hands discharged showers of arrows

and slew the Rakshasas. How could death come to you? You came with me into the

forest, and now I shall repay my debt to you by joining with you to the abode of Yama [the god of the dead]. I confess defeat. The word I gave to Vibhishana cannot be fulfilled. Oh Vanara king! Return to Kishkindha [capital city of the monkey king] with

all your warriors. You have worked hard for me. You have fulfilled all the duties of

friendship. You have my gratitude. But there is no use in more of you dying. Go back to your city. Let me perish here."

“Thus, did Rama lament in helpless grief. Then Vibhishana arrived there, mace in hand. Seeing his huge dark form, the Vanaras imagined it was Indrajit again and started to fly.

In another part of the battlefield Sugriva and Angada were discussing. "Why are the Vanaras thus beginning to scatter in fear? What has happened?" asked Sugriva. Angada [Sugriva’s nephew, son of his brother Vali] answered, "Do you not know that Rama and Lakshmana are lying wounded?"

“Sugriva said: "It is not that. Look at the way they are running helter-skelter. There must be some other reason for it." Then he learnt that the Vanaras, who had suffered at the hands of Indrajit, mistook Vibhishana for him and were frightened. He sent Jambavan to rally the troops by disabusing them of this fear.

“Vibhishana looked at Rama and Lakshmana. When he saw them wounded, covered with arrows all over, and unable to fight, he broke down crying: "It is all over. What more is there to do?" Sugriva turned to Sushena, his uncle, and said: "Take Rama and Lakshmana to Kishkindha. I shall kill Ravana, redeem Sita, and bring her there." Sushena answered: "There are herbs which can heal the wounds of the princes and restore them to health. Some of us know where these herbs are to be found. Here is Hanuman. If you send him, he will fetch the herbs."

“As they were speaking, the sea and air were churned up by a mighty wind and the great bird Garuda burst into view. When Garuda arrived, the serpent darts that covered Rama and Lakshmana disappeared instantaneously. They were all venomous serpents which had become arrows through the magic of Indrajit and had bound the princes' bodies. When their inveterate and dreaded enemy Garuda appeared, they took flight. Then Garuda gently stroked the bodies of Rama and Lakshmana and restored to them their full strength. The wounds were all healed and they rose up, stronger and more radiant than before. And Rama asked: "Who are you, my benefactor?" He did not know that he was Vishnu and Garuda was his own bird on which he always rode. Garuda answered, "I am your good friend, and old companion. Glory is yours! Let me go now. When the battle is ended, we shall know each other better."

“Saying thus Hamsa bird [swan] flew away. Seeing Rama and Lakshmana fully recovered and ready for battle, the Vanaras were enthusiastic once again and resumed attacking Ravana's fortress.”

The entire Ramayana is full of more such ridiculous, fantastic tales. The story continues and Rama and the Vanara army finally defeats Ravana and his force and Ravana is slain by Rama. Next is a description of the meeting between Rama and Sita.

**Chapter 75 – The End**

Rama's face showed a strange transformation of mind. None of those around him, not even Lakshmana could understand. Alighting from the palanquin, Sita, with downcast eyes, proceeded towards Rama. "Aryaputra," she said and sobbed, unable to speak more. Aryaputra in Sanskrit means beloved and noble one and is an intimate form of address of wife to husband.

"I have slain the enemy," said Rama. I have recovered you. I have done my duty as a Kshatriya. My vow is now fulfilled." Incomprehensible and wholly unexpected were these words that he uttered. His face darkened for some reason. Then he spoke even harsher words.

"It was not for mere attachment to you that I waged this grim battle but in the discharge of duty as a Kshatriya. It gives me no joy now to get you back, for doubtfulness envelopes you like a dark cloud of smoke." "What do you wish to do now?" he continued. "You must live alone, for we cannot live together. You can stay under the protection of any of our kinsmen or friends. How can a Kshatriya take back a wife who has lived so long in a stranger's house?"

“Sita looked at Rama. Her eyes flashed fire. "Unworthy words have you spoken!" she said. "My ears have heard them and my heart is broken. The uncultured may speak such words but not one nobly born and brought up like you. Your anger, it seems, has destroyed your understanding. My lord does not remember the family from which I come. Janaka, the great seer, was my father and he brought me up. Is it my fault that the wicked Rakshasa seized me by force and imprisoned me? But since this is how you look at it, there is but one course open to me."

“Then turning to Lakshmana, "Fetch the faggots, Lakshmana, and kindle a fire," she said. Lakshmana, who had been watching Rama's behavior in dismay and indignation turned to look at Rama's face seeking his orders, but Rama did not say 'No' to Sita's request nor show any sign of softening. Obeying Sita, Lakshmana kindled a big fire and the princess, with eyes fixed on the ground, circumambulated her lord and exclaimed:

"Ye Gods, I bow before you. Oh rishis, I bow to you. Oh Agni, you at least know my purity and will take me as your own!"

“With these words she jumped into the flames. And wonder of wonders! The lambent flames were crowded with celestial figures, for all the gods came and assembled there. Brahma spoke: "Narayana! Mighty God that took human form to slay Ravana! Is not this your own Lakshmi?"

Agni, God of fire, rose in his own body out of the flames and lifting Sita in his arms with all her clothes and jewels untouched and intact, presented her to Rama.

Rama said to Brahma: "Who am I? All that I know and can tell is that I am Rama, son of Dasaratha. You know who I am and whence I came and more. It is you who must inform me." Saying this to Brahma, Rama accepted Sita fire-proved.

"Think you that I did not know your irreproachable purity? This ordeal was to satisfy the people. Without it, they would say that Rama, blinded by love, behaved with a strange weakness and broke the rule of well-brought-up men." So saying he drew her to his side.

“Then Dasaratha descended from above and, placing the prince on his lap blessed him.

"My child!" he said to Sita. "Forgive my son. Forgive him for the wrong he did you to preserve the dharma of the world. God bless you!"

“Indra gave his boon, and the Vanaras who died in battle for Rama regained their

lives. [Foolishness and purely fictional aspect of all this is self-evident. One really has to be gullible to believe all this as truth. If a man like Rama allowed this to happen today, he surely deserves to be burnt alive.] Rama and Sita, now reunited, ascended the Pushpaka which carried them swiftly in the air with their friends, the Vanara warriors and Vibhishana, to Ayodhya. As they travelled in the sky, he said: "Look there! That is the causeway built by Nala." Again, "Look there, that is Kishkindha," he said, "where I met and made friends with Hanuman and Sugriva." And Rama pointed out to Sita the spots where he and Lakshmana had wandered disconsolate and related to her all his unforgettable experiences.”

No wonder Sati was so ingrained into the Indian psyche and needed an outside force, the British, to root it out of India.

**CHAPTER 2**

**Hinduism – Tales from The Mahabharata**

Mahabharata is the Indian epic that tells the story of the war between the Kauravas and the Pandavas for the throne. Here are some equally fantastic tales from the Mahabharata retold by C. Rajagopalachari, (Edited by Jay Mazo, International Gita Society)

**Chapter 2. Devavrata**

"You must certainly become my wife, whoever you may be." Thus, said the great

King Santanu to the goddess Ganga who stood before him in human form, intoxicating his senses with her superhuman loveliness. [Goddesses exist only in Hinduism, and in Greek, Roman and Egyptian myths. Sikhism acknowledges them as it acknowledges the ‘possible’ existence of multiple gods. They can take human form and marry human beings.]

“The king earnestly offered for her love, his kingdom, his wealth, his all, his very life.

Ganga replied: "O king, I shall become your wife. But on certain conditions that neither you nor anyone else should ever ask me who I am, or whence I come. You must also not stand in the way of whatever I do, good or bad, nor must you ever be wroth with me on any account whatsoever. You must not say anything displeasing to me. If you act otherwise, I shall leave you then and there. Do you agree?" The infatuated king vowed his assent, and she became his wife and lived with him.

“The heart of the king was captivated by her modesty and grace and the steady love she bore him. King Santanu and Ganga lived a life of perfect happiness, oblivious of the passage of time. She gave birth to many children; each newborn babe she took to the Ganges and cast into the river, and then returned to the king with a smiling face.

“Santanu was filled with horror and anguish at such fiendish conduct, but suffered it all in silence, mindful of the promise be had made. Often, he wondered who she was, wherefrom she had come and why she acted like a murderous witch. Still bound by his word, and his all-mastering love for her, he uttered no word of blame or remonstrance.

“Thus, she killed seven children. When the eighth child was born and she was about to throw it into the Ganges, Santanu could not bear it any longer. He cried: "Stop, stop, why are you bent on this horrid and unnatural murder of your own innocent babes?" With this outburst the king restrained her. "O great king," she replied, "you have forgotten your promise, for your heart is set on your child, and you do not need me any more. I go. I shall not kill this child but listen to my story before you judge me.

I, who am constrained to play this hateful role by the curse of Vasishtha, am the goddess Ganga, adored of gods and men. Vasishtha cursed the eight Vasus to be born in the world of men, and moved by their supplications said, I was to be their mother. I bore them to you, and well is it for you that it was so. For you will go to higher regions for this service you have done to the eight Vasus. I shall bring up this last child of yours for some time and then return it to you as my gift." After saying these words, the goddess disappeared with the child. It was this child who later became famous as

Bhishma.

This was how the Vasus came to incur Vasishtha's curse. They went for a holiday with their wives to a mountain tract where stood the hermitage of Vasishtha: One of them saw Vasishtha's cow, Nandini, grazing there. [The same Vasishtha who had another cow named Sabala, the cow of plenty in the Ramayana. That’s how Hindus are duped into worshipping cows. The origins of cow worship will also be described briefly later]. Its divinely beautiful form attracted him, and he pointed it out to the ladies. They were all loud in praise of the graceful animal, and one of them requested her husband to secure it for her.

He replied: "What need have we, the devas, for the milk of cows? This cow belongs to the sage Vasishtha who is the master of the whole place. Man will certainly become immortal by drinking its milk. [This cow is also divine, because whoever drinks its milk apparently becomes immortal]. But this is no gain to us, who are already immortal. Is it worth our while incurring Vasishtha's wrath merely to satisfy a whim?"

“But she was not thus to be put off. "I have a dear companion in the mortal world. It is

for her sake that I make this request. Before Vasishtha returns we shall have escaped with the cow. You must certainly do this for my sake, for it is my dearest wish." Finally, her husband yielded. All the Vasus joined together and took the cow and its calf away with them. When Vasishtha returned to his ashrama, he missed the cow and the calf, because they were indispensable for his daily rituals.

“Very soon he came to know by his yogic insight [supernatural powers of perception by mere mortals] all that had taken place. Anger seized him and he uttered a curse against

the Vasus. The sage, whose sole wealth was his austerity, willed that they should be born into the world of men. When the Vasus came to know of the curse, repentant too late, they threw themselves on the sage's mercy and implored forgiveness. [The Vasus were supposed to be immortal. But here a mere mortal, though a Brahma Rishi, can curse them to become mortal again.]

“Vasishtha said: "The curse must needs take its course. Prabhasa, the Vasu who seized the cow, will live long in the world in all glory, but the others will be freed from the curse as soon as born. My words cannot prove ineffective, but I shall soften the curse to this extent."

“Afterwards, Vasishtha set his mind again on his austerities, the effect of which had been slightly impaired by his anger. Sages who perform austerities acquire the power to curse, but every exercise of this power reduces their store of merit.

“The Vasus felt relieved and approached the goddess Ganga and begged of her: "We pray you to become our mother. For our sake we beseech you to descend to the earth and marry a worthy man. Throw us into the water as soon as we are born and liberate us from the curse." The goddess granted their prayer, came to the earth and became the wife of Santanu.

“When the goddess Ganga left Santanu and disappeared with the eighth child, the king

gave up all sensual pleasures and ruled the kingdom in a spirit of asceticism. One day

he was wandering along the banks of the Ganges when he saw a boy endowed with

the beauty and form of Devendra, the king of the gods.

“The child was amusing himself by casting a dam of arrows across the Ganges in flood, playing with the mighty river as a child with an indulgent mother. To the king who stood transfixed with amazement at the sight, the goddess Ganga revealed herself and presented the child as his own son. She said: "O king, this is that eighth child I bore you. I have brought him up till now. His name is Devavrata. He has mastered the art of arms and equals Parasurama in prowess. He has learnt the Vedas and the Vedanta from Vasishtha and is well versed in the arts and sciences known to Sukra. Take back with you this child who is a great archer and hero as well as a master in statecraft." Then she blessed the boy, handed him to his father, the king, and disappeared.

An example of a fantastic plant that can make dead people alive.

**Chapter 5. Devayani And Kacha**

“In ancient times, there was a bitter struggle between the devas or gods and the asuras or demons for the lordship of the three worlds. Both belligerents had illustrious preceptors. Brihaspati who was pre-eminent in the knowledge of the Vedas was the guiding spirit of the devas, while the asuras relied on Sukracharya's profound wisdom.

The asuras had the formidable advantage that Sukracharya alone possessed the secret of Sanjivini [a plant] which could recall the dead to life. Thus, the asuras who had fallen in the battle were brought back to life, time and again, and continued their fight with the devas. The devas were thus at a great disadvantage in their long-drawn-out war with their natural foes.

They went to Kacha, the son of Brihaspati, and besought his aid. They begged him to win his way into the good graces of Sukracharya and persuade him to take him as a pupil. Once admitted to intimacy and confidence, he was to acquire, by fair means or foul, the secret of Sanjivini and remove the great handicap under which the devas suffered.

Kacha acceded to their request and set out to meet Sukracharya who lived in the capital city of Vrishaparva, the king of the asuras. Kacha went to the house of Sukra, and after due salutation, addressed him thus: "I am Kacha, the grandson of the sage Angiras and the son of Brihaspati. I am a brahmacharin seeking knowledge under your tutelage."

It was the law that the wise teacher should not refuse a worthy pupil who sought knowledge of him. So Sukra acceded and said: "Kacha, you belong to a good family. I accept you as my pupil, the more willingly, that by doing so I shall also be showing my respect for Brihaspati."

Kacha spent many years under Sukracharya, rendering to perfection the prescribed duties in the household of his master. Sukracharya had a lovely daughter, Devayani, of whom he was extremely fond. Kacha devoted himself to pleasing and serving her with song and dance and pastime and succeeded in winning her affection, without detriment however to the vows of brahmacharya. When the asuras came to know of this, they became anxious as they suspected that Kacha's object was somehow to wheedle out of Sukracharya the secret of Sanjivini. They naturally sought to prevent such a calamity.

One day, as Kacha was engaged in grazing the cattle of his master the asuras seized him, tore him to pieces and cast his flesh to the dogs. When the cattle returned without Kacha, Devayani was filled with anxiety, and ran to her father with loud lamentations: "The sun has set," she wailed, "and your nightly fire sacrifice has been performed; still Kacha has not returned home. The cattle have come back by themselves. I fear some mishap has befallen Kacha. I cannot live without him."

The fond father employed the art of Sanjivini and invoked the dead youth to appear. At once Kacha came back to life and greeted the master with smiles. Asked by Devayani the reason for his delay, he told her that as he was grazing the cattle the asuras came suddenly on him and slew him. How he came back to life he knew not, but come back to life he did, and there he was.

On another occasion Kacha went to the forest to pluck flowers for Devayani, and again the asuras seized and killed him, and pounding his body to a paste, mixed it up in sea-water. As he did not return even after a long time Devayani went as before to her father who brought Kacha back to life by his Sanjivini and heard from him all that had taken place.

For the third time again, the Asuras killed Kacha and very cleverly as they thought, burnt his body, mixed the ashes in wine and served it to Sukracharya who drank it,

suspecting nothing. Once more the cows returned home without their keeper, and

once again Devayani approached her father with her distressful appeal for Kacha.

Sukracharya tried in vain to console his daughter. "Though I have again and again

brought back Kacha to life," said he, "the asuras seem bent upon killing him. Well,

death is the common lot, and it is not proper for a wise soul like you to sorrow at it. Your life is all before you to enjoy, with youth and beauty and the goodwill of the world."

Devayani deeply loved Kacha, and since the world began, wise words have never cured the ache of bereavement. She said: "Kacha, the grandson of Angiras and the son of Brihaspati, was a blameless boy, who was devoted and tireless in our service. I loved him dearly, and now that he has been killed, life to me has become bleak and insupportable. I shall therefore follow in his path." And Devayani began to fast.

Sukracharya, heart-stricken by his daughter's sorrow, became very angry with the asuras, and felt that the heinous sin of killing a brahmana would weigh heavily on their fortunes. He employed the Sanjivini art and called upon Kacha to appear. By the power of the Sanjivini Kacha dispersed as he was in the wine which was inside Sukracharya's

body at the time, regained life, but prevented by the peculiarity of his location from coming out, he could only answer to his name from where he was. Sukracharya exclaimed in angry amazement: "O brahmacharin, how did you get into me? Is this also the work of the asuras? This is really too bad and makes me feel like killing the asuras

immediately and joining the devas. But tell me the whole story."

Kacha narrated it all, in spite of the inconvenience imposed by his position. Vaisampayana continued: "The high-souled and austere Sukracharya of immeasurable greatness, became angry at the deceit practiced on him in his wine, and proclaimed for the benefit of humanity: 'Virtue will desert the man who through lack of wisdom drinks wine. He will be an object of scorn to all. This is my message to humanity, which should be regarded as an imperative scriptural injunction.' Then he turned to his daughter

Devayani and said: Dear daughter, here is a problem for you. For Kacha to live, he must rend my stomach and come out of it, and that means death to me. His life can only be bought by my death."

Devayani began to weep and said: "Alas! It is death to me either way. For if either of you perish, I shall not survive." Sukracharya sought a way out of the difficulty. The real explanation of it all flashed on him. He said to Kacha: "O son of Brihaspati, I now see with what object you came and verily you have secured it! I must bring you out to life for the sake of Devayani, but equally for her sake I must not die either. The only way is to initiate you in the art of Sanjivini so that you can bring me back to life after I shall have died when a way is torn out through my entrails for you. You should employ the

knowledge I am going to impart to you and revive me, so that Devayani need not grieve for either of us."

Accordingly, Sukracharya imparted the art of Sanjivini to Kacha. Immediately Kacha

came forth from Sukracharya's body, emerging like the full moon from a cloud, while the great preceptor fell down mangled and dead. But Kacha at once brought Sukracharya

back to life by means of his newly acquired Sanjivini. Kacha bowed down to Sukracharya and said: "The teacher who imparts wisdom to the ignorant is a father.

Besides, as I have issued from your body you are my mother too."

Kacha remained for many more years under the tutelage of Sukracharya. When the period of his vow ended, he took leave of his master to return to the world of the

gods. As he was about to depart Devayani humbly addressed him thus: "O, grandchild of Angiras, you have won my heart by your blameless life, your great attainments and nobility of birth. I have loved you long and tenderly, even while you were faithfully following your vows of a brahmacharin. You should now reciprocate my love and make me happy by marrying me. Brihaspati as well as yourself are fully worthy of being honored by me. "

In those days, it was no uncommon thing for wise and learned brahmana ladies to

speak out their mind with honorable frankness. But Kacha said: "O faultless one, you are my master's daughter and ever worthy of my respect. I got back my life by being born out of your father's body. Hence, I am your brother. It is not proper for you, my sister, to ask me to wed you."

“Devayani sought in vain to persuade him. "You are the son of Brihaspati," said she,

"and not of my father. If I have been the cause of your coming back to life, it was

because I loved you as indeed, I have always loved you as my husband. It is not fit that you should give up one like me sinless and devoted to you." Kacha replied: "Do not seek to persuade me to unrighteousness. You are enchanting more so now than ever,

flushed as you are with anger. But I am your brother. Pray bid me adieu. Serve unto perfection, ever and always, my master Sukracharya."

“With these words Kacha gently disengaged himself and proceeded to the abode of Indra, the king of gods. Sukracharya consoled his daughter.”

It’s absolutely pitiful that Hindus regard such atrocious tales as holy scripture. The Mahabharata is actually worse than the Ramayana with yogis, rishis and gods and demi-gods pronouncing bizarre curses on people. Here are a few examples:

But just an aside first about marriage rules:

**Chapter 6**: **The Marriage of Devayani**

“Yayati replied: "Loving soul, I am a kshatriya and you are a brahmana maiden. How can I marry you? How can the daughter of Sukracharya, who is worthy to be the preceptor of the whole world, submit to be the wife of a kshatriya like myself? Revered lady, return home." Having said these words Yayati went back to his capital.

“A kshatriya maiden could marry a brahmana, according to the ancient tradition, but it was considered wrong for a brahmana maiden to marry a kshatriya. The important thing was to keep the racial status of women unlowered. Hence anuloma or the practice of marrying men of higher castes was legitimate and the reverse practice, known as pratiloma, i.e. marrying men of a lower caste, was prohibited by the sastras.”

[Generally, only the Brahmins knew how to read and write and kept records. Since they were the religious leaders, they made the rules. Obviously, they made rules to favor themselves. Hinduism and Islam place restrictions on whom their women can marry. Muslim family members will murder their daughter/sister if she marries a non-Muslim, and probably her husband too.]

But Yayati a king got married to Devayani. Here is that part of the story:

“On another occasion also Devayani came across Yayati. She repeated her request

that he should take her as his wife since he had clasped her right hand. Yayati again

repeated his objection that he, a kshatriya, could not lawfully marry a brahmana. Finally they both went to Sukracharya and got his assent to their marriage. This is an instance of the pratiloma marriage which was resorted to on exceptional occasions. The sastras, no doubt, prescribe what is right and forbid what is wrong but a marriage once effected cannot be made invalid.

“Yayati and Devayani spent many days in happiness. Sarmishtha remained with her

as an attendant. One day Sarmishtha [she is the daughter of an asura king] met Yayati in secret and earnestly prayed to be taken also as his wife. He yielded to her prayer and married her without the knowledge of Devayani. But Devayani came to know of it and was naturally very angr. She complained to her father and Sukracharya in his rage cursed Yayati with premature old age. Yayati, thus suddenly stricken with age in the very prime of his manhood, begged so humbly for forgiveness that Sukracharya, who had not forgotten Devayani's rescue from the well [by Yayati], at last relented.

“He said: "O king, you have lost the glory which is youth. The curse cannot be recalled, but if you can persuade anyone to exchange his youth for your age the exchange will take effect." Thus, he blessed Yayati and bade him farewell.”

Yayati had five beautiful sons. He then decides to ask them if one of them would exchange his aged body for their youthful body. Here is that part of the ridiculous story:

**Chapter 7. Yayati**

Emperor Yayati was one of the ancestors of the Pandavas. He had never known defeat. He followed the dictates of the sastras, adored the gods and venerated his ancestors with intense devotion [This is a key part of the religion. That’s why the caste system took hold in India and people did not rebel against it. Its origins will be described briefly later]. He became famous as a ruler devoted to the welfare of his subjects.

But as has already been told, he became prematurely old by the curse of Sukracharya for having wronged his wife Devayani. Yayati, who found himself suddenly an old man, was still haunted by the desire for sensual enjoyment. He had five beautiful sons, all virtuous and accomplished. Yayati called them and appealed piteously to their affection:

"The curse of your grandfather Sukracharya has made me unexpectedly and prematurely old. I have not had my fill of the joys of life. For, not knowing what was in store for me I lived a life of restraint, denying myself even lawful pleasures. One of you ought to bear the burden of my old age and give his youth in return. He who agrees to this and bestows his youth on me will be the ruler of my kingdom. I desire to enjoy life in

the full vigor of youth."

He first asked his eldest son. That son replied: "O great king, women and servants will mock at me if I were to take upon myself your old age. I cannot do go. Ask of my younger brothers who are dearer to you than myself."

The second, third and fourth sons also refused Yayati’s request. Story continues:

“Yayati was struck with sorrow at the refusal of the four sons. Still, hoping against hope, he supplicated his last son who had never yet opposed his wishes: "You must save me. I am afflicted with this old age with its wrinkles, debility and grey hairs as a result of the curse of Sukracharya. It is too hard a trial! If you will take upon yourself these infirmities, I shall enjoy life for just a while more and then give you back your youth and resume my old age and all its sorrows. Pray, do not refuse as your elder brothers have done."

Puru, the youngest son, moved by filial love, said: "Father, I gladly give you my youth and relieve you of the sorrows of old age and cares of state. Be happy."

Hearing these words Yayati embraced him. As soon as he touched his son, Yayati became a youth. Puru, who accepted the old age of his father, ruled the kingdom and acquired great renown. Yayati enjoyed life for long, and not satisfied, went later to the garden of Kubera and spent many years with an Apsara maiden. After long years spent in vain efforts to quench desire by indulgence, the truth dawned on him.

Returning to Puru, he said: "Dear son, sensual desire is never quenched by indulgence any more than fire is by pouring ghee in it. I had heard and read this, but till now I had not realized it. No object of desire, corn, gold, cattle or women, nothing can ever satisfy the desire of man, We can reach peace only by a mental poise beyond likes and dislikes. Such is the state of Brahman. Take back your youth and rule the kingdom wisely and well."

“With these words Yayati took his old age. Puru, who regained his youth, was made

king by Yayati who retired to the forest. He spent his time there in austerities and, in due course, attained heaven.”

Can such nonsense be divinely inspired?

This was an example of men cursing men. Earlier, we had seen an example of men cursing ‘immortals. Now an example of men cursing gods.

**Chapter 8** **- Vidura**

This is the story of the sage Mandavya. Some robbers stole from the king and were pursued by the king’s soldiers. The robbers hid the stolen goods in the sage Mandavya’s ashram when he was absorbed in yoga. The soldiers asked him if he had seen any robbers pass by. The sage did not hear as he was deep in meditation. In the meantime, some attendants discovered the stolen goods and reported it to the commander of the soldiers. The commander thought that Mandavya was pretending to be a sage and was the chief of the robbers and reported it as such to the king. The story follows:

“The king was very angry at the audacity of the chief of the robbers who had put on the garb of a brahmana sage, the better to deceive the world. Without pausing to verify the facts, he ordered the wicked criminal, as he thought him, to be impaled.

The commander returned to the hermitage, impaled Mandavya on a spear and handed over the stolen things to the king. The virtuous sage, though impaled on the spear, did not die. Since he was in yoga when he was impaled, he remained alive by the power of yoga. Sages who lived in other parts of the forest came to his hermitage and asked Mandavya how he came to be in that terrible pass. Mandavya replied: "Whom shall I blame? The servants of the king, who protect the

world, have inflicted this punishment."

The king was surprised and frightened when he heard that the impaled sage was still alive and that he was surrounded by the other sages of the forest. He hastened to the forest with his attendants and at once ordered the sage to be taken down from the spear. Then he prostrated at his feet and prayed humbly to be forgiven for the offence unwittingly committed.

Mandavya was not angry with the king. He went straight to Dharma, the divine

dispenser of justice, who was seated on his throne, and asked him: "What crime

have I committed to deserve this torture?" Lord Dharma, who knew the great power

of the sage, replied in all humility: "O sage, you have tortured birds and bees. Are you not aware that all deeds, good or bad, however small, inevitably produce their results, good or evil?"

Mandavya was surprised at this reply of Lord Dharma and asked: "When did I commit this offence?" Lord Dharma replied: "When you were a child." Mandavya then pronounced a curse on Dharma: "This punishment you have decreed is far in excess of the deserts of a mistake committed by a child in ignorance. Be born, therefore, as a mortal in the world."

Lord Dharma who was thus cursed by the sage Mandavya incarnated as Vidura and

was born of the servant-maid of Ambalika, the wife of Vichitravirya.”

Some more examples of curses and boons:

**Chapter 9** **– Kunti Devi**

When Kunti was a little girl, the sage Durvasa stayed for a time as a guest in her

father's house and she served the sage for a year with all care, patience and devotion. He was so pleased with her that he gave her a divine mantra. He said: "If you call upon any god repeating this mantra, he will manifest himself to you and bless you with a son equal to him in glory." He granted her this boon because he foresaw by his yogic power the misfortune that was in store for her future husband.

The impatient curiosity of youth made Kunti test then and there the efficacy of the mantra by repeating it and invoking the Sun whom she saw shining in the heavens. At once the sky grew dark with clouds, and under cover of them the Sun god approached the beautiful princess Kunti and stood gazing at her with ardent soul scorching admiration. Kunti, overpowered by the glorious vision of her divine visitor, asked: "O god, who art thou?"

The Sun replied: "Dear maiden, I am the Sun. I have been drawn to you by the spell

of the son-giving mantra that you have uttered."

Kunti was aghast and said: "I am an unwedded girl dependent on my father. I am not fit for motherhood and do not desire it. I merely wished to test the power of the boon granted by the sage Durvasa. Go back and forgive this childish folly of mine." But the Sun god could not thus return because the power of the mantra held him. She for her part was mortally afraid of being blamed by the world. The Sun god however reassured her: "No blame shall attach to you. After bearing my son, you will regain virginity.''

Kunti conceived by the grace of the Sun, the giver of light and life to all the world. Divine births take place immediately without the nine months weary course of mortal gestation.

She gave birth to Karna who was born with divine armor and earrings and was bright and beautiful like the Sun. In time, he became one of the world's greatest heroes. After the birth of the child, Kunti once again became a virgin as a result of the boon granted by the Sun.

**Chapter 10 - Death Of Pandu**

One day King Pandu was out hunting. A sage and his wife were also sporting in the

forest in the guise of deer. Pandu shot the male with an arrow, in ignorance of the

fact that it was a sage in disguise. Stricken to death the rishi thus cursed Pandu:

"Sinner, you will meet with death the moment you taste the pleasures of the bed." [The ‘sages’, rishis have nothing to do but their austerities so that they can accumulate merit points to be used to grant boons to people who serve them and curse any who cause them any harm wittingly or unwittingly. There are many such people in India consuming without producing, living as mendicants.]

“Pandu was heartbroken at this curse and retreated to the forest with his wives after

entrusting his kingdom to Bhishma and Vidura and lived there a life of perfect abstinence. Seeing that Pandu was desirous of offspring, which the rishi’s curse had

denied him, Kunti confided to him the story of the mantra she had received from Durvasa. He urged Kunti and Madri to use the mantra and thus it was that the five

Pandavas were born of the gods to Kunti and Madri. They were born and brought up in the forest among ascetics.

King Pandu lived for many years in the forest with his wives and children. It was springtime. And one day Pandu and Madri forgot their sorrows in the rapture of sympathy with the throbbing life around them, the happy flowers, creepers, birds and other creatures of the forest. In spite of Madri’s earnest and repeated protests Pandu’s resolution broke down under the exhilarating influence of the season, and at once the curse of the sage took effect and Pandu fell, dead.

Madri could not contain her sorrow. Since she felt that she was responsible for the

death of the king. She burnt herself on the pyre of her husband entreating Kunti to

remain and be a mother to her doubly orphaned children. [These are supposed to be the divinely inspired words of God. No wonder the Brahmins kept the practice of Sati alive for millennia.]

The sages of the forest took the bereaved and grief-stricken Kunti and the Pandavas

to Hastinapura and entrusted them to Bhishma.

Another example of the sages’ practice of not working for a living but obtaining it from others by begging.

**Chapter 31** **– Agastaya**

“She [Lopamudra, Agastaya’s wife] said: "My desire is that I may have the royal bedding, the beautiful robes and the valuable jewels I had when I was in my father's place and that you too may have splendid garments and ornaments. And then we shall enjoy life to our heart's content." Agastya smilingly replied: "I have neither the wealth nor the facilities to provide what you want. Are we not beggars living in the forest?"

But Lopamudra knew her lord's yogic power, and said: "Lord, you are all powerful

by the strength of your austerities. You can get the wealth of the whole world in a moment if you but will."

Agastya said that no doubt that was so, but, if he spent his austerities in gaining

things of such little moment as riches, they would soon dwindle to nothing.

She replied: "I do not wish that. What I desire is that you should earn in the

ordinary way sufficient wealth for us to live in ease and comfort."

Agastya consented and set out as an ordinary brahmana to beg of various kings. Agastya went to a king who was reputed to be very wealthy. The sage told the king: "I have come in quest of wealth. Give me what I seek, without causing any loss or injury to others."

The king presented a true picture of the income and expenditure of the State and told him he was free to take what he deemed fit. The sage found from the accounts that there was no balance left. The expenditure of a State turns out always to be at least equal to its income. This seems to have been the case in ancient times also. Seeing this, Agastya said: "To accept any gift from this king, will be a hardship to the citizens. So, I shall seek elsewhere," and the sage was about to leave. The king said that he would also accompany him and both of them went to another State where also they found the same state of affairs.

Vyasa thus lays down and illustrates the maxim that a king should not tax his

subjects more than necessary for rightful public expenditure and that if one accepts

as gift anything from the public revenues, one adds to the burden of the subjects to

that extent.

Agastya thought he had better go to the wicked asura Ilvala and try his luck. Ilvala and his brother Vatapi cherished an implacable hatred towards brahmanas. They had curious plan for killing them.

Ilvala would, with effective hospitality, invite a brahmana to a feast. By the power of his magic he would transform his brother Vatapi into a goat and he would kill this pseudo-goat for food and serve its meat to the guest. In those days, the brahmanas used to eat

meat. The feast over, Ilvala would invoke his brother Vatapi to come out, for he had

the art of bringing back to life those whom he had killed. And Vatapi, who as food had entered the vitals of the unlucky brahmana, would spring up sound and whole and rend his way out with fiendish laughter, of course killing the guest in doing so. In this manner, many brahmanas had died.

Ilvala was very happy when he learnt that Agastya was in the neighborhood, since he felt that here was a good brahmana delivered into his hands. So, he welcomed him and prepared the usual feast. The sage ate heartily of Vatapi transformed into a goat, and it only remained for Ilvala to call out Vatapi for the rending scene. And, as usual, Ilvala

repeated the magic formula and shouted: "Vatapi come out!"

Agastya smiled and, gently rubbing his stomach, said: "O Vatapi, be digested in my stomach for the peace and good of the world." Ilvala shouted again and again in

frantic fear: "O Vatapi, come forth." There was no response and the sage explained the reason. Vatapi had been digested. The trick had been tried once too often.

The asura bowed to Agastya and surrendered to him the riches he sought. Thus was the sage able to satisfy Lopamudra's desire.

Here are some more ridiculous tales.

**Chapter 20 - Jarasandha**

THE Pandavas ruled Indraprastha in all glory. Those who surrounded Yudhishthira urged him to perform the Rajasuya sacrifice and assume the title of Emperor…

Yudhishthira sought Sri Krishna's advice in this matter. Yudhishthira said: "'My people urge me to perform Rajasuya, but as you know, only he who can secure the respect and

allegiance of all kings, can perform that sacrifice and win the status of emperor…”

Krishna replied: "Quite so and that is why you cannot be emperor while the mighty

Jarasandha of Magadha is alive and unconquered. He has conquered many kings and holds them in subjection. All the kshatriyas, including the redoubtable Sisupala himself, are afraid of his prowess and are submissive to him. Have you not heard of the wicked Kamsa, the son of Ugrasena? After he had become the son-in-law and ally of Jarasandha my people and I attacked Jarasandha. After three years of continuous fighting we had to acknowledge defeat and we left Mathura and moved to Dwaraka in the west and built a new city where we are living in peace and plenty.” [Here is Krishna acknowledging that he was defeated in war. He is also supposed to be an incarnation of Vishnu, and yet was defeated by a human king.] Even if Duryodhana, Karna and others do not object to your assuming the title of emperor, Jarasandha will certainly oppose it. And the only way to overcome his opposition is to defeat and kill him. You can then not only perform the Rajasuya but also rescue and win the adherence of the kings who languish in his prisons."

At these words of Krishna, Yudhishthira said: "I agree. I am but one of the many

kings who rule their kingdoms with fairness and justice and lead happy unambitious lives. It is mere vanity and vainglory to desire to become an emperor…And really, the

title has no temptations for me. It is my brothers who wish it. When you yourself are afraid of Jarasandha what can we hope to do?"

Bhima did not at all like this spirit of cowardly contentment. Bhima said: "Ambition is the noblest virtue of a king…What, indeed, cannot be accomplished by a combination of my

physical strength, Krishna's wisdom and Arjuna's dexterity? We can conquer

Jarasandha's might…"

Krishna interposed: "Jarasandha should certainly be slain and fully deserves it. He has unjustly cast eighty-six princes in prison. He has planned to immolate a hundred kings and is waiting to lay hold of fourteen more. If Bhima and Arjuna agree, I shall accompany them and together we will slay that king by stratagem and set free the imprisoned princes. I like this suggestion."

Yudhishthira was not pleased with this Advice...[But] Finally…assented to the unanimous opinion that their duty lay in slaying Jarasandha.

**Chapter 21 - The Slaying of Jarasandha**

BRIHADRATHA, the commander of three regiments, reigned in the kingdom of

Magadha and attained celebrity as a great hero. He married the twin daughters of the

raja of Kasi and vowed to them that he would not show any partiality to either…He was not blessed with a child for a long time. He went to Sage Kausika of the Gautama family, with a sorrowful longing for children in his heart. And when the sage was moved with pity and asked him what he wanted, he answered: "I am childless and have come to the forest giving up my kingdom. Give me children."

The sage was filled with compassion and, even as he was thinking how to help the king, a mango fruit fell into his lap. He took it and gave it to the king with this blessing: "Take it. Your wish will be fulfilled." The king cut the fruit into two halves and gave one to each wife. He did so to keep his vow not to show partiality to either.

Sometime after they had partaken of the fruit, the wives became pregnant. The delivery took place in due course. But instead of bringing the expected joy, it plunged them into greater grief than before. For they each gave birth to but a half of a child. Each half was a monstrous birth which seemed a revolting lump. They were indeed two equal and

complementary portions of one baby, consisting of one eye, one leg, half a face, one ear and so on. Seized with grief, they commanded their attendants to tie the gruesome pieces in a cloth and cast them away.

The attendants did as they were instructed and threw the cloth bundle on a heap of

refuse in the street. A cannibal Rakshasi chanced upon that place. She was elated at

seeing the two pieces of flesh and, as she gathered them up both at once, accidently

the halves came together the right way. And they at once adhered together and

changed into a whole living child, perfect in every detail.

The surprised Rakshasi did not wish to kill the child. She took on the guise of a

beautiful woman and, going to the king, presented the child to him saying: "This is

your child." The king was immensely delighted and handed it over to his two wives. This child became known as Jarasandha. He grew up in to a man of immense physical strength. But his body had one weakness namely, that being made up by the fusion of two separate parts, it could be split again into two, if sufficient force were used.

When the conquest and slaying of Jarasandha had been resolved upon, Sri Krishna said: "Hamsa, Hidimbaka, Kamsa, and other allies of Jarasandha are no more. Now that

he is isolated, this is the right time to kill him. It is useless to fight with armies. He

must be provoked to a single combat and slain."

“They [Krishna and the Pandavas] disguised themselves as men who had taken religious vows, clad in robes of bark-fibre and carrying the holy darbha grass in their hands. Thus, they entered the kingdom of Magadha and arrived at the capital of Jarasandha.

Krishna, Bhima, and Arjuna entered the palace unarmed. Jarasandha received them

with respect as their noble bearing seemed to indicate an illustrious origin. Bhima and Arjuna made no reply to his words of welcome because they wished to avoid having to tell lies. Krishna spoke on their behalf: "These two are observing a vow of silence for the

present as part of their austerities. They can speak only after midnight."

Jarasandha entertained them in the hall of sacrifice and returned to the palace. It was the practice of Jarasandha to meet noble guests who had taken vows and talk to them at their leisure and convenience, and so he called at midnight to see them. Their conduct made Jarasandha suspicious, and he also observed that they had on their hands the scars made by the bowstring and had besides the proud bearing of kshatriyas.

When Jarasandha demanded the truth of them they said frankly: "We are your foes and seek instant combat. You can choose one of us at will to fight with you." After acquainting himself as to who they were, Jarasandha said: "Krishna, you are a cowherd and Arjuna is a mere boy. Bhima is famous for his physical strength. So, I wish to fight with him." Since Bhima was unarmed, Jarasandha chivalrously agreed to fight him without weapons.

Bhima and Jarasandha were so equally matched in strength that they fought with each other continuously for thirteen days without taking rest or refreshments, [an extremely tall tale] while Krishna and Arjuna looked on in alternating hope and anxiety. On the fourteenth day, Jarasandha showed signs of exhaustion, and Krishna prompted Bhima that the time had come to make an end of him.

At once Bhima lifted him and whirling him round and round a hundred times, dashed him to the earth and seizing his legs tore his body asunder into two halves. And Bhima roared in exultation. The two halves at once joined and Jarasandha, thus made whole, [really no comment about believing this foolishness] leapt up into vigorous life and again attacked Bhima. Bhima aghast at the sight, was at a loss what to do, when he saw Krishna pick up a straw, tear it into two, and cast the bits in opposite directions.

Bhima took the hint, and when once again he tore Jarasandha asunder he threw the

two portions in opposite directions, so that they could not come together and join. Thus, did Jarasandha meet his end.

The Mahabharata was written after the Ramayana and refers to some of the characters in the Ramayana. Here is a reference to Hanuman, the monkey god.

**Chapter 37 – Bhima and Hanuman** [My comments in square brackets]

Anxious to please his beloved Draupadi [Pandavas are the five sons of Pandu, by his two wives Kunti and Madri, who was the princess of Madra. Their names are Yudhishthira, Bhima, Arjuna, Nakula and Sahadeva. All five brothers were married to the same woman, Draupadi.], Bhima went in quest of that plant. He went alone in the direction from which the fragrance seemed to be borne by the breeze, without wasting a thought on the wild beasts that crossed his path. [Apparently the fragrance of this plant can be smelled miles away.]

He presently came to a garden of plantain trees at the foot of a mountain, and there he saw a huge monkey shining like blazing fire, which lay right across his path blocking it. He tried to frighten the animal out of his way by shouting at it. It only half opened its eyes lazily and drawled: "I am indisposed and so I am lying here. Why did you wake me? You are a wise human being and I am mere animal. It is proper that the rational man should show mercy to animals as inferior creatures. I am afraid you are ignorant of right and wrong. Who are you? Whither are you bound? It is not possible to go further along this mountain path which is the path of the gods. Men cannot cross this limit. Eat what you like of the fruits of this place and if you are wise, go back in peace." [A talking monkey. Almost all animals in the Hindu ‘holy’ books can communicate with humans in the language of the humans].

Bhima, unused to being taken so lightly, grew angry and shouted: "Who are you, yourself, you monkey, that indulges in such tall talk? I am a kshatriya hero, a descendant of the Kuru race and a son of Kunti. Know that I am the son of the Wind god. [So here is a human, the son of the wind god.] Now move away from the path or stop me at your peril."

Hearing these words, the monkey merely smiled and said: "I am, as you say, a monkey, but you will come to destruction if you try to force a way." Bhima said: "I do not want your advice and it is no concern of yours if I go to destruction. Get up and move out of the way or I will make you."

The monkey replied: "I have no strength to stand up, being but a very old monkey. If you have to go at any cost, jump over me." Bhima said: "Nothing could be easier, but the scriptures forbid it. [There are a lot of similar superstitions in the Hindu scriptures.] Otherwise, I should jump over you and the mountain in one bound, like Hanuman [the monkey god in the Ramayana] crossing the ocean."

The monkey remarked as though in surprise: "O best of men, who is that Hanuman who crossed the ocean? If you know his story, enlighten me."

Bhima roared and said: "Have you not heard of Hanuman, my elder brother, who crossed the ocean, a hundred yojanas [Yojana is a measure of distance about 12-15 km in length. Quite a tall tale here] in breadth, to seek and find Sita, the wife of Rama? I am equal to him in strength and heroism. Well, that is enough talk, now get up and make way and do not provoke me to do you some harm."

The monkey answered: "O mighty hero, be patient. Be gentle as you are strong and have mercy on the old and weak. I have no strength to rise up as I am decrepit with age. Since you have scruples in jumping over me, kindly move aside my tail and make a path for yourself."

Proud of his immense strength, Bhima thought to pull the monkey out of the way by its tail. But, to his amazement he could not move it in the least, though he exerted all his strength. He set his jaws and strained every muscle till the very sinews cracked and he was covered with perspiration. But, still, could not move that tail the least, a little bit up or down or sideways. In shame, he bent down his head, and then asked in a

chastened mood:

"Who are you? Forgive me and reveal to me whether you are a Siddha, god or Gandharva." Bhima like most strong men, was all respect when he saw one stronger than himself and spoke like a pupil addressing his master.

Hanuman replied: "O mighty-armed Pandava, know that I am your brother, even that Hanuman, the son of the Wind god, whom you mentioned a little while ago. If you go on this path, which is the road to the spirit-world where the Yakshas and the Rakshasas abide, you will meet with danger and that is why I stop you. No man can go beyond this and live. But here is the stream with its depths where you can find the Saugandhika plant you came to seek."

Bhima was transported with delight: "I count myself the most fortunate of men in that I have been blessed to meet my brother. I wish to see the form in which you crossed the ocean," and he prostrated before Hanuman.

Hanuman smiled and began to increase the size of his body and stood forth firmly to the world like a mountain seeming to fill the landscape. [How much more ridiculous can these fibs get? Hindus believe them and worship these animals as gods]. Bhima was thrilled at actually seeing that divine form of this elder brother, the mere description of which had till then filled him with wonder. He covered his eyes, unable to bear the dazzling light radiating from that figure.

Hanuman said: "Bhima, in the presence of my enemies, my body can grow still more." And Hanuman contracted his body, resuming his former size. He tenderly embraced Bhimasena.

THE DECEITFULNESS OF KRISHNA AND RAMA

Would God [or incarnation of a god] need to use deceit for anything He wants to accomplish? No! A thousand times no!!! God is Almighty and does not need to lie or use deceit to accomplish what He wants. Such is the God of the Bible.

But Krishna and Rama, supposed gods, the incarnations of the god Vishnu, used deceit whenever it suited their purpose, to win in war, just like most other human beings. The incident of how Rama killed Vali has already been described. Here is the example from the Mahabharata:

**Chapter 90** **– Drona Passes Away**

The battle did not stop. Drona spread fear and destruction in the Pandava army by his relentless attacks. "O Arjuna," said Krishna, "there is none that can defeat this Drona, fighting according to the strict rules of war. We cannot cope with him unless dharma is discarded. We have no other way open. [Dharma means righteousness, or right conduct. So, Krishna is counseling Arjuna to discard right conduct in order to win the war. One should be able to recognize that this is Satan inspired who wants humans to think deception is OK in some situations.] There is but one thing that will make him desist from fighting. If he hears that Aswatthama [Drona’s son] is dead, Drona will lose all interest in life and throw down his weapons. Someone must therefore tell Drona that Aswatthama has been slain.”

Arjuna shrank in horror at the proposal, as he could not bring himself to tell a lie. Those who were nearby with him also rejected the idea, for no one was minded being a party to deceit. Yudhishthira stood for a while reflecting deeply. "I shall bear the burden of this sin," he said and resolved the deadlock!

It was strange… To save the friend who had wholly depended on him, Rama was driven to bear the sin of killing Vali, in disregard of the rules of fair play. [That incident has already been described. That is the justification being used to disregard fair play in order to win the battle here in the Mahabharata]. So also, now did Yudhishthira decide to bear the shame of it, for there was no other way.

Bhima lifted his iron mace and brought it down on the head of a huge elephant called Aswatthama and it fell dead. After killing the elephant Aswatthama, Bhimasena went near the division commanded by Drona and roared so that all might hear. "I have killed Aswatthama!"

Bhimasena who, until then, had never done or even contemplated an ignoble act, was, as he uttered these words, greatly ashamed. They knocked against his very heart, but could they be true? Drona heard these words as he was in the act of discharging a Brahmastra [a magical ‘divine’ weapon. Hindu epics abound in such fairy tales.]

"Yudhishthira, is it true my son has been slain?" Dronacharya asked addressing Dharmaputra. The acharya thought that Yudhishthira would not utter an untruth, even for the kingship of the three worlds.

When Drona asked thus, Krishna was terribly perturbed. “If Yudhishthira fails us now and shrinks from uttering an untruth, we are lost. Drona's Brahmastra is of unquenchable potency and the Pandavas will be destroyed," he said. [Here the supposed god Krishna is perturbed that if Yudhistra does not go through with his lie, their side would be doomed. That should give the Hindus a clue that Krishna is not god but just a human being who is deified in their scriptures.] And Yudhishthira himself stood trembling in horror of what he was about to do, but within him also was the desire to win. "Let it be my sin," he said to himself and hardened his heart, and said aloud: “Yes, it is true that Aswatthama has been killed.” But, as he was saying it, he felt again the disgrace of it and added in a low and tremulous voice, "Aswatthama, the elephant" words which were however drowned in the din and were not heard by Drona.

When the words of untruth came out of Yudhishthira's mouth, the wheels of his chariot, which until then always stood and moved four inches above the ground and never touched it at once came down and touched the earth. [Wow! What a tale of a flying chariot]. Yudhishthira, who till then had stood apart from the world so full of untruth, suddenly became of the earth, earthy. He too desired victory and slipped into the way of untruth and so his chariot came down to the common road of mankind.

When Drona heard that his beloved son had been slain, all his attachment to life snapped. And desire vanished as if it had never been there. When the veteran was in that mood, Bhimasena loudly spoke indicting him in harsh words: "You brahmins, abandoning the legitimate functions of your varna [or caste] and taking to the Kshatriya profession of arms, have brought ruin to princes. If you brahmins had not gone astray from the duties belonging to you by birth, the princes would not have been led to this destruction. You teach that non-killing is the highest dharma and that the brahmin is the supporter and nourisher of that dharma. Yet, you have rejected that wisdom which is yours by birth, and shamelessly undertaken the profession of killing. It was our misfortune that you descended to this sinful life."

“These taunts of Bhimasena caused excruciating pain to Drona who had already lost the will to live. He threw his weapons away and sat down in yoga on the floor of his chariot and was soon in a trance.”

“At this moment Dhrishtadyumna with drawn sword, came and climbed in to the chariot and heedless of cries of horror and deprecation from all around he fulfilled his destiny as the slayer of Drona by sweeping off the old warrior's head. And the soul of the son of Bharadwaja issued out in a visible blaze of flight and mounted heavenwards.”

If Krishna and Rama were real gods, they would not have needed to use duplicity or lying to win in war. The God of the Bible does not do any such things. Krishna and Rama were mere men, who had deified themselves, and their followers and descendants have passed that on from generation to generation.

**CHAPTER 3**

**Are Ramayana, Mahabharata and Gita the Word of God?**

In the beginning, we had established one criterion to prove if a scripture is the word of God, which was to see if God’s Almighty power is demonstrated in its pages by God foretelling numerous events (not one or two, which can come true by mere coincidence, especially when there is a 50% chance that the event can come true or not, such as victory in a particular battle) and bringing them to pass exactly as foretold through months, years, decades, centuries or millennia. This is the ONLY CRITERION which can prove that a holy book is the word of God. Using this criterion, all the three holy books of Hinduism fail our test. Hence, they are NOT the word of God. They are writings of mere men.

Another way we can demonstrate that a holy book is NOT the word of God is by proving that the holy book contains enormous amount of information that is simply too fantastic to be believed. It defies human reason. However, this criterion still cannot prove that the holy book is the word of God. With all the quotes from the two holy books I have provided (we don’t need to consider the Gita separately as it is a small part of the Mahabharata itself), it is abundantly clear that most of the information contained in them is utterly ridiculous nonsense. Both books are full of much more similar trash. It defies human reason. Therefore, these holy books are NOT the word of God.

The final way to prove that the holy book is NOT the word of God is to find some provable scientific or historical errors. Since we are trying to prove that the holy book is the word of God, it should contain no errors at all, because God cannot make mistakes. Only in the Gita Krishna claims he created everything, but not how he did it, or how it is supported. The idea that the earth stands on the horns of a bull comes from other Hindu scriptures. I have not delved deeper to find scientific errors. But I will discuss some of Krishna’s philosophy in the Gita later and offer my comments on the inconsistencies.

**Some Greek Myths**

Now consider some Greek myths, which are equally implausible.

Here are some of the myths attributed to the Greek god Zeus, who is the same as the Roman god Jupiter, and is also the Indian god Indra (though the deeds attributed to them in the Indian, Greek and Roman myths are different, as they developed independently after deification, which will be explained later. Indra and Zeus’s identity will also be revealed] from the website www.theoi.com. He is the equivalent of the Indian god Indra [my comments in square brackets]:

***Zeus***

“ZEUS was the King of the Gods and the god of the sky, weather, law and order, destiny and fate, and kingship. He was depicted as a regal, mature man with a sturdy figure and dark beard. His usual attributes were a lightning bolt, a royal sceptre and an eagle.

‘Zeus was the youngest child of the Titans Kronos (Cronus) and Rheia. Kronos devoured each of his children as they were born, but Zeus escaped this fate when his mother spirited him away, handing the Titan a stone substitute wrapped in swaddling cloth.

“The god was raised in secrecy on Mount Dikte in Krete (Crete) where he was nursed by nymphs on the milk of the goat Amaltheia and guarded by the warrior Kouretes (Curetes) who drowned out the sound of his crying with their shield-clashing battle-dance.

“Upon coming of age Zeus recruited the goddess Metis to his cause. She served the Titan Kronos a magical draught which caused him to disgorge the young gods he had devoured.

“Zeus liberated the six giant-sons of Heaven from the pit of Tartaros. In gratitude the Kyklopes (Cyclopes) armed him with lightning-bolts [Sound familiar to you Hindus? Rishis getting boons of weapons such as agniastra, brahmastra etc, and the thunderbolts of Indra] and the Hekatonkheires (Hundred-Handed) [does Ravana sound familiar] aided him in his assault on the Titanes with volleys of thrown boulders. Kronos and his allies were eventually defeated and banished to a prison beneath the earth.

After the fall of the Titan-gods, Zeus and his brothers drew lots to divide rule of the cosmos - Zeus won the heavens, Poseidon the sea and Haides the underworld.

“Zeus devoured the pregnant goddess Metis when an oracle revealed that her son was destined to replace him as King of the Gods. Their child, Athena, was subsequently born in his belly and birthed directly from his head. [Another part of the myth is that the god Hephaestus hit Zeus’s head with an axe and out came Athena fully grown].

“Zeus married his sister Hera, queen of the heavens, after seducing her in the guise of a cuckoo-bird. But this union of ever quarreling sky-god and sky-goddess proved not to be a match made in heaven! [Don’t you recognize these as human beings who had deified themselves?]

“Prometheus crafted the race of man and gave them fire stolen from the gods of heaven. Zeus punished this act by ordering the creation of the first woman, Pandora, and sent her to earth with a vessel full of troubles to plague mankind. Prometheus himself was arrested and chained to a mountain with an eagle set to torment him.

“The early generations of man descended into wickedness and corruption and Zeus decided to wipe them from the face of the earth with a great deluge. One virtuous couple, Deukalion and Pyrrha, were spared and afterwards allowed to repopulate the world with the casting of stones which transformed into men. [Wow! Stones were transformed into men.]

“The earth-goddess Gaia (Gaea), angered by the imprisonment of the Titanes, urged the Giants to rise up against the gods of Olympos. They laid siege to the heavenly fortress, but Zeus laid low their king and many others with his deadly lightning-bolts.

Gaia produced one more giant, Typhoeus, the most monstrous of his kind and set him upon Olympos. The rest of the gods fled in horror and Zeus himself was defeated in combat with the monster tearing the sinews from his limbs rendering him helpless. [what kind of a god of gods is Zeus if he can be defeated by a monster? This is a hint that these were all human beings who had deified themselves.] Pan later stole back the god's strength and, restored, Zeus defeated the giant in a rematch and bound him beneath Mount Etna.

“Zeus seduced many mortal women including Leda in the guise of a swan, Europa as a bull, Danae as a shower of gold, Alkmene as her own husband, Kallisto (Callisto) as the goddess Artemis, and Antiope as a satyr. [What an unholy and wicked god].

***Hephaestus (Vulcan)***

Here are some myths about the Greek god Hephaestus (the Roman Vulcan):

*Hesiod, Theogony 929a ff:* "[Theogony text version 2:] But Hera was very angry and quarreled with her mate [Zeus]. And because of this strife she bare without union with Zeus [without sexual intercourse] who holds the aegis a glorious son, Hephaistos, who excelled all the sons of Heaven in crafts. But Zeus lay with the fair-cheeked daughter of Okeanos and Tethys apart from Hera [and from this union Athene was born]."

*Homeric Hymn 3 to Pythian Apollo 310 ff (trans. Evelyn-White) (Greek epic C7th to 4th B.C.):* “Hera was angry and spoke thus among the assembled gods : ‘. . . See now, apart from me he [Zeus] has given birth to bright-eyed Athene who is foremost among all the blessed gods. But my son Hephaistos whom I bare was weakly among all the blessed gods and shriveled of foot, a shame and a disgrace to me in heaven, whom I myself took in my hands and cast out so that he fell in the great sea. But silver-shod Thetis the daughter of Nereus took and cared for him with her sisters: would that she had done other service to the blessed gods!’"

*Pseudo-Apollodorus, Bibliotheca 1. 19 (trans. Aldrich) (Greek mythographer C2nd A.D.:*  
"Zeus threw him [Hephaistos] from the sky for helping Hera when she was in chains. Zeus had hung her from Olympos as punishment for setting a storm on Herakles as he was sailing back from his conquest of Troy. Hephaistos landed on Lemnos, crippled in both legs, but saved by Thetis."

*Pseudo-Hyginus, Fabulae 142 (trans. Grant) (Roman mythographer C2nd A.D.):*  
"Prometheus, son of Iapetus, first fashioned men from clay. Later Vulcanus [Hephaistos], at Jove's [Zeus; ] command, made a woman's form from clay. Minerva [Athena] gave it life, and the rest of the gods each gave some other gift. Because of this they named her Pandora. She was given in marriage to Prometheus' brother Epimetheus."

*Pseudo-Apollodorus, Bibliotheca 1. 45 (trans. Aldrich) (Greek mythographer C2nd A.D. :*  
"He [Zeus] ordered Hephaistos to rivet the body of Prometheus to Mount Kaukasos, a Skythian mountain, where he was kept fastened and bound for many years."

"Typhon . . . felt an urge to usurp the rule of Zeus and not one of the gods could withstand him as he attacked. In panic they fled to Aigyptos (Egypt), all except Athena and Zeus, who alone were left. Typhon hunted after them, on their track. When they fled they had changed themselves in anticipation into animal forms . . . Hephaistos [became] an ox [Ptah] . . . When Zeus struck Typhon with a thunderbolt, Typhon, aflame hid himself and quenched the blaze in the sea.

*Aeschylus, Bassarae (lost play) (Greek tragedy C5th B.C.):* The subject of this lost play is summarised by Weir Smyth (L.C.L.): "Thetis, accompanied by her sister Nereïdes, comes from the depths of the sea to enquire the cause of the lamentations of her son. She finds Akhilleus by the dead body of Patroklos and promises to procure from Hephaistos new armor that he may take vengeance on Hector, who has been exulting over the death of Patroklos.

*Homer, Iliad 21. 328 - 384:* "[The river-god Skamandros tries to drown Akhilleus [Achilles] in his stream :] Hera, greatly fearing for Akhilleus, cried in a loud voice lest he be swept away in the huge deep-eddying River, and at once thereafter appealed to her own dear son, Hephaistos : ‘Rise up god of the dragging feet (*kyllopodion*), my child; for we believe that whirling Xanthos [i.e. Skamandros] would be fit antagonist for you in battle. Go now quickly to the help of Akhilleus, make shine a great flame while I raise up and bring in out of the sea a troublesome storm of the West Wind (Zephyros) and the whitening South Wind (Notos), a storm that will burn the heads of the Trojans and burn their armour carrying the evil flame, while you be the banks of Xanthos set fire to the trees and throw fire on the River himself, and do not by any means let him turn you with winning words or revilements. Do not let your fury be stopped until such time as I lift my voice and cry to you. Then stay your weariless burning.’

*Pseudo-Apollodorus, Bibliotheca E4. 7 (trans. Aldrich) (Greek mythographer C2nd A.D.):*"Akhilleus set aside his wrath and was given Briseis back. He put on a full suit of armour brought him from Hephaistos and went out to war, driving the Trojans in a body to the [river] Skamandros, where he destroyed many . . . In fury the River rose up against him. But Hephaistos chased the River with a great flame and dried up his stream."

Such is the stuff the Greeks and Romans realized as sheer nonsense and gave it up nearly 2000 years ago and converted to Christianity. The Egyptians converted to Christianity and then Islam. Only the Hindus have not been able to recognize their myths as just myths, made up, ridiculously foolish stories. The Ramayana, Mahabharata and the Gita are not holy scriptures. They are fabrications of Satan the devil who is making monkeys and fools out of Hindus by having inspired all this nonsense. Its high time the Hindus rejected the stupid, ridiculous tales and out of this world lies in their ‘holy’ books. They are not holy books if they are full of lies from the beginning to the end, of which I have quoted only a few. There is no salvation in lies. The salvation described in these holy books is a colossal lie. Hindus should instead worship the only true God.

**Claims of Krishna in the Gita**

While the Ramayana and the Mahabharata contain an abundance of such utterly ridiculous and foolish tales, the Bhagwat Gita (which is a small part of the Mahabharata) on the other hand contains philosophy on how to live, imparted by Krishna to Arjuna, a Pandava, in order to persuade him to fight in the war with the Kauravas. Here are the tall claims the duplicitous Krishna makes in the Gita: [Quotations are from the translation by Sir Purohit Swami; My comments in square brackets].

***Chapter 4 – Dnyana Yoga – The Path of Wisdom***

“Lord Shri Krishna said: This imperishable philosophy I taught to Viwaswana, the founder of the Sun dynasty[this is very significant, as will become clear when we discuss the identity of Krishna], Viwaswana gave it to Manu the lawgiver, and Manu to King Ikshwaku! The Divine Kings [obviously no human being is divine. These are human kings who had deified themselves] knew it, for it was their tradition. Then, after a long time, at last it was forgotten. It is the same ancient Path that I have now revealed to you, since you are my devotee and my friend. It is the supreme Secret.

Arjuna asked: My Lord! Viwaswana was born before you; how then could you have

revealed it to him?

Lord Shri Krishna replied: I have been born again and again, from time to time; you too,

O Arjuna! My births are known to Me, but you know not yours. I have no beginning. Though I am imperishable, as well as Lord of all that exists, yet by My own will and power do I manifest myself. Whenever spirituality decays and materialism is rampant, then, O Arjuna, I reincarnate Myself! To protect the righteous, to destroy the wicked and to establish the kingdom of God, I am reborn from age to age. [Krishna claims he is the creator and sustainer of everything. How was the universe sustained when he reincarnated himself as a human being? His claims are not coherent. They make no sense.]

He who realizes the divine truth concerning My birth and life is not born again; and when he leaves his body, he becomes one with Me. Many have merged their existences in Mine [Where does going to heaven fit it? Presumably Krishna is in heaven! But if our existence is merged in him, what was the point in separating from him in the first place? This is salvation that makes absolutely no sense at all.], being freed from desire, fear and anger, filled always with Me and purified by the illuminating flame of self-abnegation.

Howsoever men try to worship Me, so do I welcome them. By whatever path they travel,

it leads to Me at last. Those who look for success, worship the Powers [means Brahma, Shiva, Vishnu, goddesses Lakshmi, Parvati etc.]; and in this world their actions bear

immediate fruit.

The four divisions of society (the wise, the soldier, the merchant, the laborer) were

created by Me [When we know Krishna’s true identity, this claim is only partially right. These divisions were actually made by Manu, though Krishna was associated with him], according to the natural distribution of Qualities [Purity, Passion and Ignorance, Chapter 14] and instincts. I am the author of them, though I Myself do no action, and am changeless.

***Chapter 7 – Knowledge and Experience***

“Among thousands of men scarcely one strives for perfection, and even amongst those who gain occult powers, perchance but one knows me in truth.

Earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, intellect and personality; this is the eightfold division of My Manifested Nature. This is My inferior Nature; but distinct from this, O Valiant One, know that my Superior Nature is the very Life which sustains the universe. It is the womb of all being; for I am He by Whom the worlds were created and shall be dissolved. O Arjuna! There is nothing higher than Me; all is strung upon Me as rows of pearls upon a thread.

O Arjuna! I am the Fluidity in water, the Light in the sun and in the moon. I am the mystic syllable Om in the Vedic scriptures, the Sound in ether, the Virility in man. I am the Fragrance of earth, the Brilliance of fire. I am the Life Force in all beings, and I am the Austerity of the ascetics.

Know, O Arjuna, that I am the eternal Seed of being; I am the Intelligence of the intelligent, the Splendor of the resplendent. I am the Strength of the strong, of them who are free from attachment and desire; and, O Arjuna, I am the Desire for righteousness.

Whatever be the nature of their life, whether it be pure or passionate or ignorant, they are all derived from Me. They are in Me, but I am not in them. The inhabitants of the world, misled by those natures which the Qualities have engendered, know not that I am higher than them all, and that I do not change.

***Chapter 8 – Life Everlasting***

Repeating Om, the Symbol of Eternity, holding Me always in remembrance, he who thus leaves his body and goes forth reaches the Spirit Supreme.

***Chapter 9 – The Science of science and the Mystery of Mysteries***

Under my guidance, Nature produces all things movable and immovable. Thus, it is,

O Arjuna, that this universe revolves. Fools disregard Me, seeing Me clad in human form. They know not that in My higher nature I am the Lord-God of all. Their hopes are vain, their actions worthless, their knowledge futile; they are without sense, deceitful, barbarous and godless.

But the Great Souls, O Arjuna! Filled with My Divine Spirit, they worship Me, they fix

their minds on Me and on Me alone, for they know that I am the imperishable Source of

being. Always extolling Me, strenuous, firm in their vows, prostrating themselves before Me, they worship Me continually with concentrated devotion. Others worship Me with full consciousness as the One, the Manifold, the Omnipresent, the Universal.

I am the Oblation, the Sacrifice and the Worship; I am the Fuel and the Chant, I am the

Butter offered to the fire, I am the Fire itself, and I am the Act of offering. I am the Father of the universe and its Mother; I am its Nourisher and its Grandfather; I am the Knowable and the Pure; I am Om; and I am the Sacred Scriptures. I am the Goal, the Sustainer [How was the earth sustained when Krishna, the be-all incarnated himself as Krishna. Foolishness of the highest order.], the Lord, the Witness, the Home, the Shelter, the Lover and the Origin; I am Life and Death; I am the Fountain and the Seed Imperishable. I am the Heat of the Sun, I release and hold back the Rains. I am Death and Immortality; I am Being and Not-Being [A lot of meaningless nonsense].

Those who are versed in the scriptures, who drink the mystic Soma-juice [and what is this juice called Soma that purifies sin? What a philosophy, that mere drinking of a juice can purify a person from sin. Anything mystic is always a deception. The real God does not deal in mysticism, because it serves no purpose.] and are purified from sin, but who while worshipping Me with sacrifices pray that I will lead them to heaven; they reach the holy world where lives the Controller of the Powers of Nature, and they enjoy the feasts of Paradise. Yet although they enjoy the spacious glories of Paradise, nevertheless, when their merit is exhausted, they are born again into this world of mortals. [And how is this merit gained? By practicing austerities according to Hinduism. Such nonsense is the reason we see Indians wasting their lives on the banks of the Ganges river, practicing asceticism, or engaging in other austerities to gain merit, consuming without producing, obtaining what they consume as mendicants, and without any evidence that they gain the merit points that they seek]. They have followed the letter of the scriptures, yet because they have sought but to fulfill their own desires, they must depart and return again and again. But if a man will meditate on Me and Me alone, and will worship Me always and everywhere, I will take upon Myself the fulfillment of his aspiration, and I will safeguard whatsoever he shall attain.

***Chapter 10 - Divine Manifestations***

In Chapter 10 on Krishna’s divine manifestations, Arjuna asked: You art the Supreme Spirit, the Eternal Home, the Holiest of the Holy, the Eternal Divine Self, the Primal God, the Unborn and the Omnipresent. So have said the seers and the divine sage Narada…and you yourself also say it…Please tell me all about your glorious manifestations, by means of which you pervade the world.

Lord Shri Krishna replied: So be it, My beloved friend! I will unfold to thee some of the chief aspects of My glory. Of its full extent there is no end.

O Arjuna! I am the Self, seated in the hearts of all beings; I am the beginning and the life, and I am the end of them all. Of all the creative Powers I am the Creator, of luminaries the Sun; the Whirlwind among the winds, and the Moon among planets. Of the Vedas I am the Hymns, I am the Electric Force in the Powers of Nature; of the

senses I am the Mind; and I am the Intelligence in all that lives.

Among Forces of Vitality I am the life, I am Mammon to the heathen and the godless; I am the Energy in fire, earth, wind, sky, heaven, sun, moon and planets; and among mountains I am the Mount Meru.

Among the priests, know, O Arjuna, that I am the Apostle Brihaspati; of generals I am

Skanda, the Commander-in-Chief [If this is Alexander the Great, then the Mahabharata was written after Alexander came to India], and of waters I am the Ocean. Of the great seers I am Bhrigu, of words I am Om, of offerings I am the silent prayer, among things immovable I am the Himalayas. Of trees I am the sacred Fig-tree, of the Divine Seers Narada, of the heavenly singers I am Chitraratha, their Leader, and of sages I am Kapila. Know that among horses I am Pegasus, the heaven-born; among the lordly elephants I am the White one, and I am the Ruler among men. I am the Thunderbolt among weapons; of cows I am the Cow of Plenty, I am Passion in those who procreate, and I am the Cobra among serpents. I am the King-python among snakes, I am the Aqueous Principle among those that live in water, I am the Father of fathers, and among rulers I am Death. And I am the devotee Prahlad among the heathen; of Time I am the Eternal Present; I am the Lion among beasts and the Eagle among birds. I am the Wind among purifiers, the King Rama among warriors; I am the Crocodile among the fishes, and I am the Ganges among rivers.

I am the Beginning, the Middle and the End in creation; among sciences, I am the science of Spirituality; I am the Discussion among disputants. Of letters I am A; I am the copulative in compound words; I am Time inexhaustible; and I am the all-pervading Preserver. I am all-devouring Death; I am the Origin of all that shall happen; I am Fame, Fortune, Speech, Memory, Intellect, Constancy and Forgiveness…I am the Spring among seasons…and the Splendour of the splendid; I am Victory; I am Effort; and I am the Purity of the pure. I am Shri Krishna among the Vishnu-clan and Arjuna among the Pandavas; of the saints I am Vyasa, and I am Shukracharya among the sages.

I am the Sceptre of rulers, the Strategy of the conquerors, the Silence of mystery, the

Wisdom of the wise. I am the Seed of all being, O Arjuna! No creature moving or unmoving can live without Me. O Arjuna! The aspects of My divine life are endless. I have mentioned but a few by way of illustration. Whatever is glorious, excellent, beautiful and mighty, be assured that it comes from a fragment of My splendor. But what is the use of all these details to thee? O Arjuna! I sustain this universe with only

small part of Myself.”

You will not hear so many meaningless “I ams” from any other god, “I am this and I am that” than in this conversation between Krishna and his devotee Arjuna. But these are mere words. Krishna has not backed up any of his statements with verifiable acts as proof. There is no way to prove if all that Krishna claims is true. Since he cannot prove it, we have to conclude that the tall claims made by Krishna and Rama are pure lies. Both are charlatans and deceivers. The true God does not make claims that cannot be verified. The God of the Bible has given us plenty of proofs that He is the true God. You can find all those proofs in my book *“Which Religion is True?”* available free of charge at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

***Chapter 13 – Spirit and Matter***

I will speak to thee now of that great Truth which man ought to know, since by its means

he will win immortal bliss – that which is without beginning, the Eternal Spirit which

dwells in Me, neither with form, nor yet without it.

Know thou further that Nature and God have no beginning [Really? Not according to the Big Bang theory, which shows that matter on earth and the universe was created. Nature had a beginning]; and that differences of character and quality have their origin in Nature only.

***Chapter 17 – The Threefold Faith***

The food which men enjoy is also threefold, like the ways of sacrifice, austerity and

almsgiving. Listen to the distinction.

The foods that prolong life and increase purity, vigor, health, cheerfulness and happiness are those that are delicious, soothing, substantial and agreeable. These are loved by the Pure.

Those in whom Passion is dominant like foods that are bitter, sour, salty, over-hot,

pungent, dry and burning. These produce unhappiness, repentance and disease.

The Ignorant love food which is stale, not nourishing, putrid and corrupt, the leavings of

others and unclean. [This is sheer nonsense and could not be the words of God].

***Chapter 18 – The Spirit of Renunciation***

O Arjuna! The duties of spiritual teachers, the soldiers, the traders and the servants have all been fixed according to the dominant Quality in their nature.

Serenity, self-restraint, austerity, purity, forgiveness, as well as uprightness, knowledge,

wisdom and faith in God – these constitute the duty of a spiritual Teacher.

Valor, glory, firmness, skill, generosity, steadiness in battle and ability to rule – these

constitute the duty of a soldier. They flow from his own nature.

Agriculture, protection of the cow and trade are the duty of a trader, again in accordance

with his nature. The duty of a servant is to serve, and that too agrees with his nature.

Perfection is attained when each attends diligently to his duty. Listen and I will tell you

how it is attained by him who always minds his own duty. Man reaches perfection by dedicating his actions to God, Who is the source of all being, and fills everything. It is better to do one’s own duty, however defective it may be, than to follow the duty of

another, however well one may perform it. He who does his duty as his own nature

reveals it, never sins. The duty that of itself falls to one’s lot should not be abandoned, though it may have its defects. All acts are marred by defects, as fire is obscured by smoke.

[This is one of Hinduism’s most damnable philosophies that flies against reality. Many people engaged in agriculture can have all the qualities of a spiritual teacher, as well as a soldier. This terrible philosophy has led to the horrible caste system in India. This is not God-inspired but is devil-inspired as evident from its fruits. The origins of the caste -system are traced next, and it was originated by a man named Manu, who was rebelling against the true God. Fortunately, many Indians are rejecting such segregation of society today].

**CHAPTER 4**

**Biblical Identity of Manu, Rama, Krishna, Indra, Kaali Maa**

I have written two ancient history books titled *Satan vs God* Volumes 1 and 2, citing many ancient sources and findings of archaeology. The first book covers world history from the very beginning of creation of angels and then the material universe to creation of mankind to Noah’s Flood above 4300 years ago, and the second volume covers human history from the Flood to about 4 centuries after the Flood. This extremely brief summary on the identity of Manu, Rama and Krishna, Indra and Kaali Maa is provided from that history.

After the creation of Adam and Eve, their first son Cain murdered his own righteous brother. Thereafter, he was separated from the rest of Adam’s children. The story of one branch of Cain’s family is told in the Bible in Genesis 4:16-25:

“16 And Cain went out from the presence of the Lord, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden. 17 And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bare Enoch: and he builded a city, and called the name of the city, after the name of his son, Enoch 18 And unto Enoch was born Irad: and Irad begat Mehujael: and Mehujael begat Methusael: and Methusael begat Lamech. 19 And Lamech took unto him two wives [he was the first to originate polygamy. Adah was racially white and Zillah was black. He himself was non-white. So he also originated interracial marriages]: the name of the one was Adah, and the name of the other Zillah. 20 And Adah bare Jabal: he was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle. 21 And his brother’s name was Jubal: he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ [he was the inventor of musical instruments and the greatest musician of his day]. 22 And Zillah, she also bare Tubal-cain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron [he discovered the art of smelting ores and producing metals and alloys. This gave the family incredible superiority in weapons. Tubalcain went on a conquering expedition and conquered and killed wherever he went. After the family had deified themselves as gods, Tubalcain made metal idols of his family and installed them in temples dedicated to members of his family where people were told to come and worship them. Thus idol worship originated with this family]: and the sister of Tubalcain was Naamah [she invented textiles, and was a warrior herself with her family]. 23 And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice; you wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech: for I have slain a man to my wounding [he claims he killed an older man], and a young man to my hurt [claims that he killed a young man also]. 24 If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech seventy and sevenfold.”

After killing his brother, Cain went from bad to worse. He deified himself as a god, having swallowed Satan’s lie that he had an immortal soul, hence was already a god. His descendants also deified themselves. Ancestor worship originated among the children of Cain.

Lamech was Cain’s most famous descendant. He was the leading man of violence in the world, and literally the only man in the history of mankind to have ruled the entire world at one time with no challengers. He achieved that by murdering his own ancestor Cain, and also his son Tubalcain who had vied with him for control of the world. He was also the first polygamist in the Bible, and initiated interracial marriages, as the brief account of his activities quoted above describes.

These individuals were so famous that their stories have come down to us in the form of myths. Before the Flood, Cain and his descendants who were under his control originated ancestor worship and styled themselves as the Titan gods. Lamech and his family also deified themselves and styled themselves as the Olympian gods. Today Cain is known as the god Kronos, Lamech as the god Zeus of the Greeks, Jupiter of the Romans and Indra of the Indians. His signature weapon was the thunderbolt in myths of all three peoples. In reality, the weapon was a javelin, but was mythologized into a thunderbolt after the Flood. Jabal was the most ancient Hercules; Jubal the musician is Apollo, Tubalcain is Hephaestus of the Greeks and Vulcan of the Romans and Naamah is the goddess Athena of the Greeks, Minerva of the Romans and Kaali Maa (meaning black mother) of the Indians, because she was a black negro woman.

Because of the violence and wickedness of Lamech and his descendants, and for deifying themselves and forcing the world to worship them, God decided to drown the entire world, saving only Noah, his wife, his three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth, and their 3 wives. But Naamah the daughter of Lamech survived the Flood as the wife of Ham.

Noah was white racially and his three sons were also racially white. But Shem had married a white woman, Ham the black Naamah and Japheth had married an oriental looking woman, a descendant of Cain. That’s how the various races originated after the Flood.

From the Bible account, let’s look at the descendants of Ham and Naamah in Genesis 10:6-10, “6 And the sons of Ham; Cush, and Mizraim, and Phut, and Canaan. 7 And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabtecha: and the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan. 8 And Cush begot Nimrod.

The eldest son of Ham is Cush, whose other name is Ethiopia. Cush also means black. Did you notice, one of the sons of Cush is named Raamah. This is most likely the Rama of Indian tradition. Then the account says Cush begot Nimrod. It does not call Nimrod his son. The reason is this. Cush being a negro looking black had married a sister and had sons. But when Noah and his father Ham were away on a journey, Cush, at about age 80, seduced or raped a young white girl aged around 20 years named Semiramis, a descendant of Japheth. Nimrod was the result of that relationship. That’s why the Bible does not call him Cush’s son. Nimrod was born black and grew up to be a very powerful giant of a young man. He was born approximately 20-25 years after the birth of Raamah.

Interracial marriages had been one of the causes of pre-Flood violence. After the Flood God decided to separate the races by having various races colonize different regions of the earth. To send out colonies, Noah took a 10-year long journey with his sons to scope out where and how best to send out the colonies. While they were away Cush seduced or raped Semiramis resulting in the birth of Nimrod.

The Bible account continues in Genesis 10:8, “he [Nimrod] began to be a mighty one in the earth. 9 He was a mighty hunter before the Lord: wherefore it is said, Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the Lord. 10 And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.”

This briefest of accounts is jam-packed with information. Details can be filled from secular history in the books titled ‘*The Two Babylons*’ by Alexander Hyslop and *‘Antiquities of the Jews*’ by the Jewish historian Josephus. This is what happened. After the Flood, wild beasts like lions, leopards, wolves, bears etc multiplied much faster than humans and began to attack humans. Nimrod rose to the occasion and organized hunting parties to hunt down wild animals, thus driving them away from human habitations. Nimrod thus began to be viewed as a savior of mankind.

While Noah had been away on the journey, Naamah then began to tell the stories of how before the Flood her father Lamech and her family ruled the world. This excited the imagination of many, including Cush and Asshur, (a white man, the ancestor of the modern Germans) the son of Shem. They began to develop visions of ruling the world.

When Noah came back, he did not allow Cush to marry the white Semiramis whom he had seduced. So Cush and Nimrod began to realize that they would be racially separated. Cush and Asshur also realized that if humans were spread out over the earth, their dreams of ruling the world would be shattered.

After some time, Noah and his son Shem began preparing to send out groups of people to colonize different areas. But Cush, Nimrod, Asshur and a slight majority of the population rebelled against God’s colonization plan and set up their own god, worship system, and built a tower as a worship sanctuary and began building a city. Their plans were to take over the world, and if needed, to assassinate Noah and Shem.

The god they had set up was the Sun-serpent-fire god. This was their reasoning. They were rebelling against the true God and Noah. They reasoned that the God of Noah had drowned the entire world, and what He was telling them to do was not in their best interests. They hated His laws and ‘restrictions.’ They remembered another ‘god’ in the Garden of Eden who had enlightened the first human beings, Adam and Eve, and told them, and then Cain and his descendants that they did not need to follow the God’s ways, but could develop their own knowledge, own civilization, and do what was in their best interests. Naamah would have familiarized them with this god, the Serpent in the Garden of Eden. They reasoned that they did not get their physical abundance from the God of Noah, but from the sun-god, because the sun-god caused their crops to grow for food.

Thus, they created a ‘god’ of their own. The sun became a favorite object of worship because of the light and heat it gives. [That is the significance of the Sun Dynasty in the Gita that Krishna refers to.] The two enlighteners, the Serpent in the Garden of Eden as the spiritual enlightener, and the sun as the physical enlightener, became associated together in worship. That is how one of the commonest symbols of the sun-god became a disc with a serpent around it (Bunsen’s *Hieroglyphics*, Vol I, p. 497).

Later Nimrod also started fire worship, with fire being regarded as an earthly representation of the sun. That’s how the god became the Sun-fire-serpent god.

God intervened by destroying their tower and confusing the language of mankind. Because people of different races could no longer communicate with one another as they now had different languages, they were forced to move away from Babylon to the areas God had allotted them in His colonization plan.

Even though Cush, Nimrod, Semiramis and Asshur’s attempts to build a world-ruling empire suffered a set-back, they began to pick-up the pieces by building cities for people to dwell in. Genesis 10:10 lists these cities, “10 And the beginning of his [Nimrod’s] kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar” which is in modern day Iraq. The world population at this time had reached to about 10,000 people.

To better organize the people, Cush assigned duties to various people and forced them to stay within the bounds of their duties. Some were assigned duties as warriors, others as farmers and traders, others to keep the cities clean. They themselves became priests of their god. These assigned duties were passed on in the families from fathers to sons. People and their children were not allowed to choose what they wanted to do. These divisions became rigid. This was the origin of the caste system in India and in some form in Egypt as well.

Because of this rigid assignment of duties, the system became very oppressive. Nimrod began to use brutality to keep people under his control. Josephus states in his *Antiquities*, “He [Nimrod] also gradually changed the government into Tyranny.”

At this time, under Satan’s influence, Nimrod introduced an innovation for the first time in his worship system: human and infant sacrifices. Here is what the book *"The Two Babylons"* says on p. 231, “Now, this is in exact accordance with the character of the Great Head of the system of fire-worship. Nimrod, as the representative of the devouring fire to which human victims, and especially children, were offered in sacrifice, was regarded as the great child-devourer…”

The human population was still in the tens of thousands, and all still lived close to Babylon. That’s why Nimrod and Semiramis’ worship system was spread to all of humanity at that time, including Rama and his children. Rama and Nimrod would have met each other quite regularly.

Cush and Nimrod were also reintroducing interracial marriages forcibly. Eventually, because of Cush and Nimrod’s oppression, first Cush was driven out of Babylon. He went to Ethiopia with some of his children with typical African hair. Later Nimrod was also booted out and went to Egypt and ruled there.

Because of all his evils, and introduction of human and infant sacrifices, God decided that Nimrod should be executed. This is the first person in the history of mankind to have been ordered to be executed. Shem the son of Noah went to Egypt and being an eloquent man convinced 70 Egyptian princes to help execute Nimrod. When Nimrod heard about it, he attacked Shem and his allies. Nimrod’s forces were defeated, and he fled to Italy. Shem found him about a year later and executed him. His body was cut into twenty pieces and sent to all peoples as a warning to all those who would worship the false Sun-Fire-Serpent god. The world population was around 90,000 at that time.

When she learnt Nimrod was dead, Semiramis fled from Egypt. After 30 years when she felt it safe, she returned to Egypt. She then began the deification of Nimrod. Diodorus in his *Historical Library* (Book I, Chapter 2, p. 27-29) explains what she did.

Semiramis diligently collected all the parts of his body, ‘closed all the pieces together, cementing them with wax and aromatic spices, and so brought it to the shape of a man.” Then she had the priests bury him in a secret place known only to them, ‘and to pay unto him all divine honor as to a God. That they should dedicate to him one of the beasts bred among them…[bull was chosen for this purpose], and that while it was alive, they should pay it the same veneration as they did before to Osiris [Egyptian name for Nimrod] himself; and when it was dead, that they should worship it with the same adoration and worship given to Osiris.’

This is the origin of bull worship. But Diodorus continues:

“…his [Nimrod’s] privy-members (they say) were thrown into the river by Typhon, because none of his partners would receive them; and yet they were divinely honored by Isis [Egyptian name for Semiramis, the mother of Nimrod, who had later also married him and was his wife as well]; for she commanded an image of this very part to be set up in the temples, and to be religiously adored; and in all their ceremonies and sacrifices to this god, she ordered that part to be held in divine veneration and honor…The Grecians, after they had learnt the rites and ceremonies…from the Egyptians…adored that member by the name of Phallus.”

That is the origin of Phallus worship, the Shiv linga of the Hindus. Satan can truly induce many human beings to do perverse things in the name of religion.

After Nimrod’s death, his and Semiramis’ worship system did not die down. It just went underground. People still kept worshipping Nimrod and Semiramis, but with symbols. Nimrod began to be worshipped as a bull. His mother and wife Semiramis began to be worshipped as a tree. Indians added the innovation of worshipping Semiramis as a cow. This was called the Babylonian Mystery religion as Semiramis propagated it from her city, Babylon.

To better propagate her religion, Semiramis recruited actual priests, the descendants of Shem’s son Arphaxad who were racially white, who were experts in astronomy, learnt from Noah. She offered them massive financial incentives. No taxes were to be levied on them. They received one third of the land as grants. They also got to keep all the offerings people offered in worship. As they became priests to all human populations in Egypt, all of Europe and the East, they mixed with the local populations. In India their descendants are known as Brahmins.

Because of these incredible financial incentives, the Brahmins had no qualms about propagating what Semiramis told them. Their ongoing financial rewards depended on it.

We have said Rama was a son of Cush. Cush had African looks. Rama was dark skinned but had straight hair like Indians. How did that come about? The answer is that Naamah, an African looking woman had married the white Ham. As a result, some of their children were born with African looks, some swarthy white like the Egyptians, some with African type of hair and some with straight hair. Those traits could also be passed on a generation or two later.

Now let’s trace the migration of Indians from Babylon to India. One part of Cush’s descendants went to Ethiopia. They had African looks and hair whereas the other part with dark, Indian looks and straight hair ultimately settled in India. These would be descendants of Rama, There are many ways they can be identified as descendants of Cush. The reason they separated is that they received different languages when the language of mankind was confused at the destruction of the Tower of Babel.

The name Cush (or Kush, and if vowels are interchanged in pronunciation and writing in different languages, as it can happen over thousands of years, it can be written as Kash, or Kish, and even r can be added in between such as krish for a similar sound) appears in the Hindu Kush mountains and Kash-mir, which indicates their migration route to India. "A few other tell-tale signs of the movement eastwards of the sons of Cush include a land called Kushian, in modern Pakistan. Just to the north of India also lay the land Kashgana. And in the south of India ran a river called Kishna. All of these names are variously derivatives of 'Cush'" (Craig White, *In Search of...The Origin of Nations*, 2003, pp. 189-190.)

For further proof, the Indian warriors were known as Kassites in history, which is simply a variation of the name Cushites or Kushites. They derive their name from their ancestor Cush or Kush. The name Kshatriya is derived from the name Kushite.

Indians have the most virulent or strict form of the caste system and credit it to Manu. In the Bhagavad Gita, Krishna claims that he was Manu in one of his reincarnations. There is nothing in secular history to support that. But Krishna has made other tall claims in the Gita, by attributing the deeds of others, including God, to himself using reincarnation as a device. Manu is thought to have survived the Flood and is believed to be Noah. But Noah being a servant of God could not have created an evil system such as the caste system of India. There is no evidence from history anywhere of Noah having imposed such a system on his descendants.

Cush is listed as the first ruler in Egypt’s first Dynasty under the name Meni or Mena or Menes in Greek. The name means “The Establisher”. He is the real Manu of the Indian tradition, the establisher of man’s civilization in Shinar, and we know that Cush established duties of various people which congealed into the rigid caste system.

Thus, we see that the second branch of Cush migrated to India. With this background, we can now see who Krishna was, as we have already identified Rama as the son of Cush, who with his descendants migrated to India.

The name Krishna can be identified with Cush as the sound is so similar to Kish. But Krishna is not Cush, as other clues clearly point to him being Nimrod. One clue is that Cush was driven out of Babylon and went to Ethiopia. After that his descendants with the straight hair like the Indians had no contact with him at all. But they had regular contact with Nimrod for 28 years in and around Babylon, till Nimrod was also driven out of Babylon. However, Nimrod still worked to maintain his rule over other peoples except the Babylonians. He thus maintained contact with Indians, including Rama for another 28 years till he was finally slain by Shem. After that Rama and his descendants had close contact with Semiramis and the religion she had started in which Nimrod had the most prominent place as a god for another 160 years. The priests, the Brahmins learnt that religion well and of course continued to make further innovations on their own through the centuries. That’s how Nimrod’s human sacrifices changed to Sati, and infant sacrifices found their way into Indian religions.

Only Indians worship the cow and calf. Since bull worship is identified with Nimrod, Semiramis began to be worshipped as a cow by the Indians because she was his mother. Nimrod being her son, he became the calf in the cow-calf worship in India. Krishna was dark in color. So was Nimrod. Krishna is also described as a seducer of girls, or womanizer, particularly white women, the gopis, who are always pictured as white women. That too describes the activities of Nimrod immediately after the Flood.

Next consider various Indian gods or ‘avtars’, meaning reincarnation of previous gods. Rama is considered the reincarnation of the god Vishnu. Indra of the Indian myths, Zeus of the Greeks and Jupiter of the Romans has been identified as Lamech in the Bible. Since Lamech existed before the Flood, Indra is not considered a reincarnation of any god. Reincarnation of a god means that in real life, the person who has been deified existed after the Flood. That’s why the half-brothers Rama and Krishna, born 20-25 years apart are considered avatars of Vishnu. This way we can place Krishna and Rama correctly in real history. Because Rama was the older of the two, the Mahabharata [written after the Ramayana] acknowledges the existence of Rama whereas the Ramayana does not acknowledge the existence of Krishna.

**CHAPTER 5**

**How Ancient History was Mythologized**

The purpose of mysteries is to hide something or deceive people. Satan is the master deceiver, who deceives the whole world (Revelation 12:9). Cush, Nimrod and Semiramis were being guided by Satan. That’s why the serpent was part of the god they had created and worshipped. The purpose of the project to mythologize history was to deceive mankind to not believe what had really happened before the Flood and just after the Flood.

True history before the Flood was handed down by Noah to his son Shem, who passed it on to his descendants through his son Arphaxad. But as already mentioned, descendants of Arphaxad had been seduced by Semiramis to become the priests of her false religion through massive financial incentives. However, Shem was able to pass on the knowledge of true history to Abraham, which was then maintained by Abraham’s descendants through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

Another version of history of pre-Flood and post-Flood events was provided by Naamah to her son Cush, grandson Nimrod and Semiramis. Satan used Semiramis to mythologize that version of events to make the true history handed down through Abraham to be unbelievable. This was done by confusing the chronology of events so that people would not be able to determine whether events occurred before the Flood or after the Flood. Since these versions of events would differ from the version of events in the Bible, the authenticity of the Bible would be questioned. That’s why most Egyptologists and other historians question the accuracy of the Bible.

Semiramis was a very beautiful woman and retained her incredible beauty even to her later years. She had a great hold over the people. That’s why she was so successful in having her lies so readily accepted by the people. Her beauty is said to have once quelled a rising rebellion among her subjects when she suddenly appeared among them (Valerius Maximus, *Library ix*, Chapter 3, p. 2).

Semiramis also had supernatural (demonic) help in enhancing her credibility. Nimrod was said to have been the first who invented the magic arts. He used magic tricks (*Justinius Historia, Library* I, Vol ii, p. 615) to impress the people as the high priest of the Sun-fire-serpent god. No one seems to have used magic arts before the Flood.

After Nimrod’s death, Semiramis used magic tricks to impress the converts to her Babylonian Mystery system. She claimed to be able to perform acts such as levitation with the power of the gods she had concocted (the pre-Flood characters who had deified themselves, and later deifying Nimrod and herself). The magic tricks were, of course, performed by demons to build-up her credibility.

Here is further proof that Nimrod was demon-possessed. Nimrod is listed as the second Chinese king in their ‘*Canon of History*.’ It states, “His eyes had double pupils, whence he was named “Double Brightness” [meaning his eyes shown with double brightness.] He had a large mouth...and a black body.” That is describing a demon-possessed black man. He is also described as a foreigner.

The Egyptian name for Nimrod was Osiris. Diodorus in his *‘Historical Library’* on p. 19 says: “Osiris in the Greek language signifies a thing with many eyes…viewing and surveying the whole land and sea. Osiris is also called Dionysius [another name attributed to Nimrod by Semiramis to give credit for the deeds of the pre-Flood Dionysius in the process of deifying Nimrod], and is described as “Dionysius darts his fiery eyes.” Again, this describes a demon possessed man.

Only a demon-possessed man and woman, Nimrod and Semiramis could have initiated human and infant sacrifices in their worship system. And only a demon-possessed man like Nimrod could make the boasts that Krishna makes in the Gita.

When Semiramis was in Egypt, she carried out three projects simultaneously. First, she engaged in propagating her Babylonian Mystery religion in which she had deified Nimrod, her also illegitimate son Horus, and herself. This worship was fused with the worship of the Sun-fire-serpent god in various ways by appropriating the symbols used for the Sun-fire-serpent god.

In the second project, she wrote down pre-Flood history as Naamah had transmitted to Cush, Nimrod and herself, which included the pre-Flood deeds of Cain as Cronos, Lamech as Zeus, Jabal as Hercules, Jubal as Apollo, Tubalcain as Vulcan/Dionysius/ Bacchus, Naamah as Athena and others in Lamech’s family. This history was written down as the deeds of the gods. Certainly, the record was embellished to some extent by attributing some supernatural deeds to them. The line of Cain did not keep records before the Flood. That’s why we do not have records in the Bible on how long the various patriarchs in his line lived, whereas the Bible preserves the number of years the patriarchs in the line of Seth lived. Therefore, the chronology of events attributed to these pre-Flood individuals as gods was not preserved.

Semiramis, third project was to write the history of post-Flood individuals who had deified themselves, such as Noah, Ham, Cush, Nimrod, Naamah, Horus, and of course, herself. The history had to be written in such a way that it portrayed them as gods. The device she used was to attribute the deeds of the pre-Flood individuals as the deeds of the post-Flood individuals by assigning their names to them. For example, Aphrodite was the wife of Tubalcain. Semiramis herself assumed the name of Aphrodite, who is the same as the Egyptian Isis. Tubalcain’s exploits before the Flood were written under the name of Dionysius. There was also a second Dionysius before the Flood who existed after Tubalcain was dead. Semiramis also gave the name Dionysius to Nimrod. Jabal was the Hercules before the Flood. However, after the Flood, many others assumed the name Hercules so that they could claim the deeds of the pre-Flood Hercules for themselves to get fame. Some of this history was written by Semiramis herself. But then after she left Egypt for Babylon, the priests in Egypt used this device to maintain post-Flood history. This confused the chronology of the deeds of these ‘gods’ as after centuries historians could no longer determine precisely when these ‘gods’ existed. Confusing pre-Flood and immediate post-Flood history began the process of ultimately mythologizing it.

So, the initial corruption and mythologizing of history was done by Semiramis over about a 180-year period. She lived a total of about 300 years. After her the Brahmins of India and priests in Egypt and Europe carried on the task.

The hold of the priests on the population depends on attributing supernatural powers to the gods they ask the people to worship. Therefore, they have always had this additional incentive to embellish the deeds of the gods with supernatural powers. Over the centuries, priests of all pagan religions continued to add details to the deeds of their gods in their scriptures, thus continuing to mythologize their religion.

Further corruption and mythologizing of ancient history was done by demon possessed Greek poets. They added fantastic tales to the deeds of the gods, such as those already mentioned for Zeus and Vulcan. Here is proof that they were demon-possessed. Cicero wrote, “Democritus denies that anyone can be a great poet, unless he is mad” (Cicero, “*Divinatione*”, I, 80).

Plato described the unusual madness that gripped the minds of Greece’s great poets. In the *“Phaedrus*” he characterizes “poetic inspiration” as the “state of being possessed by the Muses” – a kind of “madness, which on entering a delicate and virgin soul, arouses and excites it to frenzy in odes and other kinds of poetry…But he that is without the Muses’ madness when he knocks at the doors of Poesy [a poem or body of poems], fancying that art alone will make him a competent poet, - he and his poetry, the poetry of sober sense, will never attain perfection, but will be eclipsed by the poetry of inspired madmen” (245 A). In the “Laws” Plato mentioned that “whenever a poet is enthroned on the tripod of the Muse, he is not in his right mind” (719 C).

The Greek theory of inspirations best described in *“Ion*”: “It is not by art, but by being inspired and possessed, that all good epic poets produce their beautiful poems…even so the melic poets are not in their right mind when they are composing their beautiful strains. On the contrary, when they have fallen under the spell of melody and metre, they are like inspired revelers, and on becoming possessed, - even as the Maenads are possessed and not in their right senses…the soul of the melic poets acts in like manner, as they themselves admit…And what they say is true; for the poet…cannot compose until he becomes inspired and out of his senses, with his mind no longer in him; but, so long as he is in possession of his senses, not one of them is capable of composing, or of uttering his oracular sayings” (733E – 534D).

This is proof that Homer, Hesiod and all the famous Greek poet-historians were demon-possessed. Only demented people could mythologize history the way Homer and other Greek poets did by attributing fantastic powers to the gods in helping combatants of both sides in the Greek and Trojan war accounts. Hesiod in his *Theogony* added many more utterly ridiculous, vulgar tales as the activities of the gods.

Thus, when Greek philosophers like Socrates, Plato and Aristotle, and sane historians like Herodotus came on the scene in the 5th and 4th centuries BCE, some of them already wondered whether the stories were true, because so much myth had been added. They wondered whether these poems should be taught to “thoughtless young persons” because they were such fairy tales, and in some cases very vulgar. They thought that the young people would not be able to distinguish between what is allegory and what is not. Ciceo accused the poets of filling man’s life with all sorts of superstitions with their legends.

W.T.S. Thachara write in his paper published in Sunrise magazine, December 1988/January 1989, read at the Mythology Conference held on February 14-15, 1987:

“Ever since the rise of Greek rationalism, and probably long before that, myths have had bad reviews. In the early 5th century B.C., Xenophanes openly challenged Olympian orthodoxy by criticizing Homer and Hesiod for having “ascribed to the gods all things that are a shame and a disgrace among mortals, stealing and adulteries and deceivings of one another.” (John Burnet, *Early Greek Philosophy*, 4th Ed, 1948, p. 119). Herodotus accused “Homer or some older poet” of invention (*History* 2.23); while Socrates, although he held that myths are not entirely destitute of truth, would censor the “mythmakers” in his ideal State, including Homer and Hesiod. Their stories of the gods’ “unholy quarrellings,” murders, and mayhem do not faithfully portray reality and should, if possible, be “buried” in silence. (*Republic* 377-8).”

Indian myths in the Mahabharata and the Ramayana is worse than Greek myths. Therefore, there can be no doubt that Vyasa the compiler of the Mahabharata and Valmiki, the writer of the Ramayana were demented writers. They are not the infallible word of God. This means that nothing in them can be relied upon. There is no proof that the many worlds and the various kinds of gods and demi-gods do not exist. Certainly, we don’t see any of the various types of demonic people such as the Assuras, Rakshashas, and the monkey gods and a monkey kingdom that the Ramayana and the Mahabharata talk about do not exist on earth. We can also conclude that the Trinity of the gods Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva do not exist, because there is no evidence, and they have not given us proof that they are Almighty by foretelling numerous future events. We have also shown how some of the gods that the two scriptures talk about were really pre-Flood and immediate post-Flood flesh and blood human beings who had deified themselves.

With this understanding that Krishna in real life was the greatest rebel against the true God and so was Rama, Hindus need to give up the foolishness written in the Mahabharata, Gita and the Ramayana and turn to the true God. Both Krishna and Rama were charlatans and deceivers. They have given us no proof that they were gods and have made unverifiable tall claims. The salvation offered in the Hindu scriptures is a lie. The God of the Bible has given us plenty of proofs that He is the true God. You can find all those proofs in my book *“Which Religion is True?*” available free of charge at my website [www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.](https://l.facebook.com/l.php?u=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.ChurchofGodMessage.com%2F%3Ffbclid%3DIwAR3qSRH8-fjLgnqKMuXBCxCNhbbr6gzuFFUwBxM5EfQnplMHDdBT6_hqWzE&h=AT1R98R3eOr6fAVYak_phV5MsapdmeXx0RoIuTHGTuqZHkdqeyY1Yrpi7cO7EZuyblAJAP171Wi-9kYluOWEzqXxpNAWm1rzb90pyFTfQtlPttPzVd_TyPwd0IawpgRPC0hV9l2PlovV_t-E5UDjG4F8KNV6) To learn more about ancient history, and the origins of various peoples of India, please read my free booklet *“India in Bible Prophecy.*”

**CHAPTER 6**

**God of Sikhism**

We have already proved that the Hindu scriptures contain fantastic unbelievable tall tales and other ridiculous lies and are not the inspired word of God. The types of myths mentioned in the Mahabharata and the Ramayana are of the same type as the ancient Greek, Roman and Egyptian myths, and many even worse. All these peoples eventually recognized them to be lies and gave them up nearly 2,000 years ago. Later, sane historians and philosophers among the Greeks such as Herodotus, Plato and Socrates opposed teaching the nonsense to young people. But the Hindus still foolishly hang on to those myths.

***God of Sikhism is the Supreme Creator God***

In the Sikh Scriptures known as the Guru Granth, God the Creator and Sustainer of all is not directly quoted. But the scripture claims that there is only one Supreme God who has created everything, including the other gods of the Hindus such as Shiva, Vishnu, Brahma, Indra, Krishna and goddesses such as Lakshmi and Paarvati, and Budha. The Supreme Being is the Creator and Sustainer of all of them and the entire universe.

The Guru Granth contains the sayings of the Gurus about the Supreme God and not direct quotes from God. The Bible, the Quran and the Bhagavad Gita on the other hand all claim to contain direct words from God.

Here is a gist of what the Guru Granth [translation into English by Singh Sahib Sant Singh Khalsa MD] of the Sikhs says about the Supreme God:

“One universal Creator God. The name is Truth. Creative Being personified [another translation has: ‘the All-pervading Creator’]. No fear. No hatred [or ‘without fear. Without hatred’]. Image of the undying, beyond birth [or ‘Immortal, unborn’], Self-existent. True in the primal beginning, true throughout the ages. True here and now. O Nanak, forever and ever true.” (Japji 1:1)

“By thinking, He cannot be reduced to thought, even by thinking hundreds of thousands of times. By His Command, bodies are created; His Command cannot be described. By His Command, souls come into being; by His Command, glory and greatness are obtained. By His Command, some are high, and some are low; by His Written Command, pain and pleasure are obtained. Some, by His Command, are blessed and forgiven; others, by His Command, wander aimlessly forever. Everyone is subject to His Command; no one is beyond His Command…one who understands His Command, does not speak in ego. (Japji 1:2)

“The Guru’s Word is the Sound-current of the Naad (those who praise God in song); the Guru’s Word is the Wisdom of the Vedas; the Guru’s Word is all-pervading. The Guru is Shiva, the Guru is Vishnu and Brahma; the Guru is Paarvati and Lakhshmi. Even knowing God, I cannot describe Him; He cannot be described in words. The Guru has given me this one understanding: there is only the One, the Giver of all souls. May I never forget Him!” (Japji 1:5).

“Only one as Great and as High as God can know His Lofty and Exalted State. Only He Himself is that Great. He Himself knows Himself…by His Glance of Grace, He bestows His Blessings (Japji 1:24).

P. 11: “You are the Primal Being, the Most Wonderful Creator. There is no other as Great as You. Age after age, You are the One. Forever and ever, You are the One. You never change, O Creator Lord. Everything happens according to Your Will. You Yourself accomplish all that occurs. You Yourself created the entire universe, and having fashioned it, You Yourself shall destroy it all.”

The Sikh scripture goes on to say in numerous other places that the Supreme God, the Creator and Sustainer of all is above all gods and He Himself knows Himself and no humans can describe Him. But the path to liberation or salvation is through the teaching of the Gurus and worship of the only one true God.

The Guru Granth is a compilation of hymns of the Sikh Gurus and some Hindu and Musllim poets describing the qualities of the one true Creator God and how He is to be worshipped and how salvation can be obtained. There is no doubt that the Sikhs claim to worship only one God whom they claim to be the only Creator, supreme over all gods. The Guru Granth claims that all the gods of the Hindus, including Krishna are inferior gods.

Now let’s discuss Sikhism as a religion. I was brought up as a Sikh, and all on my father’s side are still Sikhs, though all family on my mother’s side are Hindus. I am no longer a Sikh, but a Christian. It would be most appropriate, therefore, to first explain why I gave up Sikhism and converted to Christianity.

In high school, because I was studying science subjects, I had become an atheist believing that all the scientists, the most brilliant minds in the world, cannot be wrong who believe in the theory of evolution and do not believe in God. But as a child I had prayed to God for two specific things for about a year and a half: promotion for my dad in his job, and my winning a government of India scholarship. Both my prayers had been granted. So, I was not fully convinced that God does not exist.

At the same time, however, I had to choose a career for myself. I debated in my mind between becoming a scientist, an engineer, or a businessman and ‘earning a lot of money.’ As I was pondering these choices, I felt that I needed to first answer the basic questions about life such as “Does God Exist?”, “Is evolution true, or did God create everything?”, “Which is the True Religion, or are all religions true?”, “Which holy book is the word of God, if any?” It took me seven years to answer all these questions to my entire satisfaction.

As a student at Indian Institute of Technology (IIT) Delhi, I came across calculations for the probability of a simple protein forming by chance. The chance was minuscule, beyond the realm of possibility. Then I realized that evolution simply could not have taken place, and later learnt that it was a hoax. The world had to have been created, and creation demands a Creator. Thus, I was fully convinced that God exists.

The next question I had to answer was “Which religion is true?”, or are all religions true, just paths to the same goal: to receive salvation and go to heaven. The related question was, “Which holy book is the true word of God?” If one holy book is the true word of God and the others are not, then, then that is also the true religion.

My criterion for finding which holy book is the true word of God was that it should contain no scientific, factual, historical or any other errors, since God is omniscient. I had rejected Hinduism quickly because any form of idol worship cannot be the worship of the true God. I came to reject Islam also because in Islam, salvation for males is different than salvation for females. The only serious contenders in my mind for being the true religion were Christianity and Sikhism.

But I had to reject Sikhism also because of scientific errors. Throughout I am quoting from the English translation of the *Guru Granth*, the Sikh scripture by Sant Singh Khalsa, MD. The error I found is stated on p. 4 Japji, stanza 16, “The mythical [the word mythical is just an addition by the translators and not in the original] bull is Dharma, the son of compassion; this is what patiently holds the earth in its place. One who understands this becomes truthful. What a great load there is on the bull! So many worlds beyond this world—so very many! What power holds them, and supports their weight?”

The concept of the earth being supported on a bull comes from Hinduism. Of course, this is an error. Now some commentaries on this verse maintain that the bull is a mythical bull. Obviously, those comments have been added because we now have scientific evidence that the world is not supported on a bull. Even if it is granted that the scripture refers to a mythical bull, this stanza by the founder of the religion, Guru Nanak, shows that he is not sure how the earth is supported. He makes a statement that is a clear error, and shows that he does not know. God did not reveal it to him. But by including it in scripture, it proves that the Sikh scripture is not God-inspired.

While I was searching for the answer in the Bible on the same issue, it is found in the oldest book written chronologically by Job who was a contemporary of the patriarch Joseph, who lived more than 3,600 years ago. His book was written even before the first five books of the Bible by Moses were penned. Job states in Job 26:7, “He…hangs the earth upon nothing.” And in Isaiah 40:22, “It is He that sits upon the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as grasshoppers…”

The Bible thus gets the details about the earth in relation to space correctly, which Hinduism and Sikhism do not. That is the main reason I gave up Sikhism. As I studied the Bible more, I came to recognize that no one has proven any errors in the Bible. Literally, tens of thousands of bright scholars of every kind and hue have tried to prove some aspect of the Bible not to be true. But on deeper research, they or others found that the Bible is correct in scientific facts, historical details and every other aspect. I came to recognize that the Bible is indeed the true word of God.

But the God of the Bible goes beyond all that and challenges the gods of all other religions to prove that they are gods. The challenge already mentioned earlier in Isaiah 41:21-24 is for the scriptures of all religions to foretell numerous future events and bring to pass exactly as foretold. The fulfillment of such prophecies should be verifiable in history. Krishna and Rama of the Hindus, Allah of the Muslims and Waheguru of the Sikhs do not give us any such proof that they are the true God and that the holy scripture of their religion is His true word.

Krishna and Rama make tall claims, but they are nothing more than claims. Both of them are charlatans as they have to cheat in war to win, and that the Hindu scriptures are full of ridiculous lies. Islam and Sikhism on the other hand claim that there is only one true God and they worship Him. In the scriptures of both religions there are certain ideas about salvation and how to attain it. How do we know if those ideas are the truth, or just the mere imagination of the founders of the religions? They simply do not offer any proof that the ideas of salvation and how to attain it in their scriptures are from God.

Their scriptures, the Quran and the Guru Granth fail the challenge that the God of the Bible throws at all other religions. They contain no prophecies at all. Therefore, Guru Granth of the Sikhs fails our test of numerous prophecies that came true.

***Gods of Hinduism in the Sikh Scriptures***

Now consider how gods of Hinduism are treated in the Guru Granth and in Sikhism [my comments in square brackets].

**P 8, stanza 30**: The One Divine Mother conceived and gave birth to the three deities. One, the Creator of the World [meaning Brahma]; One, the Sustainer [meaning Vishnu]; and One, the Destroyer [meaning Shiva]. He makes things happen according to the Pleasure of His Will. Such is His Celestial Order. He watches over all, but none see Him. How wonderful this is! I bow to Him, I humbly bow. The Primal One, the Pure Light, without beginning, without end. Throughout all the ages, he is One and the Same.

**P 8, stanza 35**: “And now we speak of the realm of spiritual wisdom. So many winds, waters and fires; so many Krishnas and Shivas. So many Brahmas, fashioning forms of great beauty, adorned and dressed in many colors. So many worlds and lands for working out karma. So very many lessons to be learned! So many Indras, so many moons and suns, so many worlds and lands. So many Siddhas and Buddhas, so many Yogic masters. So many goddesses of various kinds. So many demi-gods and demons, so many silent sages. So many oceans of jewels. So many ways of life, so many languages. So many dynasties of rulers. So many intuitive people, so many selfless servants. O Nanak, His limit has no limit!”

Here so many worlds are mentioned, apparently where all the different gods, demi gods and others live, with their creations, and created beings working out their karma. This has been borrowed completely from Hinduism. With the space exploration of the twentieth and twenty-first centuries, we know that no life exists on other planets, except in heaven where God dwells. The Bible already knew this. In fact, the Bible even says that stars and planets will be divided among human beings when they gain eternal life to create as they will. This is stated in Deuteronomy 4:15-19 (which Moses wrote more than 3,420 years ago), “15 You saw no form of any kind the day the Lord spoke to you at Horeb out of the fire. Therefore watch yourselves very carefully, 16 so that you do not become corrupt and make for yourselves an idol, an image of any shape, whether formed like a man or a woman, 17 or like any animal on earth or any bird that flies in the air, 18 or like any creature that moves along the ground or any fish in the waters below. 19 AND WHEN YOU LOOK UP TO THE SKY AND SEE THE SUN, THE MOON AND THE STARS - ALL THE HEAVENLY ARRAY - DO NOT BE ENTICED INTO BOWING DOWN TO THEM AND WORSHIPPING THINGS THE LORD YOUR GOD HAS APPORTIONED TO ALL THE NATIONS UNDER HEAVEN.”

This further shows that Hinduism contains lies, which the Sikh gurus borrowed freely.

**P 9-10 stanza 1**: “There are so many Ragas and musical harmonies to You; so many minstrels sing hymns of You. Wind, water and fire sing of You. The Righteous Judge of Dharma sings at Your Door. Chitr and Gupt, the angels of the conscious and the subconscious who keep the record of actions, and the Righteous Judge of Dharma who reads this record, sing of You. Shiva, Brahma and the Goddess of Beauty, ever adorned by You, sing of You. Indra, seated on His Throne, sings of You, with the deities at Your Door. The Siddhas in Samaadhi sing of You; the Saadhus sing of You in contemplation. The celibates, the fanatics, and the peacefully accepting sing of You; the fearless warriors sing of You. The Pandits, the religious scholars who recite the Vedas, with the supreme sages of all the ages, sing of You. The Mohinis, the enchanting heavenly beauties who entice hearts in paradise, in this world, and in the underworld of the subconscious, sing of You.”

We see that the Sikh gurus acknowledged the existence of all the Hindu gods, demi-gods, deities and others. But they claim they are all the creation of the one true God, the Primal Source of everything. All this has been borrowed from Hinduism, except that Sikhs gurus added that there is one Supreme God, the Creator, over them all. As Hindus are unable to sort out the hierarchy of the various gods, Sikh gurus take them as they are by stating that there is one Supreme God their Creator over them all. And the concept of one Supreme God is borrowed from Islam.

The problem with this is that the gods of Hinduism are no gods at all as we have already proved. We rejected Hinduism as a false religion. By discussing the gods of Hinduism as if they exist, the Guru Granth contains the same lies as the Hindu Scriptures. It just borrows the lies of Hinduism, but adds a twist to them, which is that there is one Supreme God who created them and rules over them all.

***Salvation according to Sikhism***

Now let’s consider salvation according to Sikhism.

**P 1, stanza 4**: “By the karma of past actions, the robe of this physical body is obtained. By His Grace, the Gate of Liberation is found.”

**P 4**: “The faithful find the Door of Liberation. The faithful uplift and redeem their family and relations. [according to this concept, family members and relatives can be redeemed, or attain salvation on the coattails of one faithful person. This is against the idea of each individual being responsible for his or her own salvation. That is what the God of the Bible emphasizes in Philippians 2:12, “work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.” If an evil person could attain salvation on the coattails of a faithful relative, then where would be the incentive for the person to give up evil. He will continue to cause pain, suffering and misery for others and himself. Therefore, the idea of God granting salvation to people because of the faithfulness of a relative of family member cannot result in a peaceful, happy society]. The faithful are saved, and carried across with the Sikhs of the Guru. Such is the Name of the Immaculate Lord. [The concept of the Name or Naam is also borrowed from Hinduism, and means singing praises to the Name of God, like Hindus do with the word Om].”

**P 12**: Those who meditate on You, Lord, those who meditate on You—those humble beings dwell in peace in this world. They are liberated, they are liberated—those who meditate on the Lord. For them, the noose of death is cut away. Those who meditate on the Fearless One, on the Fearless Lord—all their fears are dispelled. Those who serve, those who serve my Dear Lord, are absorbed into the Being of the Lord, Har, Har. [According to this concept of salvation, one merges with God on attaining salvation. This concept also comes from Hinduism. Again, what was God’s purpose in creating human beings in the first place, if they were ultimately to merge their existence in Him?]

**P 20 stanza 3**: Some are very knowledgeable, but if they do not know the Guru, then what is the use of their lives? The blind have forgotten the Naam, the Name of the Lord. The self-willed manmukhs [or people] are in utter darkness. Their comings and goings in reincarnation do not end; through death and rebirth, they are wasting away. [Comings and goings in reincarnation comes from Hinduism.]

**P 27 stanza 2**: Through the Word of the Guru’s Shabad, [which means hymns of praise to God] the mind is conquered, and one attains the State of Liberation in one’s own home. So meditate on the Name of the Lord; join and merge with the Sat Sangat, the True Congregation.”

**P 30**: Those who receive His Grace find Him. Without His Grace, He cannot be found. The 8.4 million species of beings all yearn for the Lord. Those whom He unites, come to be united with the Lord. [The idea of 8.4 million species into which the soul of a human being can reincarnate is also borrowed from Hinduism.]

**P 41**: The Boat of the True Guru is the Name of the Lord [meaning the ‘boat’, a metaphor, that will enable a person to cross the ocean that is the world and receive salvation.] How can we climb on board? One who walks in harmony with the True Guru’s Will comes to sit in this Boat. By true actions, the True Lord is met, and the Guru’s Teachings are found. Then, they are not subject to birth and death; they do not come and go in reincarnation. O Nanak, they are respected at the Lord’s Gate; they are robed in honor in the Court of the Lord.”

To summarize these passages, salvation according to Sikhism is the same as in Hinduism, to be liberated from the cycle of birth and death in reincarnation. The way that is achieved is through faith in the Lord, by true actions, by chanting the Name of the Lord and singing hymns of praise to Him. The way to achieve salvation differs from Hinduism as Hinduism offers multiple ways to attain it, but the idea of what is salvation is borrowed completely from Hinduism.

To state it bluntly, if Hinduism is a false religion and you take their idea of salvation and adopt it as your own, your religion becomes false too. That’s why Sikhism is a false religion too. Almost all stories in the Hindu scriptures are colossal lies. Then why should one expect only the salvation described in Hinduism to be true whereas almost everything is false? It is not rational. There is no proof that the salvation offered in Hinduism is true. It is another pure fabrication just like the rest of the stories. The salvation promised to Sikhs in Sikhism is simply a lie inherited from Hinduism.

This is just a small sample of the lies which Sikh gurus borrowed from Hinduism.

Here is what we need to understand about all religions. All tenets of false religions are not evil. But all false religions have evil mixed with the good. When Adam and Eve made the decision to disobey God and ate of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, they chose to make their own decisions about their lives rather than rely on knowledge revealed by God. That’s why the tree was called the ‘tree of the knowledge of good and evil.’ The good is mixed with the evil in man’s religions that are based on their own reasoning. All religions except the true one thus have some good mixed with the evil. But despite Adam and Eve’s disobedience, God has not left us without knowledge of the true religion, and that is available in the Bible. I describe that true religion in my book *“Which Religion is True?”*

The bad and the good in religion affect how you live your life. But the good in the false religion is not going to earn you salvation. Since our purpose is to show you how to escape the soon coming catastrophic Third World War alive, our job is to warn all Sikhs that by obeying the tenets of your religion diligently you WILL NOT receive help from the true God. I have described the only way to receive God’s help in the soon-coming catastrophes in great deal in my book titled *“The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-time Catastrophes”* available free at my website.

**CHAPTER 7**

**Why Punjabis/Sikhs Discarded Their Original Holy Book**

What was the original holy book of the Punjabis, and how did we lose touch with it? I think Punjabis should want to know. To understand that, we need to first understand who the Punjabis are.

Very briefly, here is the racial background of North Indians, Pakistanis and Afghans. The original settlers of India were the descendants of Cush (a black man) the son of Ham the son of Noah (most probably the descendants of Raamah the son of Cush). They were the Kshatriyas, Shudras and Vaishyas. The Rajputs and Gujaratis are the descendants of Phut the son of Ham, and the Dravidians are the descendants of Raamah’s brother Seba.

.

However, racially mixed among them were the Brahmins, who are descended from the white man Arphaxad, whose descendants were originally priests trained by Noah. But they were corrupted with massive financial incentives to preach pagan religions. So the Brahmins in India are all racially mixed.

Then in 722-721 BCE, the Assyrians (the ancestors of the modern Germans) invaded and conquered the ten-tribed northern kingdom of ancient Israel known as the House of Israel [whose modern descendants are the Americans, the British, French, Irish, Swiss, Scandinavians and those of Benelux countries], took them as slaves and deported them from their land. After a century, these former slaves ranged far and wide in the steppes of Eurasia, including in northwest and north India. Many of them mixed among the people of the lands they lived in. Since they were racially white and better educated, they married mainly among the Brahmins and Kshatriyas in North India.

Those that married and mixed with the people they lived with, settled down among them. Those that did not racially mix later migrated to the British Isles and the countries of northwest Europe. These Israelites thus married among the Brahmins and Kshatriyas of North India, Pakistan and the Afghans. Thus, Punjabis, Sindhis, Bhapas, all other Pakistanis and Afghans are all descendants of these Israelites mixed with the local populations.

The Southern Kingdom of ancient Israel known as the House of Judah (or Jews, as the word Jew is just a short form of Jude or Judah) was later defeated by the Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar, and the Jews removed from their land. A number of them settled in North India. These white Jews also married among the local populations. The Sainis, Sonis, Sawhneys and Sahnis are the descendants of those Jews. These names are derived from the word Sion, which is a name for Jerusalem, as a person from Sion would be pronounced as a Sionee, which in English could be spelled as Saini etc. Since Hebrew did not preserve vowels, the names were derived by adding vowels at various places between the letter SN. This was the very first message delivered to me by an angel, that the Sainis are Jews.

Next came Alexander’s invasion. Many of his soldiers also settled in India and intermarried with the north Indians. Their descendants are known as Jutts in Punjab and Jats in Haryana. The word Jutt or Jat is just a shortened form of the word Jude. Hence the Jutts are also Jews, but descended from Judah’s son Zarah, whereas the Sainis are descendants of Judah’s son Pharez.

Muslims who later came with Babar’s invasion are also descendants of the Israelites of the northern Kingdom, the House of Israel, who had settled in central Asia and married among the local populace.

With this background, it should be obvious what the original holy book of our ancestors was the Old Testament of the Bible, which is also the holy book of the Jews worldwide. When our ancestors settled in India, Christianity had not been established as a religion. Therefore, our ancestors never came in touch with Christianity till the coming of the British. We never had any interactions with the Portuguese.

So how did we lose touch with our scriptures, the Old Testament of the Bible?

First of all, scriptures were not available for the common people because copies were very expensive to produce. So the common people acquired their knowledge of the scriptures from the priests, and not through personal reading. That’s why most ancestors of the Punjabis did not have access to the scriptures.

Then the task of preserving the scriptures was given to the Jews by God. But only a few Jews returned back to the holy land with the governors Zerubbabel, and then the priest Ezra and governor Nehemiah. It is these Jews who preserved the Old Testament faithfully. The Jews who came in Alexander’s army were a different branch of Judah and they never possessed the scriptures. Similarly, the ten-tribed House of Israel did not possess the scriptures after their captivity at the hands of the Assyrians for close to two hundred years. Then probably Jeremiah the prophet introduced them to the scriptures again when he went to Ireland, the reason for which will be explained shortly. All the other Israelites and Jews who settled in other lands by intermarrying with the local populations did not possess the scriptures. So they lost knowledge of their original religion.

There was another very important reason why they did not retain the knowledge of their old religion.

God had made incredible promises to the ancestors of the Israelites and the Punjabis, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and King David. Essentially the promises were of incredible material blessings if they obeyed God’s commandments. Then descendants of Joseph were promised that a great nation would spring from Manasseh, the elder son of Joseph, and a company (or commonwealth) of nations would spring from Ephraim, the younger son of Joseph. King David of Judah was promised that his dynasty would endure forever throughout all generations.

After the captivity, within perhaps a century, the northern kingdom of the House of Israel even forgot that they were Israelites. They became known as the lost-ten tribes because they lost the identifying sign which was keeping the seventh-day Sabbath as day of worship. Without the scriptures, they retained no knowledge of the promises, because they no longer knew that they were Israelites. Though the scriptures probably were later reintroduced by Jeremiah the prophet, that happened only in Ireland, and never among the Israelites who had married among the local populations in their wanderings and settled there.

Since the Jews had the scriptures, they began to believe they were descendants of all the twelve tribes of Israel, as the other tribes were thought not to exist any longer. The world also began to recognize them as such. But they in fact are descendants mainly of the tribe of Judah, with quite a large number of them being of the priestly tribe of Levi, and a sprinkling from the tribe of Benjamin.

The Jews who had the scriptures, lost faith in their God because they felt that He never kept any of His promises. For centuries, they did not see any great nation and a company of nations come into existence as was promised to Jacob’s son Joseph. Even David’s dynasty ended among the Jews. They have never had a king from the descendants of David ruling those we know as the Jews today. And till 1948, they never even had a single nation of their own. That’s why they were no longer zealous about their religion, and many became atheists and communists in Russia and other places. Others simply adopted the religions of the countries they lived in, such as Hinduism, Sikhism, Islam, Christianity and others. That’s why the ancestors of the Punjabis did not want to hang on to their scriptures. They simply lost faith in their God, and adopted the religions of the people they married into. That’s why our ancestors in Punjab lost touch with their original scriptures, the Old Testament of the Bible.

The truth, however, is that the God of the Bible kept all His promises, but the Jews and the Israelites simply did not know where to look. God gave Jeremiah the prophet a commission stated in Jeremiah 1:10, “10 See, I have this day set you over the nations and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to pull down, and to destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant.”

The two kingdoms were the northern House of Israel, and the Southern House of Judah. Jeremiah was used to root out the kingdom of Judah through prophesy, which happened when King Nebuchadnezzar invaded Judah and destroyed the Kingdom. But then Jeremiah was used to plant the kingdom in the House of Israel. When Judah was being destroyed, a prince of Ireland was in Jerusalem. He had married a young daughter of King Zedekiah of Judah. When Judah was destroyed, Nebuchadnezzar killed all Zedekiah’s sons, but his daughters were left in Jeremiah’s care. Then Jeremiah took the prince of Ireland and the daughter of Zedekiah he had married back to Ireland. That prince then became King of Ireland. That’s how Jeremiah completed the second part of his commission from God of planting the Kingdom in the House of Israel. He uprooted the throne from Judah and transplanted it in the House of Israel. Queen Elizabeth II is a direct descendant of that dynasty. Thus God kept His promise to David that his dynasty would last forever. He also kept His promise that a great nation and a commonwealth of nations would spring from the two sons of Joseph. And those nations are America and the British Commonwealth nations.

For the fascinating account, and how many intricate prophecies were fulfilled in the process, you may read my book *“Jews Behold Your God!”*, available free at my web site [www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.](https://l.facebook.com/l.php?u=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.ChurchofGodMessage.com%2F%3Ffbclid%3DIwAR0iuENLHTtZw5DrQOU0L7D-fDXorjg_b2Qo7mCmjlIFxAcEm4cA9fIGAbo&h=AT3nJoVntyWQXXvIgVc8N0XMkighOvkRatAjpnFZekz_N-eHxu62alPiK-zfbmbjpDHFH8K0lsrQ0SzZwr7Xiuw3lvR_LKgYs66D_AVGroYUttdCrv2f7rPBKaQJKPIzmq_Dowe52jdlbkOfWKvSNGAGSDZF) You may also read the United Church of God booklet “*United States and Britain in Bible prophecy*”, available free at [www.beyondtoday.org.](https://l.facebook.com/l.php?u=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.beyondtoday.org%2F%3Ffbclid%3DIwAR0o8F158iJihzjGf2Mfi7TcL_MzwIN5ILavBU-Ytmy_aoKFTI8LoOKOcco&h=AT2TJYirUvquSO5eRrC5g8yQtfuJf0WA8CfBJVqLcSCIMBk5y8a7eSUnlMeYJ14KiUXGbWdsCAeJeP7wviyTukQtq1Zq4y3FVCDDdzApXFX6agCikRSOmh-cE6nUKJDm-JI8ycQYyPm4XXMOosu1d8rQ_WGB)

There have been consequences though for the Punjabis of intermarrying among the local peoples and identifying with them. God had promised incredible material blessings unconditionally to the descendants of the twelve tribes of Israel, who now live in Europe, America, including the Jews. But because of our ancestors’ disobedience to God’s commandments, God withheld the blessings for 2,520 years of punishment. When that time of punishment was over, the blessings were conferred on the descendants of the twelve tribes. That’s why America, British Commonwealth nations, France, Ireland, Swiss, the Jews and those living in Scandinavian and Benelux countries became rich. God gave them these blessings. But we Punjabis missed out because we no longer identified with our Israelite brothers, but with the peoples among whom we lived and intermarried.

It is also quite possible that two of Jesus’ twelve apostles, Thomas and Bartholomew, were sent to northwestern India to convert our Punjabi ancestors to Christianity. All the twelve apostles were sent to the descendants of the tribes of Israel. But tradition says that Thomas was killed in India for those attempts. Thus, our ancestors may have had a chance to get the true religion from the apostles themselves but rejected it.

This is the story of how we lost our original holy book and adopted pagan religions. Punjabis should discover their roots. If we follow the true God, He will forgive us and we may begin inheriting the promised blessings. I hope Punjabis will begin choosing wisely.

I counsel Sikhs and Punjabis to return to their roots, which is the Bible. It is the true word of God and give up all the lies inherited from Hinduism. I prove that in my book *“Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”*

***Some Good and Bad Things in Sikhism***

Now let us continue to see a few more problems and also the positive aspects of Sikhism.

*Pre-ordained Destiny*

One destructive philosophy in Sikhism is the concept of destiny, or that everything about one’s life is already pre-ordained. Sikhs believe that even every grain is stamped and pre-ordained to be eaten by a specific individual. Here are examples:

**P 4 Stanza 19**: “From the Word, comes destiny, written on one’s forehead. But the One who wrote these Words of Destiny—no words are written on His Forehead. As He ordains, so do we receive.”

**P 8 Stanza 29**: We come to receive what is written in our destiny.

**P 16:** As it is pre-ordained, people speak their words. As it is pre-ordained, they consume their food. As it is pre-ordained, they walk along the way. As it is pre-ordained, they see and hear. As it is pre-ordained, they draw their breath. Why should I go and ask the scholars about this?

**P 1107:** “Compassion, righteousness, Dharma and intense meditation are eternal and imperishable; they alone obtain these, who have such pre-ordained destiny. The inscription inscribed upon one’s forehead is eternal and imperishable; it cannot be avoided by avoidance.”

**P 1167:** “The poor man and the rich man are both brothers. God’s pre-ordained plan cannot be erased.

**P 1284:** “The pre-ordained destiny inscribed on the mortal’s forehead by our Lord and Master cannot be erased.

**P 42:** “Everyone, all over the world, longs for the True Guru. Without the good fortune of destiny, the Blessed Vision of His Darshan [meaning meeting or seeing God in person] is not obtained. The unfortunate ones just sit and cry. All things happen according to the Will of the Lord God. No one can erase the pre-ordained Writ of Destiny.

**P 60:** “The merchants and the traders have come; their profits are pre-ordained.”

Do a search on the word “pre-ordained” in the Guru Granth and it is mentioned 280 times. Many times, the Scripture simply says: ‘that which is pre-ordained cannot be erased.”

This philosophy is very destructive because it defeats God’s very purpose in creating humans, superior to animals (hence God-plane beings) because they possess mind power with free moral choice. They are not created as robots or with animal instinct. They can choose to do good or evil. This philosophy also leads some to not try their hardest to overcome obstacles in their lives.

*Vain Repetitions and Chanting God’s Name*

We have already discussed about the way to receive salvation, meaning liberation from births and deaths, that is described in the Guru Granth. It is through God’s Name (meaning chanting His name and meditating on it for long periods, like the Hindus do for the word Om) and singing His praises in Kirtan [praising God with hymns set to music], with good deeds, of course, and non-attachment to worldly things. Non-attachment to worldly things is a destructive philosophy that can lead one to inaction or at least a less than vigorous life as far as earning a living and uplifting other members of one’s community or country is concerned.

Sikhism lays a lot of emphasis on recitation from the Guru Granth, their holy book. In fact, in an Akhand Path [three-day reading of the Guru Granth] to celebrate an occasion or after a death, the Guru Granth is read completely over about a 3-day period, night and day; many times, no one listening. Such rote rituals do not accomplish anything for anyone as far as improving their character is concerned, or pleasing God.

Beautiful soothing uplifting music as in hymn singing by Sikhs in Kirtan does not in itself make the religion right. In fact, in most cases, the singers or Ragis have just made up stories to sing about without much truth to them. Even in the Guru Granth, God is praised with attributes that are the imaginations of men and not attributes that God has revealed about Himself. Christmas carols are beautiful music expressing great sentiments for Christians. It can also be uplifting and make the singers feel good and righteous. But they are the work of the devil because they celebrate the birth of the false god Baal, the deified Nimrod of the Bible, the greatest human rebel against the true God. Christmas does not celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ was not born anywhere near December 25th; He did not ask anyone to celebrate His birthday and no one in the Bible ever did except two evil murderers: Pharaoh and King Herod; and Christmas is not even mentioned in the Bible or commanded to be celebrated. Hymn singing and praising God in Sikh Kirtans and Shabads is similar in nature, because it is not based on truth. In the songs, some of the attributes and deeds of God mentioned are not inspired truth. Most often they are merely the imagination of the song-writers and singers, the Ragis. False worship and singing about made up half-truths is not how the true God wants to be worshipped.

The Guru Granth supposedly contains praises of God in poetry. But there is so much repetition. Everything is repeated over and over and over again, throughout the Scripture. Here is what the God of the Bible says about such repetitions I Matthew 6:7, “But when you pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen [other nations]do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.” God of the Bible calls such repetitions in singing, or prayers as vain.

Here are some examples. First from pages 76-77:

“O dear beloved mind, my friend, reflect upon the Name of the Lord of the Universe. O dear beloved mind, my friend, the Lord shall always be with you. The Name of the Lord shall be with you as your Helper and Support. Meditate on Him—no one who does so shall ever return empty-handed. You shall obtain the fruits of your mind’s desires, by focusing your consciousness on the Lord’s Lotus Feet. He is totally pervading the water and the land; He is the Lord of the World-forest. Behold Him in exaltation in each and every heart. Nanak gives this advice: O beloved mind, in the Company of the Holy, burn away your doubts. || 1 || O dear beloved mind, my friend, without the Lord, all outward show is false. O dear beloved mind, my friend, the world is an ocean of poison. Let the Lord’s Lotus Feet be your Boat, so that pain and skepticism shall not touch you. Meeting with the Perfect Guru, by great good fortune, meditate on God twenty-four hours a day. From the very beginning, and throughout the ages, He is the Lord and Master of His servants. His Name is the Support of His devotees. Nanak gives this advice: O beloved mind, without the Lord, all outward show is false. || 2 || O dear beloved mind, my friend, load the profitable cargo of the Lord’s Name. O dear beloved mind, my friend, enter through the eternal Door of the Lord. One who serves at the Door of the Imperceptible and Unfathomable Lord, obtains this eternal position. There is no birth or death there, no coming or going; anguish and anxiety are ended. The accounts of Chitr and Gupt, the recording scribes of the conscious and the subconscious are torn up, and the Messenger of Death cannot do anything. Nanak gives this advice: O beloved mind, load the profitable cargo of the Lord’s Name. || 3 || O dear beloved mind, my friend, abide in the Society of the Saints. O dear beloved mind, my friend, chanting the Lord’s Name, the Divine Light shines within…

“Remember your Lord and Master, who is easily obtained, and all desires shall be fulfilled. By my past actions, I have found the Lord, the Greatest Lover. Separated from Him for so long, I am united with Him again. Inside and out, He is pervading everywhere. Faith in Him has welled up within my mind. Nanak gives this advice: O beloved mind, let the Society of the Saints be your dwelling. || 4 || O dear beloved mind, my friend, let your mind remain absorbed in loving devotion to the Lord. O dear beloved mind, my friend, the fish of the mind lives only when it is immersed in the Water of the Lord. Drinking in the Lord’s Ambrosial Bani, the mind is satisfied, and all pleasures come to abide within. Attaining the Lord of Excellence, I sing the Songs of Joy. The True Guru, becoming merciful, has fulfilled my desires. He has attached me to the hem of His robe, and I have obtained the nine treasures. My Lord and Master has bestowed His Name, which is everything to me. Nanak instructs the Saints to teach, that the mind is imbued with loving devotion to the Lord. || 5 || 1 || 2 ||”

Here is another example from Pages 243-247 of the Guru Granth:

ONE UNIVERSAL CREATOR GOD. TRUTH IS THE NAME.

CREATIVE BEING PERSONIFIED. BY GURU’S GRACE:

“The soul-bride [meaning a human being] offers her prayers to her Dear Lord; she dwells upon His Glorious Virtues. She cannot live without her Beloved Lord, for a moment, even for an instant. She cannot live without her Beloved Lord; without the Guru, the Mansion of His Presence is not found. Whatever the Guru says, she should surely do, to extinguish the fire of desire. The Lord is True; there is no one except Him. Without serving Him, peace is not found. O Nanak [Guru Nanak speaking to himself while meditating all this], that soul-bride, whom the Lord Himself unites, is united with Him; He Himself merges with her. || 1 || The life-night of the soul-bride is blessed and joyful, when she focuses her consciousness on her Dear Lord. She serves the True Guru with love; she eradicates selfishness from within. Eradicating selfishness and conceit from within, and singing the Glorious Praises of the Lord, she is in love with the Lord, night and day.

“Listen, dear friends and companions of the soul — immerse yourselves in the Word of the Guru’s Shabad [praises of God in hymns]. Dwell upon the Lord’s Glories, and you shall be loved by your Husband, embracing love for the Naam [meaning the name of the Lord], the Name of the Lord. O Nanak, the soul-bride who wears the necklace of the Lord’s Name around her neck is loved by her Husband Lord. || 2 || The soul-bride who is without her beloved Husband is all alone. She is cheated by the love of duality, without the Word of the Guru’s Shabad. Without the Shabad of her Beloved, how can she cross over the treacherous ocean? [From the world to Heaven]. Attachment to Maya [materialism] has led her astray. Ruined by falsehood, she is deserted by her Husband Lord. The soul-bride does not attain the Mansion of His Presence. But she who is attuned to the Guru’s Shabad is intoxicated with celestial love; night and day, she remains absorbed in Him. O Nanak, that soul-bride who remains constantly steeped in His Love, is blended by the Lord into Himself. || 3 || If the Lord merges us with Himself, we are merged with Him. Without the Dear Lord, who can merge us with Him? Without our Beloved Guru, who can dispel our doubt? Through the Guru, doubt is dispelled. O my mother, this is the way to meet Him; this is how the soul-bride finds peace. Without serving the Guru, there is only pitch darkness. Without the Guru, the Way is not found. That wife who is intuitively imbued with the color of His Love, contemplates the Word of the Guru’s Shabad. O Nanak, the soul-bride obtains the Lord as her Husband, by enshrining love for the Beloved Guru. || 4 || 1 ||

“Without my Husband, I am utterly dishonored. Without my Husband Lord, how can I live, O my mother? Without my Husband, sleep does not come, and my body is not adorned with my bridal dress. The bridal dress looks beautiful upon my body, when I am pleasing to my Husband Lord. Following the Guru’s Teachings, my consciousness is focused on Him. I become His happy soul-bride forever, when I serve the True Guru; I sit in the Lap of the Guru. Through the Word of the Guru’s Shabad, the soul-bride meets her Husband Lord, who ravishes and enjoys her. The Naam, the Name of the Lord, is the only profit in this world. O Nanak, the soul-bride is loved by her Husband, when she dwells upon the Glorious Praises of the Lord. || 1 || The soul-bride enjoys the Love of her Beloved. Imbued with His Love night and day, she contemplates the Word of the Guru’s Shabad. Contemplating the Guru’s Shabad, she conquers her ego, and in this way, she meets her Beloved. She is the happy soul-bride of her Lord, who is forever imbued with the Love of the True Name of her Beloved. Abiding in the Company of our Guru, we grasp the Ambrosial Nectar; we conquer and cast out our sense of duality. O Nanak, the soul-bride attains her Husband Lord, and forgets all her pains. || 2 || The soul-bride has forgotten her Husband Lord, because of love and emotional attachment to Maya. The false bride is attached to falsehood; the insincere one is cheated by insincerity. She who drives out her falsehood, and acts according to the Guru’s Teachings, does not lose her life in the gamble. One who serves the Word of the Guru’s Shabad is absorbed in the True Lord; she eradicates egotism from within. So let the Name of the Lord abide within your heart; decorate yourself in this way. O Nanak, the soul-bride who takes the Support of the True Name is intuitively absorbed in the Lord. || 3 || Meet me, O my Dear Beloved. Without You, I am totally dishonored. Sleep does not come to my eyes, and I have no desire for food or water. I have no desire for food or water, and I am dying from the pain of separation. Without my Husband Lord, how can I find peace?

“I offer my prayers to the Guru; if it pleases the Guru, He shall unite me with Himself. The Giver of peace has united me with Himself; He Himself has come to my home to meet me. O Nanak, the soul-bride is forever the Lord’s favorite wife; her Husband Lord does not die, and He shall never leave. || 4 || 2 ||

“The soul-bride is pierced through with the sublime essence of the Lord, in intuitive peace and poise. The Enticer of hearts has enticed her, and her sense of duality has been easily dispelled. Her sense of duality has been easily dispelled, and the soul-bride obtains her Husband Lord; following the Guru’s Teachings, she makes merry. This body is filled to overflowing with falsehood, deception and the commission of sins. The Gurmukh [one who is God-centered] practices that devotional worship, by which the celestial music wells up; without this devotional worship, filth is not removed. O Nanak, the soul-bride who sheds selfishness and conceit from within, is dear to her Beloved. || 1 || The soul-bride has found her Husband Lord, through the love and affection of the Guru. She passes her life-night sleeping in peace, enshrining the Lord in her heart. Enshrining Him deep within her heart night and day, she meets her Beloved, and her pains depart. Deep within the mansion of her inner being, she enjoys her Husband Lord, reflecting upon the Guru’s Teachings. She drinks deeply of the Nectar of the Naam, day and night; she conquers and casts off her sense of duality. O Nanak, the happy soul-bride meets her True Lord, through the Infinite Love of the Guru.

“Men and women are obsessed with sex; they do not know the Way of the Lord’s Name. Mother, father, children and siblings are very dear, but they drown, even without water. They are drowned to death without water — they do not know the path of salvation, and they wander around the world in egotism. All those who come into the world shall depart. Only those who contemplate the Guru shall be saved. Those who become Gurmukh and chant [chanting is repetition which the God of the Bible calls vain] the Lord’s Name, save themselves and save their families as well. O Nanak, the Naam, the Name of the Lord, abides deep within their hearts; through the Guru’s Teachings, they meet their Beloved. || 2 || Without the Lord’s Name, nothing is stable. This world is just a drama. Implant true devotional worship within your heart, and trade in the Name of the Lord. Trade in the Lord’s Name is infinite and unfathomable || 1 ||…

“The Name of the Lord is so sweet, O my dear; taste it, and focus your consciousness on it. Taste the sublime essence of the Lord with your tongue, my dear, and renounce the pleasures of other tastes. You shall obtain the everlasting essence of the Lord when it pleases the Lord; your tongue shall be adorned with the Word of His Shabad. Meditating on the Naam, the Name of the Lord, a lasting peace is obtained; so remain lovingly focused on the Naam. From the Naam we originate, and into the Naam we shall pass; through the Naam, we are absorbed in the Truth. O Nanak, the Naam is obtained through the Guru’s Teachings; He Himself attaches us to it. || 2 || Working for someone else, O my dear, is like forsaking the bride, and going to foreign countries. In duality, no one has ever found peace, O my dear; you are greedy for corruption and greed. Greedy for corruption and greed, and deluded by doubt, how can anyone find peace? Working for strangers is very painful; doing so, one sells himself and loses his faith in the Dharma.”

This kind of *ad nauseum* repetition, often on the same subject can be found throughout the Guru Granth.

Hymn singing, and praising God is appropriate, and can be part of the true worship of God. But hymn singing and chanting God’s name is not the most important path to salvation as the Sikh scripture the Guru Granth advocates.

*Salvation by Following a Guru*

Another major problem with Sikhism is that it states that salvation can be obtained by following a righteous guru, or that the entire family can obtain salvation because of one righteous individual. Here is the quote again:

**P 4:** “The faithful find the Door of Liberation. The faithful uplift and redeem their family and relations. [according to this concept, one faithful person can redeem his family and relatives. This is against the idea of each individual being responsible for his or her own salvation]. The faithful are saved and carried across with the Sikhs of the Guru.”

In the Guru Granth, the word Guru is used to describe God. But most Sikhs apply that to the human guru or teacher, thinking that salvation can be obtained by hanging on to the coattails of the human guru or a faithful relative. That is a destructive idea for the person who follows it and feels that he does not have to do anything to improve himself to continually grow in righteousness to attain salvation. The true God wants to have a personal relationship with every human being and not through a human intermediator. The only Intermediator between God the Father and an individual is Jesus Christ, the Creator of everything. Here is what the Bible requires from each individual as stated in Philippians 2:12, “Wherefore, my beloved, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.”

*Creating an Idol out of a Book*

The tenth Guru Gobind Singh said that there would be no gurus after him and that the Sikhs were to treat the Guru Granth as their Guru after him. He meant that Sikhs were to take their teachings and tenets of their religion from then on by studying the Guru Granth. But Sikhs have literally created an idol out of the book. In their rituals, they carry the Guru Granth on their heads, cover it with elaborate coverings and fan it as if it were a human being. They don’t realize that is what idol worship is. They have rejected idol worship of Hinduism, and rightly so. But they have created an idol out of a book. The book is meant to be studied and not be carried about on one’s head.

In Hinduism, the greedy Brahmins made invented very elaborate rituals as part of the religion to enrich themselves. Sikhism has simplified them. That is something positive in Sikhism compared to Hinduism. As stated earlier, in every false religion, good is mixed with evil.

*Guru Gobind Singh*

Now I would like to discuss the tenth Guru Gobind Singh. He suffered a great deal along with the loss of his entire family. He accomplished a great deal for Sikhs by imbuing courage and determination in them to confront evil. I being a Sikh originally admit that I acquired that trait when I was a Sikh. That is a great trait to have. On the other hand, I would like to caution Sikhs to not go overboard with it and get carried away with the idea that we are a martial race which label the British clamped on them. It’s good to have courage, strength and determination, but it should be used for peaceful purposes, used for defense only when threatened by someone; and never to attack anyone to take away what they have, or as mercenaries.

Sikhs must, however, acknowledge that Gobind Singh was a human being and was not inspired by God in his writings in the Sikh scriptures. One of the widely quoted hymns of Guru Gobind Singh is:

“Deh shiva bar mohe eh-hey subh karman te kabhu na taro. Na daro arr seo jab jaye laro nischey kar apni jit karo. Arr Sikh ho apne he mann ko, eh laalach hou gun tau ucharo. Jab aav ki audh nidan bane att he rann me tabh joojh maro.”

This hymn is translated as: “God give me this boon that I never refrain from doing righteous acts. Therefore, I shall have no fear of the enemy when I go into battle and with determination, I will be victorious. That, I may teach my mind to only sing your praises. And when the time comes, I should die fighting heroically on the field of battle.”

The name for God used by Guru Gobind Singh is Shiva. But elsewhere in the Guru Granth, Shiva is just one of the creations of the true Supreme God. Guru Nanak the first Guru praised the Supreme God and not Shiva, Brahma, Vishnu, Indra etc. of Hinduism. In reality there is no god known as Shiva that exists, or even a Triune God or a Trinity in the form of Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva. Obviously, this implies that Guru Gobind Singh’s writings and sayings were in no way inspired by the true God.

Next, Guru Gobind Singh instituted keeping of long hair by Sikh males as a mark of distinction. The reason he did so was that when his father was murdered by the Mughal Emperor in Delhi, no Sikh came to claim his body. Guru Gobind Singh then instituted keeping long hair for Sikhs so that they would be recognizable easily and would not show cowardice.

However, the Bible declares that keeping long hair by males is not natural and should not be done. I Corinthians 11:14 says, “Does not even nature itself teach you, that, if a man have long hair, it is a shame unto him?”

Obviously, this implies that Guru Gobind Singh was not inspired by God when he instituted keeping long hair by Sikh males. The decision was based on human reasoning, and not under God’s inspiration. I cut my long hair when I converted to Christianity.

Regarding keeping long hair, Sikh artists are doing a disservice by painting all Sikh gurus with long hair. If the tenth Guru had to institute keeping long hair, that then implies that Sikhs before that did not keep long hair. So, the previous Gurus most likely did not keep long hair. However, artists always paint them falsely as having long hair. While it is likely true that some males in north India tied turbans even though they had short hair. But the artists depict all the Gurus as having long hair.

I have no criticism of the communal kitchen or Langar. It’s a good tradition, much like a pot-luck meal that Christians have, except that Sikhs invite anyone who wants to partake of the meal to do so freely.

Let’s now apply our three criteria to determine whether the Guru Granth is the inspired word of God. First of all, it contains no prophecy as proof that God was backing the scripture with His Almighty power. Therefore, Guru Granth cannot be the word of God.

Our second criterion was that the holy book should contain no scientific and historical errors. Guru Granth copies Hinduism in claiming that the earth is supported on the horns of a bull, a clear scientific error. Hence the Guru Granth fails our second test as well.

The third criterion is that the holy book should not contain unbelievable, fantastic lies. Hinduism failed that test because of the myths it contains from the beginning to the end. Guru Granth, however, has left out those unbelievable myths. But Guru Granth still does not qualify as the word of God because of the two tests it has failed.

To summarize then, Sikhism is a false religion because it promises salvation that is a blatant lie borrowed from Hinduism, for which no proof exists. Hence the Sikh scriptures are not inspired by the true God, despite some Sikhs lately beginning to make that claim without any proof. God is not directly quoted in the Sikh scriptures. In that sense its better than Hinduism and Islam which quote Krishna and Allah who claim to be gods, but are demons masquerading around as gods in order to deceive humanity. When you borrow your idea of salvation from religions whose true source is Satan the devil, you get cunningly devised fables designed to deceive. That’s what Sikhism has inherited from Hinduism in its ideas about salvation and how to attain it.

When the destination, or the salvation offered by your religion does not exist, then the path, or the means of attaining that salvation will lead to oblivion, or nowhere, and ultimately destruction. Sikh gurus borrowed their ideas of non-existent gods and worlds from Hinduism, and then added attributes of God and the tenets of the religion based on their own human reasoning and imagination. They are not revelation from the true God, but mere philosophies of men. That’s why such worship is vain. God says in the Bible in Matthew 15:9, “9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.”

My job is to force Sikhs and Punjabis to confront reality. But the decision to accept reality after thorough evaluation and proof, or to continue following your false beliefs and traditions inherited from ancestors is entirely yours. You have to make that choice. My responsibility is to warn you, that if you continue in your traditions, do not expect guaranteed help from the true God to help you and your family come out alive through the coming Third World War and the further horrible catastrophes that will follow.

I have now done my job. I am no longer guilty of any Sikh’s blood if he or she perishes in the coming catastrophes.

I counsel Sikhs and Punjabis to get back to the true God-inspired scriptures, the Bible, that our ancestors rejected and give-up your religious beliefs borrowed from Satan-inspired scriptures of Hinduism and Islam. Search your history at my web site in the book titled *“India in Bible Prophecy.”*

It requires courage to break free from the bonds of tradition, the way you have lived all your life. It is extremely difficult to admit that one has inherited lies and lived the way of falsehood all your life. It is hard to admit that one has been fooled by Satan the devil. A person who may decide to change also has to take into consideration the almost certain estrangement, criticism, taunting, ridicule and likely persecution from family, friends, acquaintances and business associates. I had to face that decision myself. In my case, when I set out to search for the truth, I had determined before I began my search that if I found the truth, I will give my religion and follow only the truth wholeheartedly. When I found it, I did not waver in adopting it.

Many in mainstream Christianity agree with what the Church of God believes. They know that the festivals such as Christmas, Easter and the like they observe, and Sunday worship in place of keeping the Sabbath from Friday sunset to Saturday sunset holy have come from paganism. But they lack the personal courage to break free from those traditions. They love the praise of men more than the praise of God. I hope the Sikhs and the Punjabis will be more courageous than that and give up the falsehoods the gurus borrowed from Hinduism.

Here are the books I advise Sikhs to read on my website to better educate themselves about the true religion: “*The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-Time Catastrophes*”, *“Which Religion is True?”*, *“Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”*, *“Jews Behold Your God”* and *“India in Bible Prophecy.”* All are available free of charge at my website [www.ChurchofGodMessage.com](http://www.churchofgodmessage.com/?fbclid=IwAR2BDLkkc9LQXkgE0b8VyiI-bczeKE15WPXh8rrisX1VIMfX9Y0eKUaMTbc)

**CHAPTER 8**

**Islam – Themes in the Quran**

The inspiring spirit being of Islam claims to be the Creator in the Quran. The following quotes are from the English translation of the Quran by M.H. Shakir and published by Tahrike Tarsile Qur'an, Inc., in 1983. [There are many versions of the English translation of the Quran available online. Reader may wish to check these translations for clarity of certain passages. Shakir’s translation is used throughout this book].

[2.21] O men! serve your Lord Who created you and those before you so that you may guard (against evil).

[2.22] Who made the earth a resting place for you and the heaven a canopy and (Who) sends down rain from the cloud then brings forth with it subsistence for you of the fruits; therefore do not set up rivals to Allah while you know.

[2.28] How do you deny Allah and you were dead and He gave you life? Again He will cause you to die and again bring you to life, then you shall be brought back to Him.

[2.29] He it is Who created for you all that is in the earth, and He directed Himself to the heaven, so He made them complete seven heavens, and He knows all things.

[2.107] Do you not know that Allah's is the kingdom of the heavens and the earth, and that besides Allah you have no guardian or helper?

[2.117] Wonderful Originator of the heavens and the earth, and when He decrees an affair, He only says to it, Be, so there it is.

[2.255] Allah is He besides Whom there is no god, the Everliving, the Self-subsisting by Whom all subsist; slumber does not overtake Him nor sleep; whatever is in the heavens and whatever is in the earth is His; who is he that can intercede with Him but by His permission? He knows what is before them and what is behind them, and they cannot comprehend anything out of His knowledge except what He pleases, His knowledge extends over the heavens and the earth, and the preservation of them both tires Him not, and He is the Most High, the Great.

[3.18] Allah bears witness that there is no god but He, and (so do) the angels and those possessed of knowledge, maintaining His creation with justice; there is no god but He, the Mighty, the Wise.

[7.54] Surely your Lord is Allah, Who created the heavens and the earth in six periods [or days] of time, and He is firm in power; He throws the veil of night over the day, which it pursues incessantly; and (He created) the sun and the moon and the stars, made subservient by His command; surely His is the creation and the command; blessed is Allah, the Lord of the worlds.

[10.3] Surely your Lord is Allah, Who created the heavens and the earth in six periods [days], and He is firm in power, regulating the affair, there is no intercessor except by His permission; this is Allah, your Lord, therefore serve Him; will you not then mind?

These verses leave no doubt that the “Allah” of Islam claims to be the Creator and sustainer of the universe, the heavens and the earth and all things that are in them, and he is the Most High God.

***Is Quran the Word of God***

Allah of Islam claims to be the creator of everything. But has he proved to us in the Quran that he is in fact the Almighty God? Let’s apply our three criteria to determine if Quran is the word of God. If we can prove that it is, then we can believe that Allah is the Almighty.

The only criterion that proves that a holy book is the word of God is whether God prophesied about numerous things in the book and they ALL came to pass exactly as prophesied, which can be historically verified.

The Quran contains absolutely no prophecies that came true in the past. It is totally silent on the subject. Therefore, the Quran has miserably failed our test. It is not inspired by the true God. It contains the lies of one who falsely claims that he is the true God, when in fact he is a charlatan and a cunning deceiver.

There is a future prophecy of the coming of the Mahdi [meaning ‘the guided one’], also known as the 12th Imam, to lead Muslims to victory over the Christian west. Then the antichrist will come and the Mahdi will fight the antichrist. Then Jesus Christ will return to earth to fight along with the Mahdi to defeat and kill the antichrist. Then the entire world will convert to Islam, and Jesus Christ, a Muslim Himself, will rule over the earth and then die.

This prophecy is not in the Quran but is contained in the Hadiths or sayings and actions attributed to Mohammad by the companions of Mohammad. The authenticity of many of these sayings is doubtful. Still why should we believe this prophecy in Islam? The Hadiths or the Quran do not contain any prophecies about the past that came to pass exactly as foretold? Therefore, the coming of the 12th Imam is merely a statement about the future without incontrovertible proof that it has been given by Almighty God and backed by His power. There is no reason to believe in this prophecy. Hence the Quran and the Hadiths have miserably failed the test that they are backed by the power of the Almighty Creator God. The Allah of Islam is proved to be a liar, an imposter and counterfeiter. There is also no reason to believe in the promises of reward in paradise and punishment in hell in the Quran on blind faith. God instead wants us to prove all things before actually believing in them (I Thessalonians 5:21, “Prove all things; hold fast that which is good.”

Much of the world is now aware that the Germans worship Satan as their god, because he has led them to believe that he is more powerful than the God of the Bible. In my book “Does God Exist?” I have provided proof that Satan is fully under control of the God of the Bible, Who can annul any of Satan’s actions any time. Satan can do only what the God of the Bible allows. The Bible identifies Satan as the former archangel Lucifer who rebelled against His Creator, the God of the Bible, and attacked His throne in an event to take over the throne of Heaven from Him. Of course, Satan and his forces of angels under his command were defeated and they were blasted back to the earth. Since then he became an adversary or enemy of God and the angels under his command became demons (or jinns as the Quran identifies them).

Satan communicates with the Germans directly. He has communicated with the Germans that the Quran was his deception. However, we are not relying on Satan’s word to prove that. We have already proved that the whole of Quran is a colossal lie to deceive much of humanity, cause divisions, deep hatreds, leading to violence and destruction.

***Themes in the Quran***

We have proved that the Quran is not the word of God. Yet one in it falsely claims to be the creator God. Therefore, the whole of the Quran contains some very cunningly devised lies. We will address and expose the commonly believed lies among the Muslims, that are described in its pages.

The only holy book that passes our test of being God-inspired is the Bible. It contains literally hundreds of prophecies that have come true, exactly as prophesied over years, decades, centuries and even thousands of years. Many of these prophecies given thousands of years ago are coming true even today. And many of the prophecies are even being fulfilled today. I have provided this detailed proof in my book “Which Holy Book is the Word of God?” available free at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

Since the Bible is the word of God, it means that the God of the Bible is the true God. Anyone else who claims to be the Creator God is a liar. That is true of Krishna of the Hindus, and also Allah of Islam.

If a liar wanted to deceive mankind, what strategies would he use? His most important strategy would be to attack various aspects of the truth and cast doubts about the credibility of the book that has recorded the truth. Then he would try to have his lies accepted as the truth with false promises and incentives. Joseph Goebbels, Hitler’s propaganda minister is credited with the statement, “If you repeat a lie often enough, people will believe it.”

If the liar is also a destroyer, what strategies would he use to destroy people? He would cause divisions and hatred among them. One very effective strategy to accomplish that is to make a particular group of people feel superior to others, and consider themselves as the ‘Chosen Ones’ and make them believe that all others are condemned to be destroyed.

Then the destroyer would incite the ‘Chosen Ones’ to convert all others to their religion, with violence and warfare if needed. The use of violence would create further implacable hatred between the ‘Chosen Ones’ and those who actually believe in the truth. And warfare would lead to people destroying one another.

Those are the very strategies the Allah of Islam developed and had them recorded in the Quran for his followers. These strategies are reflected in the themes in the Quran that are repeated over and over and over again in virtually every major Sura or Chapter. Here are the themes in the Quran:

1) There is only one God, Allah, the creator and sustainer of everything. Believers are not to associate any other gods with him. This is designed to deny the divinity of Jesus Christ.

2) Jesus Christ was merely a prophet, and not the Son of God. Though the Quran claims that He was born of a mother without a human father. Jesus Christ also did not die on the cross, but God made it appear that way to them. Since He did not die, He was not resurrected.

3) Allah acknowledges that an evil Satan and jinns (presumably demons) exist.

4) Allah is the God of the Bible. He is the one who gave the Old Testament to the Jews and the New Testament to Christians. For this purpose, many of the Bible stories, such as the Exodus, Abraham’s willingness to sacrifice Isaac - though the Quran substitutes Ishmael for Isaac – are repeated in the Quran, but not exactly the way described in the Bible. That way Allah can claim those as his deeds as they can be verified in history.

5) Allah claims that the Jews and Christians altered the Bible that he gave them. But the Quran is his latest revelation to mankind. For this reason, Muslims are willing to accept those parts of the Bible that agree with the Quran and reject all else, as it was altered.

6) Allah warns the believers in the Quran that by and large the Jews and Christians will not believe in the Quran.

7) Any who don’t believe in the Quran will be sent to ever-burning hell fire and tortured for eternity. That will include all the unbeliever Jews and Christians. Since that is their fate, the believers can use force to convert them, or impose taxes on them or enslave them.

8) Those who believe in the Quran and worship Allah and do good deeds will go to Gardens in Paradise where they will enjoy delicious food, wine, the company of submissive fair/pure women for eternity. Good believing women in Islam are also promised Paradise, but no corresponding company of fair/pure men.

These themes are repeated over and over again in virtually ALL lengthy Suras, particularly concerning believers going to Paradise and the non-believers being tortured in an ever-burning hell for eternity. There is very little instruction on how to live one’s life and some judgments on some situations that may arise among Muslims, but that is only a very small part of the Quran. Most of the pages in the Quran are taken up in repeating the above themes *ad nauseum*.

Besides these themes in the Quran, Muslims also have certain beliefs about Mohammed as a prophet and about the Quran. These are:

9) Coming of Mohammed as a prophet was prophesied in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

10) Mohammed was unlettered, meaning he was illiterate. Muslims cite that as proof that the Quran was revealed to him by the archangel Gabriel, and he did not make it up.

11) Muslims refer to the Quran as a miracle because it has been transmitted unaltered, meaning that not a word in the Quran we have today has been changed since the time it was revealed to Mohammed.

12) Muslims claim that the four gospels in the Bible are not God inspired because they are all different.

I would like to reiterate that according to the criteria we developed for testing whether the scripture of a particular religion or not, only the Bible passed our test. The Quran and the scriptures of Hinduism and Sikhism have miserable failed that test. Therefore, only the Bible is the true inspired word of God. All others are either deliberate deceptions or the philosophies of men.

Since the Quran attacks the authenticity of the Bible, it is deliberate deception. It contains monumental lies to cast doubts about the truths in the Bible and turn the believers in the Quran into deadly enemies of Jews and Christians.

Therefore, the issue of the Bible being altered is the most important as a starting point, and whether it is indeed the inspired word of God.

**CHAPTER 9**

**Was the Bible Altered**

According to Muslims, the Quran states that the Jews altered the scriptures. In support of their belief the cite the following verses:

**[2.75]:** Do you then hope that they [the Jews] would believe in you, and a party from among them indeed used to hear the Word of Allah, then altered it after they had understood it, and they know (this).

**[3.78]:** Most surely there is a party amongst those who distort the Book with their tongue that you may consider it to be (a part) of the Book, and they say, It is from Allah, while it is not from Allah, and they tell a lie against Allah whilst they know.

**[4.46]** Of those who are Jews (there are those who) alter words from their places and say: We have heard and we disobey and: Hear, may you not be made to hear! and: Raina, distorting (the word) with their tongues and taunting about religion; and if they had said (instead): We have heard and we obey, and hearken, and unzurna it would have been better for them and more upright; but Allah has cursed them on account of their unbelief, so they do not believe but a little.

**[5.13]** But on account of their breaking their covenant We cursed them and made their hearts hard; they altered the words from their places and they neglected a portion of what they were reminded of; and you shall always discover treachery in them excepting a few of them; so pardon them and turn away; surely Allah loves those who do good (to others).

Many in Islam interpret these verses to say that the Jews having altered the Scriptures and justify their rejection of the Bible that differs from the Quran. However, many scholars now question these beliefs. These verses merely refer to interpretation or twisting of the Jewish scriptures when the Jews talked about them, and not altering the written texts. Quran is merely claiming that the Bible was badly presented to them and not that it was altered. Scholars now cite other verses that affirm that the Old and New Testaments as existed in Mohammed’s days were authentic, and not altered by the Jews and Christians.

Here are verses in the Quran that lend show that Mohammed believed that the Bible was authentic:

**[21.7]** And We did not send before you any but men to whom We sent revelation, so ask the followers of the reminder if you do not know.

Allah would not send Mohammed to those who had the previous revelation, meaning the Bible, if it had been altered.

Imam Baydaoui, commenting on Sura 2:75 says, “…altered [distorted] means that they misunderstood it and explained it as they wished.”

In his commentary, Imam Bukhari explains Sura 4:46 as follows: “…to alter words from their [normal] place…means to interpret them in an evil way.”

In Sura 5:46, Allah says that the Bible contains light and guidance. If it had been altered at the time of Mohammed, the Quran would not say that it provided light and guidance.

[**5.46**] And We sent after them in their footsteps Isa, son of Marium, verifying what was before him of the Taurat [Torah] and We gave him the Injeel [New Testament of the Bible] in which was guidance and light, and verifying what was before it of Taurat and a guidance and an admonition for those who guard (against evil).

While new scholarship points out that the Quran does not state that the Bible was altered, but rather that it was misinterpreted or deliberately distorted when the Jews talked about it to the followers of Mohammed, the Quran often speaks favorably of the Bible. However, there is absolutely no denying the fact that the Quran attacks the central message of the Bible: the divinity of Jesus Christ, and His sacrifice for payment of the death penalty for humanity’s sins to make eternal life possible for human beings. Quran is deliberately lying to distort these truths to directly attack the credibility of the Bible. Even the salvation Islam offers its followers is totally different from what is offered in the Bible. Because of these differences, we have to conclude that the Quran is not the inspired word of God.

From hundreds of already fulfilled prophecies we have proved that the Bible is the inspired word of God. To further establish its credibility, let’s verify what the prophets, Jesus Christ, the apostles and even God’s loyal angels had to say about the truth of the Bible.

***Opinion of Jesus, Prophets and Apostles about the Bible***

Jesus said in John 17:17: “…your word is truth.” So, Jesus emphatically said that God’s word, the Old Testament in the Bible (which is what was available as scripture when Jesus Christ was alive) is the truth.

Jesus also said in Matthew 5:17-18: “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily [or assuredly] I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle [the equivalent of a full stop or a coma as punctuation marks] shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.”

Here Jesus was saying that everything written in the Old Testament, including punctuation marks, will be fulfilled. Therefore, it is the truth backed by Almighty God.

Jesus also said in John 10:35: “If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken.” Here Jesus was saying that the scriptures cannot be broken, meaning that the scriptures are infallible. Certainly, Muslims do not believe that Jesus Christ would lie. By the time of Jesus, the Old Testament scriptures had been written and preserved for a time period varying from more than 1450 years when Moses delivered his first 5 books of the Bible to about 450 years since Malachi the prophet wrote his book. Jesus thus confirmed that the Old Testament had been faithfully preserved by the Jews till His time.

Here is what the prophet Daniel thought of the scriptures: “But I will show you that which is noted in the scripture of truth…” (Daniel 10:21). This was probably the archangel Gabriel talking to Daniel, and Daniel recorded what was revealed to him, because he knew it was the truth. Thus, even the archangels of God call the scriptures truth. Certainly, Muslims cannot accuse the archangel Gabriel of lying. The archangel confirmed that the Old Testament scriptures written up to that time were the truth

The angels of God also keep the sayings of the Bible. The angel that was revealing parts of chapters 21 and 22 of the book of Revelation to the Apostle John said in Revelation 22:6-9: “6 And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done . 7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keeps the sayings of the prophecy of this book. 8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. 9 Then says he unto me, See you do it not: for I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.”

When the prophecies in the Book of Revelation were revealed to John, all other books of the Bible had already been written and the final compilation already done by John the Apostle. When the angel said that he was a fellow servant like the prophets and kept the sayings of this book, he also signified that the canonization of books that John had done were also scripture. Thus, the angel signified that the New Testament of the Bible had been completed, and he as an angel of God kept the sayings of the entire Bible as they were faithful and true. As the angel had signified to Daniel the prophet that the Old Testament scriptures were the truth, the angel was now signifying to John the apostle that the New Testament that he had finally canonized with the book of Revelation was the truth and even he as an angel of God lived by its words. Besides Jesus Christ, what greater testimony can we have than that of God’s angels that the entire Bible is the true word of God?

The apostle Paul told Timothy in 2 Timothy 3:16-17: “All scripture [meaning the Old Testament and the New Testament, as we will see how the Bible was canonized] is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: that the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.” The literal translation in place of ‘inspiration of God’ is “God-breathed.” So according to Paul, the entire Bible is God breathed, or inspired by God.

In Romans 1:2 Paul calls the scriptures ‘holy.’

Peter the apostle shows in 2 Peter 1:20-21 that God had an active hand in the writing of the Bible. He said that “No prophecy [which means ‘inspired speaking or writing’] of Scripture ever came by the will of man. Instead, holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.”

Thus, from the words of Jesus, the prophets, the apostles and even God’s angels, the scriptures, the entire Holy Bible is the true, inspired and infallible word of God.

***How Was the Bible Written and Preserved***

Another important question for us to consider is: How was the Bible written and preserved for us through thousands of years?

Romans 3:1-2 states: “1 What advantage then has the Jew? or what profit is there of circumcision? 2 Much every way: chiefly, because that unto them were committed the oracles of God.”

These verses say that God gave the Jews the responsibility of preserving the oracles of God. Oracles means “all the written utterances of God through the Old Testament writers.” Note that God said the Jews were responsible for the preservation of the Bible, not the interpretation of it. In the New Testament, Christ often rejected the Jews’ interpretations. After His death, the elders met together and used God’s Holy Spirit to make judgments as described in the apostles’ conference in Acts 15 to discuss the circumcision question.

The Jewish scribes were extremely careful and reverent in preserving the Bible. If they found even one error in a copy from the original, the copy was burnt rather than corrections being made to it. They also kept statistics such as identifying the total number of words in various books, the middle words, and the total words in the whole Old Testament and the middle words etc. so as to provide another way to verify no changes crept in from the original text.

*Old Testament Canonization*

Now let us take a brief look at how the Old Testament of the Bible was canonized. Moses wrote the first five books, called the Law in Deuteronomy 31:9. 24-26. Kings of Israel and Judah were to write personal copies of the law as stated in Deuteronomy 17:14, 18. So kings were involved in the preservation of the Scriptures.

Prophets, including Samuel, Nathan, and Gad also wrote parts of the Old Testament, as I Samuel 10:25 and I Chronicles 29:29 mention. King David wrote many of the psalms, specially the first 72 of them. King Solomon wrote the Book of Ecclesiastes (Ecclesiastes 1:1), the Song of Solomon (1.1) and most of the book of Proverbs (1.1; Ecclesiastes 12:9-11). King Hezekiah appears to have overseen the collection and preservation of some of the books as Proverbs 25:1states.

Jeremiah wrote the Book of Lamentations on the death of Josiah as 2 Chronicles 35:24-25 mentions.

Ezra and Nehemiah probably did the final editing, adding observations such as Deuteronomy 34:10 which says that a prophet like Moses had not arisen in Israel. Names of towns and cities change over time. So more modern names were used by the editors than what the original authors wrote.

*New Testament Canonization*

In Matthew 24:35 Jesus Christ said, “My words will by no means pass away.” If Jesus Christ’s words were not to pass away, how could they be preserved? There are limitations to passing His words on orally. They get distorted. The best way to preserve Jesus’ words was to write them down.

Matthew 28:19-20 says converts to Christianity were to be taught to observe ALL THINGS Jesus had commanded. Some say that Paul’s doctrine superseded all other apostles’ doctrine. But Acts 2:42 refutes this idea. It says the Church “continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and fellowship. The apostles here includes the 12 disciples of Jesus Christ who became apostles.

The gospels were written in the mid-60s, but were already considered scripture by Paul. For proof, see Luke 10:7. It states: “And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they give: for the laborer is worthy of his hire.” Now compare with I Timothy 5:18: “For the scripture says, You shall not muzzle the ox that treads out the corn. And, the laborer is worthy of his hire [or reward.] The phrase ‘the laborer is worthy of his hire’ is not written in the Old Testament. It is found in Luke 10:7, but Paul is already considering and quoting the gospel of Luke in I Timothy 5:18 as scripture. This proves that the gospels were considered scripture.

In 2 Peter 1:12, 15, Peter said he wrote his epistles so that people would have a “reminder” of things after his death. He knew that he was writing scripture and that it would be preserved as such for all Christians afterwards. The reminder of things comes to us from Peter’s writings.

2 Peter 3:15-16 says people twisted Paul’s writings as they did the rest of the scriptures. Here Peter is already equating Paul’s writings with Scripture.

In 2 Timothy 4:11-13 Paul asked timothy to bring the “books”, especially the “parchments”, indicating that he was compiling Scripture. Thus, Paul and Peter were involved in writing the Scriptures and Paul compiled, or canonized them. The final book of the Bible was written by the apostle John. Therefore, the final canonization of the New Testament was done by the apostle John. The canonization of the Old and New Testaments was not done by committees of scholars as critics claim

.

The final editing of the Old Testament was done by Ezra and Nehemiah. Compilation of the New Testament was done by the Apostle Paul, with the final compilation being done by the apostle John.

God’s true Church does not recognize the Apocrypha as part of the canon for the following reasons. Firstly, Jesus and the writers of the New Testament never quoted from any of these books but did from almost all the other Old Testament books. Secondly, the Jewish historian Josephus who lived from about 30 A.D. to 100 A.D. explicitly excludes them and says there were 22 books in the Old Testament. In the Jewish Old Testament count of 22 books all minor prophets are included as one book and the books of Samuel and Kings are included as one book. Thirdly, Jewish scholars of Jamnia in 90 A.D. did not recognize the Apocrypha. Finally, it wasn’t until A.D. 1546, in a polemical action at the Counter Reformation Council of Trent, that these books received full canonical status by the Catholic Church.

Jesus and the original apostles did not recognize the Apocrypha as scripture. God’s Church also does not consider any additional books such as the Quran or the Book of Mormon to be Scripture and equal with the Bible because: First, 2 Timothy 3:16-17 says that the Scriptures given by God in the bible are sufficient that the man of God may be complete, thoroughly equipped for every good work. Secondly, Revelation 22:18 says, “…If any man shall add to these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book.’ This means that Revelation was to be the final book of the Bible. And finally, the books of Genesis and Revelation seem to be bookends for the rest of the Bible. According to the *Companion Bible* Appendix # 3, there are 30 parallels between these two books showing that the Bible is a whole, complete book.

In summary then according to Sidney Collett’s “*All About the Bible*”, 20th Edition, p. 11, “Altogether about 40 persons, in all stations of life, were engaged in the writing of these oracles, the work of which was spread over a period of about 1,600 years.” In spite of all these writers over hundreds of years, the Bible has a consistent plan throughout.

Many have written against the Bible as God’s word. These types of arguments usually falsely claim that the Bible contradicts itself, that the people in the Bible didn’t really exist, and that the Jews wrote the book to enhance their national reputation.

Josh McDowell’s *Evidence that Demands a Verdict* has some quotes refuting this kind of thinking:

On p. 55-56 he says that 40 different kings are listed in correct order in the Old Testament. He says that the odds of that being right are incredible if the Bible were fraudulent. The chances are I in 75 followed by 22 zeros.

On page 58 he talks about the Dead Sea Scrolls. In these scrolls the Book of the prophet Isaiah is intact and dates to 125 B.C. Out of the 166 words in Isaiah 53, only 3 letters (one word) differ from the Massoretic text of A.D. 916. And he says on page 141 that Messianic prophecies in the Old Testament number in the 100s, showing the great need for a New Testament.

***Reliability of the Old Testament - importance of the Dead Sea Scrolls***

The Dead Sea Scrolls provide a glimpse of the amazing accuracy of the transmission of the text of the Old Testament through the millennia. The Dead Sea Scrolls are collectively composed of some 900 documents that contain, besides other religious literature, sections of the entire Hebrew Bible except for the book of Esther. The scrolls range in date from the third century B.C. to the first century A.D.

When these manuscripts were discovered in various caves of the northwestern region of the Dead Sea close to Qumran, a site most archaeologists believe was a community of Essene Jews, scholars wondered how many discrepancies would be found between them and the Old Testament text used for the translation of our modern Bibles, a text whose oldest copies date to the 10th century A.D. More than 1,000 years elapsed between the two versions. How well would they conform?

Incredibly, when the two versions were compared, researchers found that they uncannily matched—virtually word for word. For example, the Dead Sea Scroll containing the entire book of Isaiah, some 26 feet long, was compared to the 10th-century version of the Masoretic Text, which is the basis for our modern Old Testament. The researchers found it to match in virtually every instance.

Notes Bible scholar Gleason Archer: "Even though the two copies of Isaiah discovered in Qumran Cave 1 near the Dead Sea in 1947 were a thousand years earlier than the oldest dated manuscript previously known (A.D. 980), they proved to be word for word identical with our standard Hebrew Bible in more than 95 percent of the text. The 5 percent of variation consisted chiefly of obvious slips on the pen and variations in spelling…They do not affect the message of revelation in the slightest" (*A Survey of Old Testament Introduction*, 1974, p. 25).

This is the greatest contribution the Dead Sea Scrolls have made to biblical scholarship. They have confirmed the reliability of the Old Testament text we now possess in our Bibles. "Critical scholars," states Garry Brantley, "questioned the accuracy of the MT [Masoretic Text], which formed the basis of our English versions of the Old Testament, since there was such a large chronological gap between it and the autographs [original documents]. Because of this uncertainty, scholars often 'corrected' the text with considerable freedom.

"Qumran, however, has provided remains of an early Masoretic edition predating the Christian era on which the traditional MT [Masoretic Text] is based. A comparison of the [Masoretic Text] to this earlier text revealed the remarkable accuracy with which scribes copied the sacred texts. Accordingly, the integrity of the Hebrew Bible was confirmed, which generally has heightened its respect among scholars and drastically reduced textual alteration" ("The Dead Sea Scrolls and Biblical Integrity," *Reason & Revelation online journal*, April 1995, ApologeticsPress.org).

In fact, the Masoretic Text we possess today has been found to be more carefully transmitted than the Dead Sea Scrolls version! When compared, the largest Isaiah Dead Sea Scroll was found to have more spelling errors—and this is generally the case when comparing the Masoretic Text and the Dead Sea Scrolls.

***Reliability of the New Testament***

What about the New Testament text? How accurate is it?

First consider the number of New Testament manuscripts available today in whole or in part as compared to the number of manuscripts of the classical Greek and Roman writers. The late F. F. Bruce, professor of theology at the University of Manchester, stated about the number of manuscripts available for ancient historical works:

For *Caesar’s Gallic War* (composed between 58 and 50 BC) there are several extant MSS [manuscripts], but only nine or ten are good, and the oldest is some 900 years later than Caesar’s day. Of the 142 books of the *Roman History of Livy* (59 BC – AD 17) only thirty-five survive, these are known to us from not more than twenty MSS of any consequence, only one of which, and that containing fragments of Books iii-vi, is as old as the fourth century. Of the fourteen books of the *Histories of Tacitus* (c. AD 100) only four and a half survive; of the sixteen books of his *Annals*, ten survive in full and two in part. The text of these extant portions of his two great historical works depend entirely on two MSS, one of the ninth century and one of the eleventh. The extant MSS of his minor works *Dialogus de Oratoribus*, *Agricola*, *Germania* all descend from a codex of the tenth century. The *History of Thucydides* (c. 460-400 BC) is known to us from eight MSS, the earliest belonging to AD 900, and a few papyrus scraps, belonging to about the beginning of the Christian era. The same is true of the *History of Herodotus* (c. 480-425 BC).

We are talking here about no more than 2 to 20 manuscripts surviving today of all these classical works, the earliest being dated more than 1,300 years after the original manuscripts were penned. Yet no classical scholar would listen to an argument that the authenticity of Herodotus or Thucydides is in doubt because the earliest MSS of their works which are of any use to us are over 1,300 years later than the originals (1960, 15-17).

Compare the number of manuscripts of these classical works surviving to the available surviving manuscripts, whole or in fragments of the New Testament. More than 5,300 Greek manuscripts survive today. Some of these ancient manuscripts date from just decades or just a century from the end of the New Testament canon by John the Apostle in the early to mid-90s A.D. Then besides the 5,300 Greek manuscripts there are tens of thousands of manuscripts of the earliest translations of the Bible. With all this mountain of evidence for the New Testament writings, in the words of Professor F.F. Bruce: “…if the New Testament were a collection of secular writings, their authenticity would generally be regarded as beyond all doubt.”

But there has been no book or writing whose authenticity has been more questioned and critically examined than the Bible. With the mountain of evidence supporting the authenticity of the New Testament as compared to the classical ancient Greek and Roman works, secular historians, not theologians, but historians have been much more willing to accept the authenticity of the New Testament. Most of those less ready to accept the authenticity of the New Testament have been theologians. That should give us a clue. These theologians have an agenda, which is to turn people away from the only true God and His instructional manual for mankind, the Holy Bible. That is their main business: to endlessly invent arguments in order to deceive people into believing that the Bible is inaccurate, and hence not God’s word; just as the theory of evolution has been beaten to dust, but its advocates still continue to spew out trash on a daily basis in order to deceive humans.

Because of the never-ending criticism of these masquerading theologians, genuine Bible scholars have been forced to examine the evidence for the authenticity of the New Testament over the past century or so. They have done a stellar job of nailing the lies and accusations of these masquerading theologians. In the process our understanding of God’s word and the mind of God have been immensely enriched.

Here then is the opinion of genuine honest scholars of the New Testament. From the thousands of ancient copies or portions of copies known, 98 percent of the New Testament texts agree. The variations that do exist are mostly spelling errors or scribal additions that are easily discarded.

Here is how Wayne Jackson writing for the *Christian Courier* summarizes this evidence:

“The accumulation of manuscript evidence has been so vast and the work of the scientific textual critic so precise, that we may express complete confidence in the reliability of the New Testament text. While it is true that some minor manuscript variations exist, they are negligible.

“Westcott and Hort felt that the significantly debatable portions of the New Testament text could hardly amount to more than a thousandth part of the whole—the equivalent of a little more than half a page in the Greek New Testament (as stated in Henry C. Thiessen in *Introduction to the New Testament*; 1955, 77).

“Let me emphasize how impressive this fact really is. The New Testament documents have been in existence almost nineteen hundred years. For fifteen of these centuries they were replicated solely by hand. In spite of this, there are only some twelve to twenty significant textual variations in the entire New Testament, and none of these affect an important doctrinal matter.

“On the other hand, consider the works of William Shakespeare. These writings have existed less than four centuries (and since the invention of the printing press) and yet: [I]n every one of Shakespeare’s thirty-seven plays there are probably a hundred readings still in dispute, a large number of which materially affect the meaning of the passages in which they occur” (H.L. Hastings in *The Corruption of the New Testament. A Square Talk About the Inspiration of the Bible*. Boston, MA: H. L. Hastings, 1890, 13).

As the great text scholar Sir Frederic Kenyon noted after examining both the Old and New Testament texts (and it holds true even more so today), "The Christian can take the whole Bible in his hand and say without fear or hesitation that he holds in it the true word of God, handed down without essential loss from generation to generation throughout the centuries" (*Our Bible and Ancient Manuscripts*, 1939, p. 23).

*Two Types of Errors*

Two types or errors in transmission of texts can occur. One is the errors of transmission in the original languages; and the second is the errors in translations. The errors in translations can be easily examined and discarded by referring to the reliable texts in the original languages. One example of such an error is in Acts 12:4: “4 And when he [Herod] had apprehended him [Peter], he put him in prison, and delivered him to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after Easter to bring him forth to the people.” In this verse the word translated Easter is *pascha*, which no scholar disputes that it should be translated Passover. So “Easter” is a mistranslation. Genuine scholars can easily identify such errors from the original Greek texts and discard them. Many modern translations have already corrected this error.

Second type of error is variations in the transmission of the text through the centuries in scribal errors or spelling mistakes. We have examined the evidence for these types of errors and the evidence shows that there are no material errors that affect doctrine. Spelling errors can be easily discarded.

One such error is found in 1 John 5:7-8: “7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.” These verses are often cited in support of the Trinity doctrine.

The words “in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth…” are a spurious addition to the inspired text.

Here is what Dr. Norman Geisler and Thomas Howe state about these verses in *The Big Book of Bible Difficulties* (2008, pp.540-541): "This verse has virtually no support among the early Greek manuscripts…Its appearance in late Greek manuscripts is based on the fact that Erasmus was placed under ecclesiastical pressure to include it in his Greek NT of 1522, having omitted it in his two earlier editions of 1516 and 1519 because he could not find any Greek manuscripts which contained it."

Theology professors Anthony and Richard Hanson, in their book *Reasonable Belief: A Survey of the Christian Faith*, explain the unwarranted addition to the text this way: "It was added by some enterprising person or persons in the ancient Church who felt that the New Testament was sadly deficient in direct witness to the kind of doctrine of the Trinity which he favored and who determined to remedy that defect…It is a waste of time to attempt to read Trinitarian doctrine directly off the pages of the New Testament" (1980, p. 171).

The inspired words of 1 John 5:7-8 in hundreds of the oldest Greek texts and now correct in many modern translations should read: "In fact there are three witnesses, the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three are in agreement" (*Revised English Bible*). These words refer to the witness of Jesus Christ being the Son of God and salvation possibly only through water baptism, acceptance of the sacrifice and blood of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of one’s sins, and then receiving the gift of God’s holy spirit to live a Christian life of overcoming sin.

So what is the lesson in all this for humanity! The masquerading theologians with all their Satan inspired diabolical cunning have questioned the authenticity of the Bible in every possible way. Genuine theologians have been led as a result to critically examine every aspect of the Bible themselves. They have compared the transmission of the Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek texts, and have critically examined the translated texts.

They have determined that most of the errors are obvious spelling errors and other slips of the pen which can be easily discarded. The remaining minor variations in the Old Testament texts do not affect the message at all. In the New Testament, after spelling and other obvious errors are discarded, the variations in question in the original Greek Texts amount to no more than half a page in the entire Bible. And these variations do not affect any doctrine at all. These mistranslations and spurious additions have been identified, critically examined and commented on. That is why genuine Bible scholars have concluded time and time again as quoted earlier: “The Christian can take the whole Bible in his hand and say without fear or hesitation that he holds in it the true word of God, handed down without essential loss from generation to generation throughout the centuries."

The authenticity of the Bible has been questioned in many other ways. Here are other ways the critics have been proven wrong.

***Bible and Archaeology***

Many critics questioned the existence of empires and individuals mentioned in the Bible. But the spade of archaeology has proved the accuracy of the Bible and its historical details. Archaeology proved the existence of the mighty Assyrian Empire and its capital Nineveh, existence of ancient Israel and its interactions with Egypt, existence of Bible personalities like Kings David, Ahab, Hezekiah, Manasseh, Jehu, Omri, Josiah, Uzziah, Zedekiah, many other kings and officials of Judah, Israel, ancient Assyria, Babylon and Persia. In addition, the existence of many New Testament personalities such as Anna the high priest, Caiaphas the high priest, Pontius Pilate, Herod the Great, Sergius Paulus and emperors of Rome has also been confirmed by archaeology.

The only conclusion we can draw can be stated in the words of archaeologist Nelson Glueck: "It may be stated categorically that no archaeological discovery has ever controverted a Biblical reference. Scores of archaeological findings have been made which confirm in clear outline or in exact detail historical statements in the Bible. And, by the same token, proper valuation of Biblical descriptions has often led to amazing discoveries" (*Rivers in the Desert: A History of the Negev*, 1959, p. 31).

***Bible and Astronomy***

A further proof of divine inspiration of the Bible is that it is in perfect harmony with the observations of astronomy. Theologians had endorsed the treatise by the sixth-century monk Cosmas...who...held that the world was a flat, rectangular plane... (William Manchester, *A World Lit Only by Fire*, 1993, p. 89"). But through observations and the use of mathematical tables, Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus concluded that the earth is not a disk about which the sun rotates; rather it is a sphere revolving around the sun.

But the Bible had given an accurate description of the earth thousands of years before Copernicus’ discovery. In the oldest book in the Bible, about 3,600 – 3,700 years ago Job wrote: “He [meaning God] hangs the earth on nothing.” This was written thousands of years before astronomer and physicist Isaac Newton discovered the invisible laws of gravity that showed the earth truly is suspended "on nothing." Job knew this more than 3,600 years ago.

Some accuse biblical authors of believing in a flat earth because of the references to the "four corners" of the earth in Isaiah 11:12 and Revelation 20:8. But this is an expression that simply designates the four points of the compass. When we use the expression “four corners of the earth” today, we DO mean going north, south, east and west to gather information or search for something.

About 2,700 years ago, the prophet Isaiah wrote in Isaiah 40:22 that God "sits above the circle of the earth," showing that the earth was round. So by using the expression “four corners of the earth” in Isaiah 11:12, the prophet was not implying that the earth is a flat rectangular plane.

With this evidence, scholars are led to conclude that there are no errors of scientific or historical fact in the Bible, and it has not been altered. Bible is indeed the inspired word of God. Muslims need to give up the lies they have been led to believe about the Bible and the Quran.

**CHAPTER 10**

**There is No Other God but Allah**

Muslims believe that the Jews altered the Old Testament (The *Torah* or *Taurat*) and Christians altered the New Testament (the *Gospel* or *Injil*). We have proved these to be lies.

Islam also believes that there is only one God, the Creator and Sustainer of the universe. Therefore, Muslims argue that Jesus Christ cannot also be God. Islam believes that Jesus Christ was a mere human being though a great one, and miraculously born to Mary without a human father as Adam and Eve were miraculously created directly by God. But the divinity of Jesus Christ is central to Christianity, because He could not have been the Savior of the world by paying the death penalty for every human being if He was not divine. That is how the Allah of Islam tries to deceive Muslims. No human being can earn salvation without accepting the sacrifice of Jesus Christ as payment of the penalty for his or her sins. But if Muslims are deceived into believing that Jesus was a mere man, they do not acknowledge Him as a Savior. Thus, their sins cannot be forgiven.

We will show the biblical view on who Jesus Christ is, and who this deceiver who calls himself Allah really is. He definitely is not the true Creator God, though in the Quran he is masquerading as the true God, by attributing the deeds of the true God in the Bible to himself.

Islam also holds the view that mainstream Christianity believes in a Triune God (also called the Holy Trinity) that exists as the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, which Islam rejects. God’s Church agrees with Islam’s view in this regard. We will also prove from the pages of the Bible that God is not a Trinity.

**Gods in the Bible**

Since the Bible is the true word of God, the existence of how many Gods does it reveal?

John 1:1-14 answers one part of that question: “1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 2The same was in the beginning with God. 3All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made…10He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. 11He came unto his own, and his own received him not. 12But as many as received him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: 14And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.”

John makes it very plain that the Word [Jesus Christ] was with God and was also God. Thus, John describes two God Beings. Verse 14 says the Word was made flesh and dwelt among the disciples. He is describing Jesus Christ Who gave up His divinity and became a human being. John also makes it clear that all the creation was done by the Word. Thus, the Creator God of the Old Testament of the Jews was none other than the Word Who became Jesus Christ.

The Bible reveals the existence of no other true God Beings. However, it does reveal the existence of another being who is called the ‘god of this world’. The Bible reveals that this being is worshipped by literally the whole world in some form or another. 2 Corinthians 4:3-4 declares, “3 But if our gospel [meaning good news] be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: 4In whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.”

Paul declares that this ‘god of the world’ is an arch-deceiver who has blinded the minds of all those who don’t believe the good news of the salvation preached in the New Testament and the establishment of the Kingdom of God on earth. A ‘god’ is called a god because he is worshipped by human beings. So, this deceiving ‘god of the world’ is actually worshipped by the whole world. This means virtually every religion, including mainstream Christianity and Judaism, Hinduism, Sikhism and Islam, worships this false god. Mainstream Christianity worships using pagan practices, which were worship of Nimrod as the god Baal, fused with the worship of Satan as the Sun-Serpent god. Judaism does not know the true God as it rejects Jesus Christ as the Messiah. We have already proved that Hinduism and Sikhism scriptures are the handiwork of demented men, or the philosophies of men. We are in the process of identifying who Allah is. In my book “Which Religion is True?”, available free on my web site, I show how all these are false religions and which is the only true religion.

The Bible clearly identifies who this arch-deceiving ‘god of the word’ is. Revelation 12:9, “9 So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who *deceives the whole world..*.”

This other ‘god of this world’ now stands exposed. He is identified as Satan the devil, the one who deceives the whole world. So, he and the ‘god of this world’ are one and the same being, because the ‘god of this world’ is also engaged in deceiving the whole world about the truth of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Since Islam is all about discrediting the divinity of Jesus Christ, which is part of the gospel of Jesus Christ, th Allah of Islam, then, is none other than Satan the devil. And he is identified as the serpent of old that deceived Eve in the Garden of Eden into eating the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

Satan is a Hebrew noun meaning "adversary"—the enemy, opponent, antagonist, or foe. The verb forms of the noun mean to "accuse," "slander" and "be an adversary" (*Anchor Bible Dictionary*, Vol. 5, 1992, "Satan," p. 985).

Devil is the other name for Satan. Devil is translated from the Greek word diabolos, the root from which we get such words as diabolic and diabolical, used to describe something wicked or sinister. Diabolos means "an accuser, a slanderer" (W.E. Vine, *Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words*, 1985, "Devil, Devilish").

The Bible reveals much about Satan’s nature. Jesus Christ said in John 8:44 (NKJV), “…He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.”

Satan had the death sentence passed on Adam and Eve, effectively murdering them from the very beginning of man’s creation. There is no truth in him, and he is the father of lies. Masquerading as the true God under the name Allah, he has concocted lies to discredit the truth. Just like any murderer, he is preaching violence through Islam.

Peter the apostle shed further light on his murderous nature in 1 Peter 5:8-9 (NKJV): “8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour. 9 Resist him, steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same sufferings are experienced by your brotherhood in the world.”

Peter thus declares that the devil is like a roaring lion seeking any human being he can devour by deception, and that he is the cause of our suffering.

Ephesians 2:2-4 says he works in all the children of disobedience to God, “2 Wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air [Satan being called the prince of the power of the air means he broadcasts his negative, violent, murderous thoughts, moods, ideas, feelings and attitudes to all humans], the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience: 3 Among whom also we all had our conversation [conduct] in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath…”

Satan’s evil influence is so pervasive that he "deceives the whole world" (Revelation 12:9). Founding different religions with false promises of salvation based on cunningly crafted lies has been one of Satan’s prime strategies to try to devour mankind.

Yes, there are other gods mentioned in the Bible such as Baal, Molech, the goddess Astarte, Queen of heaven etc. But they are just human beings deified. The Bible identifies them as false gods.

***How Would a Liar Try to Discredit a True Story***

Have you wondered how a liar would try to discredit a true story that is the very essence, the very centrality of God’s plan of salvation for mankind?

Soon after the start of God’s Church in 31 A.D., God’s adversary, the devil first made assaults on various aspects of the true religion. These assaults were on keeping the Sabbath, God’s Passover and the other six of the seven annual holy days that picture God’s plan of salvation for mankind and substituting pagan festivals in their place such as Sunday worship, Easter, Christmas, New year’s, Valentine’s Day, Halloween and the like. Ultimately such falsehoods became the dominant religion headquartered in Rome, the capital of the greatest empire on earth at that time. But the centrality of God’s message that led to the birth of Christianity, the fact of the birth, life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ remained unchanged. Christianity continued to gain adherents and accept the fact of the birth, life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ as the Messiah for the next 580 years.

Though a vast majority of the adherents were being gained for false Christianity, the new adherents nevertheless accepted the fact of the birth, life, crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. Ultimately, some of these who had the means and could gain access to the Bible would then be exposed to the truth from its pages rather than blindly accept the paganism of the false Roman Church. And that is how God’s true Church always survived as a ‘small flock’ through the centuries.

What do you think the adversary of God, and an originator of lies would try to do to counter the spread of the central message of the Bible: Salvation for humanity through the life, crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ? Why obviously, he would try to discredit that message. He would try to spread lies that the message of the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ was lies and pure fiction. And that is exactly what the master liar and deceiver set out to do about 580 years after the start of Christianity, when he saw that the religion continued to spread. For 580 years nobody had seriously questioned the fact of the birth, life, crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. But the adversary of God with his demon cohorts planned out a strategy to try to change that.

Satan set out to try to discredit the truthfulness of every aspect of the message. He did that by masquerading as the true God of the Bible, by describing some Bible events such as the Exodus as truth and giving himself a different name: Allah. Then as a cover up, he mentions Satan (which is himself) as evil and his demons (jinns) as evil. The masquerade was complete.

He first tried to discredit the message by saying that the message itself has been corrupted though obliquely, and what we today have is not the truth. He would try to say or imply that the Old Testament and the New Testament have been corrupted so that the account we have of the life, crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ in the Bible is not correct. It has been altered. He implies that the account in the Bible is a lie. Next the liar would then give his own version of events about the crucifixion, death and the resurrection. Then the liar would form his own religion and propagate it with all his vigor and cunning so that the spread of the message of truth would be halted, and instead his religion based on his lies would spread and hope to challenge the truth by force whenever possible. He would try to convert Christians to his religion by force and murder them if they resisted.

That is exactly what Satan did about 580 years after the birth of Christianity. He used the man Mohammed as his agent to spread his lies to discredit the truth. For 580 years humanity had not questioned the true central message. But then 580 years later comes Mohammed questioning the very central message, armed with lies of the master deceiver of mankind, Satan the devil.

Satan did not use Mohammed to cast doubts about the fact of the birth and existence of Jesus Christ. In fact, he confirmed the existence of Jesus Christ and the prophets mentioned in the Bible. But he used Mohammed to discredit the facts about the life of Jesus Christ. Mohammed may have been a very sincere man. But he was man thoroughly deceived by Satan’s lies, with which he deceives about 1.8 billion Muslims on earth.

Now let’s begin setting the record straight about God the Father and Jesus Christ.

***Who are God and Jesus Christ According to the Quran***

Here is what the Quran says about Allah and Jesus Christ.

**[2.163]:** “And your God is one God! there is no god but He; He is the Beneficent, the Merciful.”

**[2.255]** “Allah is He besides Whom there is no god, the Ever-living, the Self-subsisting by Whom all subsist; slumber does not overtake Him nor sleep; whatever is in the heavens and whatever is in the earth is His…”

**[3.18]** “Allah bears witness that there is no god but He, and (so do) the angels and those possessed of knowledge, maintaining His creation with justice; there is no god but He, the Mighty, the Wise.”

The Quran quite clearly states the Islamic belief in many passages that there is only one God. In other verses it warns not to associate others equal to the one God. And it leaves no doubt about its belief that Jesus was just another human being but born miraculously, just like Adam was created directly by God.

**[3.64]** “O people of the Book (meaning Christians and Jews)! Come to a word that is just between us and you: that we shall worship none but God, and that we shall associate no partners with Him, and that none of us shall take others as lords beside God.”

Here the Quran makes it’s teaching clear that humans are to worship none other than the one God and not to make anyone else a God or Lord associated with the one God.

**[3.59-61]** “Surely the likeness of Isa [Isa is the Arabic name for Jesus Christ] is with Allah as the likeness of Adam; He created him from dust, then said to him, Be, and he was. 60 (This is) the truth from your Lord, so be not of the disputers. 61 But whoever disputes with you in this matter after what has come to you of knowledge, then say: Come let us call our sons and your sons and our women and your women and our near people and your near people, then let us be earnest in prayer, and pray for the curse of Allah on the liars.”

Here the Quran states that Allah directly created Jesus Christ from dust just like Adam and declares that as the truth and asks to pray for a curse from Allah on those who dispute this. Then,

**[5.75]** The Messiah, son of Marium [Marium is the Arabic name for Mary the mother of Jesus Christ] is but an apostle; apostles before him have indeed passed away; and his mother was a truthful woman; they both used to eat food. See how We make the communications clear to them, then behold, how they are turned away.

Here the Quran states that Jesus the son of Mary was a mere apostle, meaning merely human and cites as evidence the fact that they both ate food to sustain themselves. It further states:

**[5.72-74]** Certainly they disbelieve who say: Surely Allah, He is the Messiah, son of Marium; and the Messiah said: O Children of Israel! serve Allah, my Lord and your Lord. Surely whoever associates (others) with Allah, then Allah has forbidden to him the garden, and his abode is the fire; and there shall be no helpers for the unjust. 73 Certainly they disbelieve who say: Surely Allah is the third (person) of the three; and there is no god but the one God, and if they desist not from what they say, a painful chastisement shall befall those among them who disbelieve.”

Here the Quran states that those who say that Jesus the son of Mary is Allah or God are unbelievers to whom the reward of paradise will be forbidden. And those who say that Allah is the third person in the Trinity [which mainstream Christianity believes] are also unbelievers and will suffer painful chastisement, meaning in hellfire unless they desist from saying so. The Quran also says that Jesus Himself preached that the children of Israel should serve Allah, his Lord and their Lord. That part is true and applied when Jesus Christ was a human being on earth. He pointed to God the Father as being greater than Him. But as will be proved later, Jesus Christ also accepted worship by virtue of being God as John 1:1 declares.

**[9:30-31]** The Jews call 'Uzair [which scholars believe refers to Ezra the scribe] a son of Allah, and the Christians call Christ the son of Allah. That is a saying from their mouth; (in this) they but imitate what the unbelievers of old used to say. Allah's curse be on them: how they are deluded away from the Truth! They take their priests and their anchorites to be their lords in derogation of Allah, and (they take as their Lord) Christ the son of Mary; yet they were commanded to worship but One Allah: there is no god but He. Praise and glory to Him: (Far is Allah) from having the partners they associate (with Him).

Here the Quran attacks Jews who supposedly believed Ezra the scribe to be the son of God who did not die. The Bible does not even hint at any such thing about Ezra the scribe. He is called the son of Seraiah. Thus, Allah just makes up lies as he goes along ‘revealing’ new things to Mohammed. Then it attacks Roman Catholicism about its deifying monks such as Saint Anthony and Saint Patrick, whereas they were enjoined to serve only one God, because there is no other God than He. God’s Church agrees that because of its practice of deifying men as saints, it is a false religion.

.

Then in Sura 19 verses 30-33 the Koran supposedly quotes Jesus Christ concerning Himself:

**[19.30]** He said: Surely I am a servant of Allah; He has given me the Book and made me a prophet; 31 And He has made me blessed wherever I may be, and He has enjoined on me prayer and poor-rate so long as I live; 32 And dutiful to my mother, and He has not made me insolent, unblessed; 33 And peace on me on the day I was born, and on the day I die, and on the day I am raised to life.”

Here Jesus supposedly preached that He is a servant of Allah to whom Allah has revealed the New Testament and made Him a prophet. Then the Quran in verses 34-36 declares that it is not seemly that the one God should take a son to Himself.

**[19.34]** Such is Isa [or Jesus], son of Marium; (this is) the saying of truth about which they dispute. 35 It beseems not Allah that He should take to Himself a son, glory be to Him; when He has decreed a matter He only says to it "Be," and it is. 36 And surely Allah is my Lord and your Lord, therefore serve Him; this is the right path.”

Then the Koran makes further statements about placing other gods besides Allah in Sura 21 verses 19-29:

**[21.19]** And whoever is in the heavens and the earth is His; and those who are with Him are not proud to serve Him, nor do they grow weary. 20 They glorify (Him) by night and day; they are never languid. 21 Or have they taken gods from the earth who raise (the dead). 22 If there had been in them any gods except Allah, they would both have certainly been in a state of disorder; therefore, glory be to Allah, the Lord of the dominion, above what they attribute (to Him). 23 He cannot be questioned concerning what He does and they shall be questioned.”

Here the Quran cites evidence for its statement that there are no gods besides Allah. It says that if there were other gods besides Allah, there would have been chaos and disorder among them and their realms. But Allah cannot be questioned about what He does while others shall be questioned about what they do. The Quran continues in verses 24-29:

**[21.24]** Or have they taken gods besides Him? Say: Bring your proof; this is the reminder of those with me and the reminder of those before me. Nay! most of them do not know the truth, so they turn aside. 25 And We did not send before you any apostle but We revealed to him that there is no god but Me, therefore serve Me. 26 And they say: The Beneficent God has taken to Himself a son. Glory be to Him. Nay! they are honored servants. 27 They do not precede Him in speech and (only) according to His commandment do they act. 28 He knows what is before them and what is behind them, and they do not intercede except for him whom He approves and for fear of Him they tremble. 29 And whoever of them should say: Surely I am a god besides Him, such a one do We recompense with hell; thus do, We recompense the unjust.”

In these verses the Quran quotes Allah as saying that he sent apostles who all declared that there is no other God but Allah and derides those who say that God has taken to Himself a Son, meaning Jesus Christ as the Son of God. But they were mere honored servants of God who acted according to His commandments. It pronounces the sentence of hell on anyone who claims to be a god besides Allah.

The Quran thus makes the Islamic belief quite clear that there is only one God, and that God does not exist as the Trinity of the Father, Son and the Holy Spirit, and that Jesus is not the son of God but only a prophet and apostle who though was created miraculously.

The purpose of these passages is to attack the Jews and Christians to generate hatred between the Muslims and Jews and Christians. It makes the Muslims feel superior compared to the Jews and Christians in the belief that they have the truth from Allah whereas the Jews and Christians are deceived. That’s why over the centuries Muslims have hated and persecuted the Jews and Christians whenever possible.

But what does the Bible say about God the Father, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are?

***Who are God the Father, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit***

Understanding who God is, is of critical importance to worshipping Him, for how can we properly worship a Being if we don’t know who and what He is. Without understanding who God really is, it is difficult to give Him the deep and proper reverence, respect, honor and the worship He deserves, and requires from human beings because it makes them respect His laws and commandments and obey them with their whole heart for their own good. Those who don’t have a deep reverence for God do not obey God’s laws. And any disobedience to God’s laws without fail results in pain and suffering automatically. God requires that we worship Him because it leads to obedience to Him and His laws for our own good.

Here is what God’s Church understands about who God the Father, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are from its booklet titled *“Fundamental Beliefs of the United Church of God*”:

“We believe in one God, the Father, eternally existing, who is a Spirit, a personal Being of supreme intelligence, knowledge, love, justice, power and authority. He, through Jesus Christ, is the Creator of the heavens and the earth and all that is in them. He is the Source of life and the One for whom human life exists. We believe in one Lord, Jesus Christ of Nazareth, who is the Word and who has eternally existed. We believe that He is the Messiah, the Christ, the divine Son of the living God, conceived of the Holy Spirit, born in human flesh of the virgin Mary. We believe that it is by Him that God created all things, and that without Him was not anything made that was made. We believe in the Holy Spirit as the Spirit of God and of Christ. The Holy Spirit is the power of God and the Spirit of life eternal (2 Timothy 1:7; Ephesians 4:6; 1 Corinthians 8:6; John 1:1-4; Colossians 1:16).”

According to the beliefs of the Church of God, God is NOT a Trinity. The holy spirit is not one of the three Personage in a Triune God. What the holy spirit is will be explained in the chapter on the Trinity.

According to our beliefs, God the Father is the original source of all life, who is a spirit Being of supreme intelligence; and all knowledge, love; and all power and energy in the entire universe are His. He is without beginning and has always existed. All power and authority in the universe belong to Him.

This Supreme Being, now known as God the Father originally created one Being, originally known as the Word, or spokesman of the God Family. Some claim that Jesus Christ was not created, but has always existed from past eternity, as John 1:1 states: “1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.”

John 1:1 is discussing the beginning before creation of the angelic world and the material universe after that. Then Micah 5:2 is cited in support of the position that the Word always existed. It states:

Micah 5:2, “But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, though you be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of you shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel, whose going forth have been of old, from everlasting.”

The New International Version translates this verse this way: “But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, though you are small among the clans of Judah, out of you will come for me, one who will be ruler over Israel, His goings forth are from long ago from the days of eternity.”

This verse states that the Messianic King to come was ‘from everlasting.’

The Hebrew word translated ‘everlasting’ is *owlam* or *olam*, which is number 5769 in the Hebrew and Chaldee dictionary of *Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance*. It can mean concealed, i.e. the vanishing point; generally of time out of mind (past or present), i.e. (practically) eternity; frequently as an adverb always, ancient (time), any more, continuance, eternal, for everlasting, evermore, of old, lasting, long (time), perpetual, at any time, (beginning of the world) plus without end.

Therefore, the words ‘whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting’ can mean from so old that we human beings cannot imagine it, or from way before the world began, or from ancient time, or practically eternity. However, ‘practically eternity’ does not necessarily mean absolute eternity, i.e. without beginning. But let’s examine more scriptures to see if the Word has always existed along with the Father.

The fact that Jesus Christ is a created being is proved by Colossians 1:15: “15 Who [that is, Jesus Christ] is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:” The NKJV renders this verse this way: “15 He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation.”

If Jesus Christ before His human birth was the image of God the Father, it implies that God the Father must have existed before Him and the Word became His image.

Revelation 3:14 (NKJV) further proves that Jesus Christ was originally created by God the Father. It states: “14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things says the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God.” This verse states that Jesus Christ was the beginning of God’s creation, meaning that He was the first Being created by God the Father.

Jesus Christ said in John 14:28: “…my Father is greater than I.” Thus, there is no doubt that God the Father is the undisputed Head of the God Family. Jesus further stated in John 5:26 (NKJV): “26 For as the Father has life in Himself, so He has granted the Son to have life in Himself.” If it was God the Father who gave life inherent to Jesus Christ so that He became the Self-Existent one, it means that God the Father gave life to Jesus Christ in the first place, long before anything else was created.

Jesus also said in John 8:28 (NKJV): “28 Then Jesus said to them, "…I do nothing of Myself; but as My Father taught Me, I speak these things. This is a clear statement that God the Father taught the Word everything before the Word created anything else. All these verses mean that Jesus Christ has not always existed with God the Father but was created by Him.

This naturally raises an important question: “If God the Father is the Supreme God, then how can Jesus Christ be God? How can there be two Gods, one Supreme God and then another little God?”

***Is Jesus God?***

To answer this important question, we first need to prove from the pages of the Bible that Jesus is God. The fact is that Jesus was both God and man. When Islamic writers try to prove from the Bible that Jesus was a mere man, they are quoting verses in which Jesus Christ talked about Himself as a man on His time on earth. But they totally ignore all other verses in which Jesus and the apostles talked about His nature as God. They merely take a scripture here and there to prove a point while totally ignoring all other scriptures related to that topic.

Scriptures taken in isolation, out of their context can be used to prove many different things. But that is not truth as that belief would directly contradict many other plain scriptures. The correct way to research a topic in the Bible is to study all the scriptures on the topic and then form one’s belief that is compatible with all the scriptures.

When Jesus came to earth, He gave up all His power, but not His divine nature and came as a physical man. So, He was a mere man when He came to earth as Jesus Christ, but retained His divine nature. He retained His divine nature because God the Father gave Him the holy spirit without measure as stated by John in John 3:34 (NKJV): “For he whom God has sent speaks the words of God: for God gives not the Spirit by measure unto him.” God’s holy spirit is what imparts God’s divine nature to any being.

In Luke 18:19 Jesus said: “19 And Jesus said unto him, Why call you me good? None is good, save one, that is, God.”

Jesus in this statement told a ruler that no man is good. Only God is good. In this statement Jesus also implied that He was a man, which was a statement of fact that He was a man. He was making this statement as a man showing how us humans should think about God. In many scriptures He called Himself the “Son of Man.” Examples include Matthew 11:19: “The Son of man came eating and drinking…”; Matthew 12:8: “For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day”, and above 80 other times in the New Testament.

When we put these two facts together, that Jesus was a man, and that He told the ruler that man cannot be good and that only God is good, we may deduce that Jesus was a mere man and not God. That is precisely what Islam cites as evidence that Jesus was a mere man and not God. However, Jesus made these statements as a man to teach men how to think about God.

Jesus’ other statements and the writings of the apostles leave no doubt that Jesus was also God. Jesus boldest claim is recorded in John 8:58: “Most assuredly, I say to you, before Abraham was I Am.” Jesus here was revealing His identity as the actual One whom the Jews knew as God of the Old Testament. He was saying that He existed before Abraham and that He was the same Being as the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, Who told Moses in Exodus 3:13-14 that His name was “I AM WHO I AM.” That’s why the Jews tried to stone Him for blasphemy.

Dr. Norman Geisler, in his book *Christian Apologetics*, concludes: "In view of the fact that the Jehovah of the Jewish Old Testament would not give his name, honor, or glory to another, it is little wonder that the words and deeds of Jesus of Nazareth drew stones and cries of 'blasphemy' from first-century Jews. The very things that the Jehovah of the Old Testament claimed for himself Jesus of Nazareth also claimed" (2002, p. 331).

Dr. Geisler goes on to list some of the ways Jesus equated Himself with YHWH of the Old Testament. Let's notice some of these.

Jesus said of Himself, "I am the good shepherd" (John 10:11). David, in the first verse of the famous 23rd Psalm, declared that "The Lord [YHWH] is my shepherd." Jesus claimed to be judge of all men and nations (John 5:22, 27). Yet Joel 3:12 says the Lord [YHWH] "will sit to judge all ...nations."

Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" (John 8:12). Isaiah 60:19 says, "The Lord will be to you an everlasting light, and your God your glory." Also, David says in Psalm 27:1, "The Lord (YHWH) is my light."

Jesus asked in prayer that the Father would share His eternal glory with Him: "O Father, glorify Me together with Yourself, with the glory which I had with You before the world was" (John 17:5 - NKJV). Yet Isaiah 42:8 (NKJV) says, "I am the Lord, that is My name; and My glory I will not give to another."

Jesus spoke of Himself as the coming bridegroom (Matthew 25:1), which is how YHWH is characterized in Isaiah 62:5 and Hosea 2:16.

In Revelation 1:17 Jesus says He is the first and the last, which is identical to what YHWH says of Himself in Isaiah 44:6: "I am the First and I am the Last."

There is no question, therefore, that Jesus understood Himself to be the LORD (YHWH) of the Old Testament.

***Other Proofs of the Divinity of Jesus***

*Miracles Testimony to Jesus’ Divinity*

Jesus adds, "The works that I do in My Father's name, they bear witness of Me" (John 10:25 - NKJV). The works He did were miracles that only God could do. His miracles are the most powerful testimony that He was God. No other man or founder of any other religion has done the kind of miracles that Jesus performed. But the Islamic writers say that Jesus Christ did these miracles by the power of God and also quote Jesus in John 5:30 where He states: “I can of mine own self do nothing…” So He could not be God.

But they ignore the fact that Jesus Himself cited miracles as evidence that He was the Messiah or Savior of the world that was prophesied to come. They also ignore verse 28 of John 10: 28 And I give unto them [that is His disciples] eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.” Only God can give eternal life, proving that Jesus Christ was divine.

Then Jesus made another statement that incensed the Jews: "I and My Father are one" (John 10:30). That is, the Father and Jesus were both divine. Again, there was no mistaking the intent of what He said, because "then the Jews took up stones again to stone Him" (verse 31).

Jesus countered, "Many good works I have shown you from My Father. For which of those works do you stone Me?" The Jews responded, "For a good work we do not stone You, but for blasphemy, and because You, being a Man, make Yourself God" (verses 32-33).

The Jews understood perfectly well what Jesus meant. He was telling them plainly that He was divine or a God being.

The Gospel of John records yet another instance in which Jesus infuriated the Jews with His claims of divinity. It happened just after Jesus had healed a crippled man at the pool of Bethesda on the Sabbath. The Jews sought to kill Him because He did this on the Sabbath, a day on which the law of God had stated no work was to be done (which they misinterpreted to include what Jesus was doing).

Jesus then made a statement that the Jews could take in only one way: "My Father has been working until now, and I have been working." And what was their response to His words? "Therefore, the Jews sought all the more to kill Him, because He not only broke the Sabbath [according to their interpretation of it], but also said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God" (John 5:16-18). Yes, Jesus claimed Himself to be a divine Being, meaning God, and Son of God.

*Jesus claimed authority to forgive sins*

Jesus claimed to be divine or God of the Old Testament in various other ways.

When Jesus healed one paralyzed man, He also said to him, "Son, your sins are forgiven you" (Mark 2:5 - NKJV). The scribes who heard this reasoned He was blaspheming, because, as they rightly understood and asked, "Who can forgive sins but God alone?" (verses 6-7).

Responding to the scribes, Jesus said: "Why do you raise such questions in your hearts?...But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"—He said to the paralytic—"I say to you, stand up, take your mat and go to your home" (verses 8-11, NRSV).

The scribes knew Jesus was claiming an authority to forgive sins that belonged to God only. Again, the Lord (YHWH) is the One pictured in the Old Testament who forgives sin (Jeremiah 31:34).

*Christ claimed power to raise the dead*

Jesus claimed yet another power that God alone possessed—to raise and judge the dead. Notice His statements in John 5:25-29 (NKJV):

"Most assuredly, I say to you, the hour is coming, and now is, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God; and those who hear will live...All who are in the graves will hear His voice and come forth—those who have done good, to the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of condemnation."

There was no doubt about what He meant. He added in verse 21,"For as the Father raises the dead and gives life to them, even so the Son gives life to whom He will." When Jesus resurrected Lazarus from the dead, He said to Lazarus' sister, Martha, "I am the resurrection and the life" (John 11:25).

Compare this to 1 Samuel 2:6 (NKJV), which tells us that "the Lord [YHWH] kills and makes alive; He brings down to the grave and brings up." So, Jesus made it quite clear that just like God the Father He can resurrect human beings to eternal life. Thus, He made many statements claiming that He was God. Incidentally, Allah the masquerader also claims this power, though he never worked any such miracle through Muhammed. He could never back up his claim so that we may believe him that he would resurrect human beings in the future. Jesus Christ, on the other hand, backed up His claim with the miracles of raising the dead back to life.

*Opinion of the Apostles*

Now look at the opinion of the disciples about Jesus’ Nature! They understood Jesus to be the Creator, Hence God!!!

Hebrews 1:1-3 states (NIV): “1 In the past God spoke to our forefathers through the prophets at many times and in various ways, 2 but in these last days he has spoken to us by his Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, and through whom he made the universe. 3 The Son is the radiance of God's glory and the exact representation of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful word.”

The book of Hebrews tells us that the Son or Jesus Christ is the Being through whom God created the worlds and who "sustains all things by his powerful word" (verse 3, NRSV). Only God could be the Creator of the universe and all things in it and also possess the power to continue to sustain it.

John confirms in John 1:1-3, 14 (NKJV) that Jesus was the divine Word through whom God created the universe. He writes: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made through Him, and without Him nothing was made that was made…And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth."

Paul states plainly in Ephesians 3:9 (NKJV) that "God ...created all things through Jesus Christ." He writes of Jesus in Colossians 1:16 (NKJV): "For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him."

The Old Testament presents God alone as Creator of the universe (Genesis 1:1; Isaiah 40:25-26, 28). When Christ’s disciples said that Jesus is the One through whom all things were created, they were clearly saying that Jesus is God, and also the God of the Old Testament.

Jesus claimed to be all that God is, and the disciples believed and taught it. They understood that Jesus was "the express [exact] image of His [God's] person" (Hebrews 1:3) and "the image of the invisible God" (Colossians 1:15), and that "in Him the whole fullness of deity dwells bodily" (Colossians 2:9, NRSV).

They understood precisely who He was and still is from His own words and actions. There was no question in their minds. They had seen Him prove it time and time again. They would go to their martyrdom firm in this conviction.

Those who personally knew and were taught by Jesus, and who then wrote most of the New Testament, are thoroughly consistent with Jesus' statements about Himself. His disciples were monotheistic Jews. For them to agree that Jesus was God, and then to give their lives for this belief, tells us that they had come to see for themselves that the claims Jesus made about Himself were so convincing as to leave no doubt in their minds.

Matthew the apostle opens his gospel with the story of the virgin birth of Jesus quoting from Isaiah 7:14, "'Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel,' which is translated, 'God with us'" (Matthew 1:23). Matthew is making it clear that he understands that this child is God—"God with us."

John is likewise explicit in the prologue to his Gospel. "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God...And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us" (John 1:1, 14).

Some of them called Him God directly. When Thomas saw Jesus’ wounds, he exclaimed, "My Lord and my God!" (John 20:28). Paul refers to Jesus in Titus 1:3 and 2:10 as "God our Savior."

The book of Hebrews is most emphatic that Jesus is God. Hebrews 1:8, applying Psalm 45:6 to Jesus Christ, states: "But to the Son He says: 'Your throne, O God, is forever and ever.'" Other parts of this book explain that Jesus is higher than the angels (1:4-8, 13), superior to Moses (3:1-6), and greater than the high priests (4:14-5:10). He is greater than all these because He is God.

*Jesus accepted honor and worship*

Jesus demonstrated His divinity when He said in John 5:23 (NKJV): "All should honor the Son just as they honor the Father." Over and over, Jesus told His disciples to believe in Him as they would believe in God. He said in John 14:1: "Let not your heart be troubled; you believe in God, believe also in Me."

In fact, Jesus allowed people to worship Him on many occasions without forbidding such acts, further proving that He was God, hence worthy of worship. A leper worshipped Him (Matthew 8:2). A ruler worshipped Him with his plea to raise his daughter from the dead (Matthew 9:18). When Jesus had stilled the storm, those in the boat worshipped Him as the Son of God. Matthew 14:33 (NKJV) states: “Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped Him saying, of a truth you are the Son of God.”

A Canaanite woman worshipped Him (Matthew 15:25). When Jesus met the women who came to His tomb after His resurrection, they worshipped Him, as did His apostles (Matthew 28:9, 17). The demon-possessed man of the Gadarenes, "when He saw Jesus from afar...ran and worshiped Him" (Mark 5:6). The blind man whom Jesus healed in John 9 worshipped Him (verse 38).

The First and the Second of the Ten Commandments forbid worship of anyone or anything other than God (Exodus 20:2-5). Barnabas and Paul were very disturbed when the people of Lystra tried to worship them after their healing of a crippled man (Acts 14:13-15). In Revelation 22:8-9, when John the apostle fell down to worship the angel, the angel refused to accept worship, saying, "You must not do that!...Worship God!" (Revelation 22:8-9, NRSV). Yet Jesus accepted worship and did not rebuke those who chose to kneel before Him and worship. This proves that He was also God in addition to being man.

Muslims should do their own research to prove that Jesus Christ is God rather than believing their scholars who quote a few scriptures to prove that He is not God, while ignoring numerous others that prove that He is and was the God of the Old Testament.

Jesus really left us no middle ground!!!

The renowned Christian writer C.S. Lewis observes: "You must make your choice. Either this man was, and is, the Son of God: or else a madman or something worse. You can shut Him up for a fool, you can spit at Him and kill Him as a demon; or you can fall at His feet and call Him Lord and God. But let us not come with any patronizing nonsense about His being a great human teacher. He has not left that open to us. He did not intend to." (*Mere Christianity*, 1996, p. 56).

***How can a Little God like Jesus also be God?***

Now let’s answer the question: “How can a little God like Jesus also be God?”

The monotheistic faiths, Judaism, mainstream Christianity [which believes in the Trinity, according to which the one God exists as three God Beings, God the Father, Jesus Christ the Son and the Holy Spirit, which to them is a mystery they don’t fully understand], Islam and Sikhism believe that there can be only one God, who is supreme.

We should understand that the creator will always be greater than what he can create. Jesus Himself said that His Father was greater than Him. But here is how you can get over the notion that Jesus is a little God by knowing how truly awesome a God Jesus Christ is.

You can do that by imagining that originally there was only one God, and that God was Jesus Christ. In fact, for about 4,000 years of man’s history that is what the world thought, except for a few prophets of God. Moses wrote in Genesis 1:26: "Then God said, 'Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness…"

Throughout the first chapter of Genesis the Hebrew word translated "God" is Elohim, a uni-plural noun like the word family, which is one unit but has many members. Moses knew that there was more than one God Being?

King David was a prophet of Israel and was inspired by God’s holy spirit as stated in 2 Samuel 23:2. He wrote in Psalm 110:1: "The Lord said unto my Lord, 'Sit at my right hand, till I make Your enemies Your footstool.'" David here is talking about two Beings being his Lords, showing the existence of two God Beings. He confirms the same in Psalm 2:7-12: "I will declare the decree; The Lord has said to Me, 'You are My Son, today I have begotten You. Ask of Me, and I will give you the nations for your inheritance, and the ends of the earth for your possession...Now therefore, be wise, O kings; be instructed, you judges of the earth. Serve the Lord with fear, and rejoice with trembling. Kiss the Son, lest He be angry, and you perish in the way, when His wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are they who put their trust in Him."

One can put one’s trust only in God and be blessed. Therefore, the Son spoken of here is God.

Daniel the prophet also talked about two God Beings. He wrote in 7:13-14 (NKJV): "I was watching in the night visions, and behold, One like the Son of Man, coming with the clouds of heaven! He [the Son of Man] came to the Ancient of Days [God the Father], and they [the angelic host] brought Him near before Him."

Time and time again in the New Testament, Jesus called Himself "the Son of Man.” Continuing:

“Then to Him was given dominion [rulership] and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and His kingdom the one which shall not be destroyed."

Only God can have an everlasting dominion and a kingdom that can never be destroyed.

Thus, though a few prophets knew of the existence of two God Beings about 2000 years after the creation of man, the Israelite population knew of the existence of only one God Being, their God of the Old Testament. And that God later came to earth as the God and Man Jesus Christ.

Did the Israelites have the notion that their God was anything less than an awesome God? They and the world around them which had experienced the incredible miracles God did for ancient Israel in Egypt believed Him to be an all-powerful God worthy of all worship. They did not know that another God Being existed. In fact, Jesus Christ Himself said that He came to reveal the existence of the other God Being, God the Father in Luke 10:22 (NKJV): “…no man knows who the Son is, but the Father, and who the Father is, but the Son, and he to whom the Son wills to reveal Him.”

The God of the Old Testament was worthy of all awe and honor and worship. The Israelites knew that their God has existed for a time period which we can describe only as past eternity. So He possesses all the wisdom of the ages of man and spirit beings.

We know that all the spirit beings and the material universe were created by the God of the Old Testament, whom we today know as Jesus Christ. Before beginning creation, He planned out the creation of spirit beings as well as the material universe.

Then Jesus Christ with His own power and energy created the material universe, which may be a few billion years old. Along with the Father He developed the laws of mathematics, physics, chemistry and biology to set in motion to govern the material universe. Laws of physics tell us that energy can be converted into matter and vice versa. All the matter in the universe has been created from energy. Jesus Christ as God possesses that kind of awesome energy. He possesses such an amount of energy that He converted a tiny fraction of it into mass contained in all the planets, stars and billions of galaxies. I hope you get a glimpse of how awesome a God Jesus Christ really is.

Since He created humanity, He will always be greater than all humans put together, even when tens of billions of them qualify to receive eternal life and power greater than any angel. Jesus Christ possesses all this power, abilities and wisdom to have created all these things.

And don’t forget. All the spirit and material creation is governed by laws which are sustained by Jesus Christ according to Hebrews 1:3 quoted earlier. And that too requires power. Jesus Christ possesses that kind of power to sustain the entire spirit and material creation.

What else distinguishes God from His creation? God has never sinned in thought or action. He has never violated His laws. Only two Beings in the entire universe can make that claim and probably no one else, possibly not even the 24 elders (Revelation 4:4), will ever be able to make that claim. And those two Beings are God the Father and Jesus Christ.

Ultimately God the Father and Jesus Christ are going to make human beings who receive eternal life incapable of sinning because of the character they will have developed, the power and abilities they will be endowed with, but they will never be able to claim that they have never sinned, for every human being as a human being would have sinned. Perhaps all angels have sinned. But God the Father and His Son Jesus Christ have never sinned. That is how awesome a God Jesus Christ is.

Here is how you can further understand how truly awesome the God Jesus Christ is. The general view is that all spirit beings, that is the twenty-four elders of Revelation 4, and the angels have immortal life, that is, life-inherent in them. They never die. They are immortal. If that is so, then why did Jesus make the statement in John 5:26: "For as the Father has life in himself, so has he given to the Son to have life in himself."

Doesn’t this statement imply that though spirit beings like the angels have life that is not dependent on any kind of spirit food for sustenance and can potentially live forever, it can nevertheless be taken away from them by God and Jesus Christ? Or in other words, the spirit beings besides God the Father and Jesus Christ do not have life-inherent in themselves. They do not have life that can never be taken away from them. God the Father obviously is that kind of life. But God the Father has also given that kind of life-inherent to Jesus Christ. He is self-existent. There is not an iota of mistrust or even its possibility between them. Because of perfect harmony and oneness between them, God the Father has chosen to give that kind of life to Jesus Christ.

This also means that only God the Father and Jesus Christ can set creation in motion, either by creating matter, or supplying the spirit [or energy] that can be used to create matter. The 24 elders and the angels are never mentioned creating in that way. But there is the strong possibility that the twenty-four elders and human beings made immortal, and perhaps God’s holy angels may one day in future eternity qualify to receive life inherent in themselves as Jesus Christ did.

There is one more characteristic that distinguishes Jesus Christ from His spirit or physical creation. He is truly one with God the Father in thoughts, actions and attitude. There is not an iota of mistrust between them. Jesus Christ as the Created One is in total submission to His Father. The Father can trust Jesus Christ completely so that He has granted only Jesus Christ in the universe to have life inherent in Himself. Jesus Christ prays to the Father that we all may become one with Him and the Father as He is one with the Father. This is mentioned in John 10:30 and 17:11. We are far from being there yet. That is how awesome a God is Jesus Christ. He is at one with the Father.

We hope Muslims can understand how truly awesome Jesus Christ is in power, might and wisdom. He is not a little God, but a truly awesome God whose powers we cannot even imagine. But we will have an eternity to understand His mind and His powers as we learn to work with His material creation. As the Creator, He is and always will be greater than all His creation put together. That is why His life was worth more than all the creation put together, and why His death paid the penalty for the sins of all His creation. Thus, we see that Jesus Christ has all the attributes that we can imagine a God should have, except that only God the Father is greater than Him.

**CHAPTER 11**

**Answering Muslim Arguments Against Divinity of Jesus**

In the last chapter we provided the opinion of Jesus Christ’s about His divinity and the apostles certainly thought He was God. But certain Muslim scholars take pre-selected Bible verses and try to refute the divinity of Jesus Christ. We will try to address their arguments and show that they are choosing a few scriptures to prove their point while ignoring many others that prove exactly the opposite.

From the website www.Islam-Guide.com here are some of Islam’s beliefs about God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit. The web site contains an article titled “*The Bible Denies the Divinity of Jesus Christ*.” The website states: This article has been taken from the web site of Br. Shabir Ally, *Islam Answers Back*, with some editing. It contains the following seven arguments which prove that the Bible denies the divinity of Jesus:

1) None of the Bible’s Writers Believed That Jesus is God

2) Evidence from the Acts of the Apostles

3) Jesus is Not All-Powerful, and Not All-Knowing

4) The Greatest Commandment in the Bible and the Quran

5) Paul Believed That Jesus is not God

6) Evidence from the Gospel of John

7) God and Jesus Are Two Separate Beings

Let’s address each of these arguments and show that this article takes quotations from Jesus and the apostles in isolation while ignoring all the other scriptures on the subject.

***1) None of the Bible’s Writers Believed that Jesus is God***

Here is what the Islam-Guide.com website says: “Christians and Muslims both believe in Jesus, love him, and honor him. They are, however, divided over the question of his divinity.”

The website continues: “Fortunately, this difference can be resolved if we refer the question to both the Bible and the Quran, because, both the Bible and the Quran teach that Jesus is not God.

“…many people misunderstand the Bible; they feel that the belief in Jesus as God is so widespread that it must have come from the Bible. This article shows quite conclusively that the Bible does not teach that. The Bible clearly teaches that Jesus is not God. In the Bible God is always someone else other than Jesus…the disciples never came to the conclusion that Jesus is God. And those are people who lived and walked with Jesus and thus knew firsthand what he said and did…If Jesus is God, surely they should know it. But they did not. They kept worshipping the one true God who was worshipped by Abraham, Moses, and Jesus (see Acts 3:13).”

Acts 3:13 states: “13 The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the God of our fathers, glorified His Servant [KJV translates it as Son] Jesus, whom you delivered up and denied in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let Him go.”

“All of the writers of the Bible believed that God was not Jesus. The idea that Jesus is God did not become part of Christian belief until after the Bible was written, and took many centuries to become part of the faith of Christians.

“Matthew, Mark, and Luke, authors of the first three Gospels, believed that Jesus was not God. Mark 10:18 and Matthew 19:17 say: “18 So Jesus said to him, "Why do you call Me good? No one is good but One, that is, God.” The article continues: They [that is the gospel writers] believed that he was the son of God in the sense of a righteous person…

“Paul, believed to be the author of some thirteen or fourteen letters in the Bible, also believed that Jesus is not God. For Paul, God first created Jesus, then used Jesus as the agent by which to create the rest of creation…

The Muslim writer quotes Colossians 1:15, which reads: “15 Who [that is Jesus Christ] is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature: 16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him: 17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist…”

The Muslim writer is right here. What this verse is saying is that Jesus Christ is the image of God and the firstborn of every creature. Someone who became the image of another being obviously means that the other being existed before him.

The writer continues: “Similar ideas are found in the letter to the Hebrews, and also in the Gospel and Letters of John composed some seventy years after Jesus. In all of these writings, however, Jesus is still a creature of God and is therefore forever subservient to God.” He refers to 1 Corinthians 15:28 which states: “28 Now when all things are made subject to Him [that is Jesus Christ], then the Son Himself will also be subject to Him [That is the Father] who put all things under Him, that God may be all in all.”

The writer continues: “Now, because Paul, John, and the author of Hebrews believed that Jesus was God’s first creature, some of what they wrote clearly shows that Jesus was a pre-existent powerful being. This is often misunderstood to mean that he must have been God. But to say that Jesus was God is to go against what these very authors wrote. Although these authors had this later belief that Jesus is greater than all creatures, they also believed that he was still lesser than God. In fact, John quotes Jesus as saying: “...the Father is greater than I.” (John 14:28). And Paul declares that the head of every woman is her husband, the head of every man is Christ, and the head of Christ is God (see 1 Corinthians 11:3).

“Therefore, to find something in these writings and claim that these teach that Jesus is God is to misuse and misquote what those authors are saying. What they wrote must be understood in the context of their belief that Jesus is a creature of God as they have already clearly said.

“So we see then, that some of the later writers had a higher view of Jesus, but none of the writers of the Bible believed that Jesus is God. The Bible clearly teaches that there is only one true God, the one whom Jesus worshipped (see John 17: 3).”

This writer agrees with the author that Jesus Christ was originally a created Being, the first one created by God the Father. He also agrees that all things were then created by God the Father through Jesus Christ, meaning that Jesus Christ did the further creating. We both agree that God the Father and Jesus Christ are two separate Beings and not part of one Godhead or one God Being existing as the Father, Son and the Holy Spirit or as a Trinity. We both agree that God the Father is greater than Jesus Christ as the Creator is always greater than his creation.

Where we disagree is our belief that Jesus is God also, meaning He is divine. As quoted earlier the Muslim writer wrote, “Matthew, Mark, and Luke, authors of the first three Gospels, believed that Jesus was not God.”

Why did the Muslim writer leave out John’s gospel here, which is part of the Bible? Because it clearly states that Jesus was God. Muslims should read it for themselves. John confirms in John 1:1-3, 14 that Jesus was the divine Word through whom God created the universe. He writes: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. [Did you catch that? John says ‘the Word was God.’ He continues to describe the Word further…]. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made through Him, and without Him nothing was made that was made…And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth."

This is what we are talking about when we say Muslim writers pick a scripture here and there to seemingly provide evidence for their belief, but blindly ignore all the other scriptures that are also in the Bible which directly contradict their belief. This is not an honest search for the truth.

One of the 7 proofs the Muslim author cites to deny the divinity of Jesus Christ is even titled “Evidence from John’s Gospel” that Jesus Christ is not God. But in all the scriptures cited from John’s gospel, the writer completely excludes the very first verse that says “the Word was God.” Please don’t allow dishonest Muslim or other authors to deceive you about the divinity of Jesus Christ.

***2) Evidence from the Acts of the Apostles***

To prove that Jesus was not God, the Muslim writer titles the second proof as “Evidence from the Acts of the Apostles.” He writes:

“The Acts of the Apostles [meaning the Book of Acts] in the Bible details the activity of the disciples over a period of thirty years after Jesus was lifted up to heaven. Throughout this period they never refer to Jesus as God. They continually and consistently use the title God to refer to someone else other than Jesus.”

The actual deeds and the beliefs of the twelve original apostles are also described in the four gospels of Matthew, Mark, Luke and John as well. In John 1:1 we have already shown that John wrote that Jesus was God.

Here is an incident about the twelve disciples described in John 20:24-28: “24 But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. 25 The other disciples therefore said unto him, We have seen the Lord. But he said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe. 26 And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: then came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, Peace be unto you. 27 Then says he to Thomas, Reach here your finger, and behold my hands; and reach here your hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing. 28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.”

Did you catch that? Thomas, one of the original 12 disciples, in the presence of the other disciples called the resurrected Jesus Christ as his Lord, meaning Master, and his God. Thomas called Jesus God and Jesus did not rebuke him for it. Jesus did not need to correct him because He is also God. The Muslim writer ignores these very relevant scriptures that John and Thomas the apostles called Jesus God.

The writer further states: “In fact, the way Peter refers to God and to Jesus makes it clear that Jesus is not God. For he always turns the title God away from Jesus. Take the following references for example:

“God has raised this Jesus...” (Acts 2:32)

“God has made this Jesus, whom you crucified, both Lord and Christ.” (Acts 2:36)

“In both passages, the title God is turned away from Jesus. So why did he do this, if Jesus was God?”

We don’t dispute the fact that the Bible refers to God the Father and Jesus Christ as two separate Beings. But the Bible refers to both Beings as God Beings. John 1:1 clearly states: “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.”

John then continues in verses 2-3, 14: “The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made through Him, and without Him nothing was made that was made…And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth."

Why do Muslims find it so difficult to reconcile these passages in their minds? The reason simply is that the Quran says not to equate any other creature with Allah, and because Muslims blindly ignore the very first verse of John 1 that says “the Word was God.”

They find it difficult to reconcile in their mind the existence of two God Beings in the very beginning, before the creation of the Spirit and the physical worlds, one being a greater God and the other a lesser God. But we have already explained that the Word was not a small God. He was an awesome God, in every sense of the word we imagine God to be.

Some Muslim writers claim that John wrote his gospel last and added things such as Jesus being God that the other gospel writers had not believed. It is true that John wrote his gospel last. His intention in writing his gospel last was to cover items that the other gospel writers had not covered. He was also the final one who canonized the New Testament and implied that nothing further should be added to the gospel accounts that he canonized and nothing more should be added as prophecy.

He stated in John 21:24-25 (NKJV): “24 This is the disciple who testifies to these things and who wrote them down. We know that his testimony is true. 25 Jesus did many other things as well. If every one of them were written down, I suppose that even the whole world would not have room for the books that would be written.”

John here emphasized that his testimony is true, and said that endless books could be written about the acts of Jesus Christ, but implying that there was no need to add further gospel accounts than the 4 canonized by him.

Then he stated in the book of Revelation 22:18-19 (NKJV): “18 For I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to these things, God will add to him the plagues that are written in this book; 19 and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part from the Book of Life, from the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.”

Muslims can claim that John added things about Jesus Christ that the other gospel writers did not believe, but the fulfillment of prophecies in the Book of Revelation is proof of the divine inspiration of what John the apostle wrote. Fulfillment of prophecy is proof that the words of those books are backed by the power of Almighty God. God thus backs up the truthfulness of what John the Apostle wrote.

The Book of Revelation is the last book John wrote. He had already written his gospel account earlier. God would not have used John the apostle if he was not writing what was the absolute truth in his gospel account. God provided His seal of approval for what John wrote by revealing prophecies in the Book of Revelation through him, and then backing up those words for the past more than 1900 years with His Almighty power by fulfilling the prophecies.

***3) Jesus is Not All-Powerful, and Not All-Knowing***

The Muslim writer Shabir Ally titles his 3rd proof that Jesus Christ was not God as “Jesus is Not All-Powerful, and Not All-Knowing”. He writes:

“Christians and Muslims agree that God is all-powerful and all-knowing. The Gospels show that Jesus was not all-powerful, and not all-knowing, since he had some limitations.

“Mark tells us in his gospel that Jesus was unable to do any powerful work in his hometown except few things: “He could not do any miracles there, except lay his hands on a few sick people and heal them.” (Mark 6:5 - NKJV). Mark also tells us that when Jesus tried to heal a certain blind man, the man was not healed after the first attempt, and Jesus had to try a second time (see Mark 8:22-26).

“Therefore, although we hold a great love and respect for Jesus, we need to understand that he is not the all-powerful God.

“Mark’s Gospel also reveals that Jesus had limitations in his knowledge. In Mark 13:32, Jesus declared that he himself does not know when the last day will occur, but the Father alone knows that (see also Matthew 24:36).”

The Muslim writer is missing the mark here. When Jesus came to earth, He had emptied Himself of His divinity and all power and came as a mere flesh and blood human being. Paul the apostle states this in Philippians 2:5-7 (NRSV): “5 Let the same mind be in you that was in Christ Jesus, 6 who, though he was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God as something to be exploited, 7 but emptied himself, taking the form of a slave, being born in human likeness. And being found in human form, 8 he humbled himself and became obedient to the point of death— even death on a cross.”

This is what Jesus Christ was on earth as a human being. He had human limitations. When Muslim writers deny the divinity of Jesus Christ, they cite verses that describe the actions of Jesus Christ as a human being. But Paul states that before becoming a human being Jesus was in the form of God, meaning He was God, but emptied Himself of His divinity [only a God could have divinity] and took the form of a servant or slave and humbled Himself to die for the sins of mankind.

But then Paul describes what Jesus Christ became after His resurrection in verses 9-11 of Philippians 2: “9 Wherefore God also has highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: 10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; 11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.”

Paul is saying here that after His resurrection, Jesus Christ has again become the God Being He was before He became a human being and that every creature should bow before Him in worship as their Creator and only God is worthy of worship. This proves that after His resurrection Jesus became God again.

The Muslim writer also takes verses out of context to claim that Jesus was not all-powerful as He could heal only a few and had to try a second time to heal. Mark 6:4-6 states, “4 But Jesus, said unto them, A prophet is not without honor, but in his own country, and among his own kin, and in his own house. 5 And he could there do no mighty work, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed them. 6 And he marveled because of their unbelief.”

Jesus healed only a few sick people because they did not believe He was a prophet because He was one of their own. They did not honor Him. Why would God want to heal everyone when they don’t believe in Him?

The Muslim writer also cites Mark 8:22-26 as an example when Jesus had to try a second time to heal a person. It reads, “22 And he comes to Bethsaida; and they bring a blind man unto him, and besought him to touch him. 23 And he took the blind man by the hand, and led him out of the town; and when he had spit on his eyes, and put his hands upon him, he asked him if he saw ought. 24 And he looked up, and said, I see men as trees, walking. 25After that he put his hands again upon his eyes, and made him look up: and he was restored, and saw every man clearly. 26 And he sent him away to his house, saying, Neither go into the town, nor tell it to any in the town.”

Shabir Ally comments: “The Gospels show that Jesus was not all-powerful, and not all-knowing, since he had some limitations… when Jesus tried to heal a certain blind man, the man was not healed after the first attempt, and Jesus had to try a second time.”

The fact in this case is that Shabir Ally fails to recognize that the blind man was healed. This is a unique case among perhaps tens of thousands of healings that Jesus performed where Jesus had to do something a second time before the man was healed. No second attempts were needed in all the other healings.

It’s God’s prerogative to decide how He heals. Humans cannot order Him on how they want to be healed. Often God does things in particular ways with always a good reason to teach us lessons. That is the spirit in which we should read this incident. Often, we don’t know all the facts of the case to understand why Jesus did things in a particular way. But from the context, here are the reasons why Jesus could have done the healing the way He did.

First of all, Jesus did not heal the man right where the request was made of Him. He led the man out of the city of Bethsaida because the city is condemned by Jesus elsewhere for its unbelief. In comparison, Jesus called Tyre, Sidon, Sodom and Gomorrah better than Bethsaida.

Matthew 11:20-24 states, “20 Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not: 21Woe unto you, Chorazin! woe unto you, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works, which were done in you, had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. 22But I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment, than for you. 23And thou, Capernaum, which are exalted unto heaven, shalt be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works, which have been done in you, had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day. 24But I say unto you, That it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment, than for you.”

In taking the man out of the city to heal him, Jesus was upbraiding the city of Bethsaida for its unbelief, despite having done many miracles in the city before this.

Then in healings, faith is also required in the man who is being healed. Matthew 9:28-31 shows this: “28 And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Jesus says unto them, Do you believe that I am able to do this? They said unto him, Yes, Lord. 29 Then touched he their eyes, saying, According to your faith be it unto you. 30 And their eyes were opened; and Jesus straightly charged them, saying, See that no man know it. 31 But they, when they were departed, spread abroad his fame in all that country.” Here after the fantastic miracle was performed, the two blind men disobeyed Jesus’ plain instructions, displaying a degree of ingratitude.

It is quite likely the man to be healed in Mark 8:22-26 lacked faith. He was likely from the city of Bethsaida. His friends probably dragged him to Jesus. He did not come of his own accord to be healed. Perhaps his hope and faith increased when Jesus first touched him he saw improvement. Then Jesus completed the healing.

Then we have to look at the context in which the healing took place. Mark 8:15-21 state, “14 Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread, neither had they in the ship with them more than one loaf. 15 And he charged them, saying, Take heed, beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, and of the leaven of Herod. 16 And they reasoned among themselves, saying, It is because we have no bread. 17 And when Jesus knew it, he says unto them, Why do you reason, because you have no bread? Do you not yet perceive, neither understand? have you your heart yet hardened? 18 Having eyes, do you not see? and having ears, do you not hear? and do you not remember? 19 When I broke the five loaves among five thousand, how many baskets full of fragments did you take up? They say unto him, Twelve. 20 And when the seven among four thousand, how many baskets full of fragments took you up? And they said, Seven. 21 And he said unto them, How is it that you do not understand?”

Jesus performed the miracle of healing the man after this discussion. Perhaps, the healing performed after the second tough functioned as a metaphor for the disciples’ lack of understanding, and their having eyes and failing to clearly see the identity and mission of Jesus Christ. They still did not clearly understand the mysteries of the kingdom and would need a second touch, which would come when they received the holy spirit.

Perhaps Jesus had other very good reasons why He performed the miracle of healing the way He did, which we will not fully know till we ask Him in His kingdom.

***4) The Greatest Commandment in the Bible and the Quran:***

Shabir Ally titles his 4th proof that Jesus was not God as “The Greatest Commandment in the Bible and the Quran.” He then quotes Mark 12:28-32 when a teacher of the Law of Moses asked Jesus: “‘Of all the commandments, which is the most important?’ ‘The most important one’ answered Jesus, ‘is this: Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one. Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength.’” (Mark 12:28-30).

“Notice that Jesus was quoting the first commandment from the book of Deuteronomy 6:4-5. Jesus confirmed not only that this commandment is still valid, but also that it is the most important of all the commandments. If Jesus thought that he himself is God, why did not he say so? Instead, he stressed that God is one. The man who questioned Jesus understood this, and what the man says next makes it clear that God is not Jesus, for he said to Jesus: “‘Well said, teacher,’ the man replied. ‘You are right in saying that God is one and there is no other but him.’” (Mark 12:32).

“Now if Jesus was God, he would have told the man so. Instead, he let the man refer to God as someone other than Jesus.”

Again, the Muslim writer is using one set of scriptures to show that Jesus referred to another Being as God and did not refer to Himself as God. And He also said that God is one. But this ignores the apostles John and Thomas referring to Jesus as God. The question of how God is one will be addressed later.

***5) Paul Believed That Jesus is not God***

The fifth proof offered for denying the divinity of Jesus Christ is titled “Paul believed that Jesus is not God.” Shabir Ally then states: “In his first letter to Timothy, Paul wrote: “I charge you, in the sight of God and Christ Jesus and the elect angels, to keep these instructions...” (1 Timothy 5:21).

“It is clear from this that the title God applies not to Christ Jesus, but to someone else. What is more important, however, is to notice what Paul said about God in the following passage, which clearly shows that Jesus is not God: “God, the blessed and only Ruler, the King of kings and Lord of lords, who alone is immortal and who lives in unapproachable light, whom no one has seen or can see. To him be honor and might forever.” (1 Timothy 6:15-16).

“Paul said that God alone is immortal. Immortal means he does not die. Now, anyone who believes that Jesus died cannot believe that Jesus is God. Such a belief would contradict what Paul said here. Furthermore, to say that God died is a blasphemy against God. Who would run the world if God died? Paul believed that God does not die.

“Paul also said in that passage that God dwells in unapproachable light — that no one has seen God or can see him. Paul knew that many thousands of people had seen Jesus. Yet Paul said that no one has seen God, because Paul was sure that Jesus is not God. This is why Paul went on teaching that Jesus was not God, but that he was the Christ (see Acts 9:22 and 18:5).”

In making these statements Shabir Ally has completely missed an understanding of the very basis of Christianity. First of all, there is no quarrel that Jesus Christ and God are two separate Beings. One is known as God the Father and usually referred to as God in the New Testament and Jesus Christ is referred to as Jesus Christ or Lord, but again the apostles John and Thomas called Jesus God. The Muslim writer also ignored what Paul wrote in Philippians 2:6 quoted earlier that states that Jesus Christ was in the form of God before He became a human being. Thus, Paul believed that Jesus Christ was God before He became a human Being.

In fact, Paul went further and identified the God of the Old Testament as Jesus Christ. He wrote in 1 Corinthians 10:1-4 (NIV): “1 For I do not want you to be ignorant of the fact, brothers, that our forefathers were all under the cloud and that they all passed through the sea. 2 They were all baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea. 3 They all ate the same spiritual food 4 and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ.”

The spiritual Rock or God that accompanied the ancient children of Israel was none other than Jesus Christ. Paul was not in any doubt that Jesus Christ was the God of the Old Testament.

David referred to the God of the Old Testament as Rock in psalms 8, 28, 31, 42, 62, 71, 89, 92, 94

.

It is true that no one, meaning no human, has seen God the Father. Indeed except for a few prophets of the Old Testament such as Moses, Daniel and David, people of the Old Testament did not know the existence of God the Father. They knew of only one God of the Old Testament, and that God later came in the form of the human being Jesus Christ. In fact, Jesus Christ Himself said that He came to reveal the existence of God the Father to the rest of humanity. He said in Luke 10:22: “…no man knows who the Son is, but the Father, and who the Father is, but the Son, and he to whom the Son will reveal Him.”

The whole basis of Christianity is the death of Jesus Christ for the sins of humanity so that forgiveness of sin becomes possible. Only the sacrifice of the Creator could pay for the sins of all His creation. If Jesus Christ was a mere human being and not a divine being, meaning not God, then His sacrifice could at best be substituted for the life of one human being. But if He were God and the Creator of everything, then His sacrifice could substitute for the life of each and every creature. That is the very basis of Christianity which Muslims completely miss.

***6) Evidence from the Gospel of John***

The 6th proof offered by the Muslim writer is titled “Evidence from the Gospel of John.” The writer continues:

“The Gospel of John, the fourth Gospel, was completed to its present form some seventy years after Jesus was raised up to heaven. This Gospel in its final form says one more thing about Jesus that was unknown from the previous three Gospels — that Jesus was the Word of God. John means that Jesus was God’s agent through whom God created everything else. This is often misunderstood to mean that Jesus was God Himself. But John was saying, as Paul had already said, that Jesus was God’s first creature. In the Book of Revelation in the Bible, we find that Jesus is: “the beginning of God’s creation” (Revelation 3:14, also see 1 Corinthians 8:6 and Colossians 1:15).

Here again the Muslim writer is reading into scripture his own interpretation and not quoting John’s plain statement in John 1:1 that “the Word was God.”

The Muslim writer continues:

“Anyone who says that the Word of God is a person distinct from God must also admit that the Word was created, for the Word speaks in the Bible saying: “The Lord brought me forth as the first of his works...”(Proverbs 8:22).

The author has no quarrel with the Muslim writer about this interpretation of Proverbs 8:22 though chapter 8 appears to be a personification of wisdom rather than discussing the Word.

The writer continues: “This Gospel, nevertheless, clearly teaches that Jesus is not God. [Again, the writer completely ignores John 1:1 that says “the Word was God”]. If it did not continue this teaching, then it would contradict the other three Gospels and also the letters of Paul from which it is clearly established that Jesus is not God.”

Again, we have established from the writings of Paul which the Muslim writer ignored that Paul believed that Jesus Christ was the God of the Old Testament.

The Muslim writer continues: “We find here that Jesus was not co-equal with the Father, for Jesus said: “...the Father is greater than I.”(John 14:28). John tells us that Jesus cannot do anything by his own when he quotes Jesus as saying: “By myself I can do nothing...” (John 5:30).

There is no dispute that the Creator will always be greater than His creation. So Jesus Christ will always be greater than all His creation put together and God the Father who originally created Jesus Christ will always be greater than Jesus Christ. But as far as Jesus Christ not being able to do anything of Himself was a statement that applied when He was a human being. Jesus Christ had emptied Himself of His power when He came as a human being, and God the Father granted the performance of the miracles by the hands of Jesus. That’s why Jesus said by Himself He could do nothing, but that the Father was working in Him to perform the miracles. But that does not mean that Jesus Christ is not God now, or that He was not God before He became Jesus Christ.

What we see here then is that the Muslim writer is simply picking scriptures that provide evidence for his one-sided statements about Jesus Christ mainly when He was a human being on earth, when He had emptied Himself of His divinity, while completely ignoring statements from the Bible that state or prove that Jesus is God.

***7) God and Jesus Are Two Separate Beings***

The 7th proof offered by the Muslim writer is titled “God and Jesus are Two Separate Beings.”

We in God’s Church are in complete agreement with this statement. But this does not mean that Jesus Christ is not also God. We have showed that the apostles John and Thomas directly called Jesus God. John identified Jesus Christ as the Creator of everything. Paul the apostle also did the same quite clearly in Ephesians 3:9 that "God ...created all things through Jesus Christ." He writes of Jesus in Colossians 1:16: "For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him." Paul along with the other apostles also identified Jesus Christ as God and the God of the Old Testament as already proved

We conclusively proved earlier that Jesus called Himself the Son of Man, because as Jesus Christ He was a flesh and blood human being. Because of humility, many times He spoke about Himself in His condition as a human being rather than as God. But other statements of Jesus Christ and His other actions left no doubt about His claim that He was the God of the Old Testament. We also proved that though Jesus Christ is a lesser God than God the Father, nevertheless He is an awesome God and has all the powers that we believe God should have.

*Crux of the Matter*

The Muslim writer has clearly been proved wrong when he says the Bible denies the divinity of Jesus. He leaves out passages that clearly stated the firm belief of the apostles John, Thomas and Paul that Jesus is God, and was the God of the Old Testament. He also leaves out Jesus’ own claim that He was the God of the Old Testament and quotes passages in which Jesus made statements in His condition as the flesh and blood human being Jesus Christ.

What then is the crux of the matter that prevents Muslims from believing the statements of the apostles and Jesus Himself about His divinity? First of all, the Quran denies the divinity of Jesus Christ. Since they believe the Quran to be the truth, their minds are prejudiced against anything that contradicts the Quran. That’s why in their reading of the Bible they are only seeking statements that seem to agree with the Quran but ignore all other plain statements that contradict it, even though an explanation has been provided why the Muslim interpretation of those statements is wrong. They are merely quoting statements when Jesus in His humility referred to Himself as the Son of Man to describe His condition as a human being. They are ignoring His statements that described Him as the God of the Old Testament.

Prejudiced by the statements in the Quran that there is only one supreme God, Allah, the other mental barrier the Muslims are not able to cross is that there can be more than one God Being. As we proved earlier from the Bible, there are two God Beings. But one is the supreme God Being, God the Father, the original source of all life. That God Being created another God Being, the Word who later came to earth as Jesus Christ.

What characteristics do we associate with God? First is the ability to create everything out of His own resources. The Bible reveals that the Word did that with His own spirit. Next is the ability to sustain the creation, including all the laws that govern the spirit as well as material creation. We have proved that the Word or Jesus Christ in fact does that. And finally, God keeps His laws perfectly. This means that God can never sin. Jesus Christ did that as a human being, as He said in John 8:46 (NIV), “Can any of you prove me guilty of sin?” That is why His sacrifice could pay the death penalty on behalf of His creation. He certainly did that as the Word before that. So Jesus Christ fulfills all the criteria we associate with God, again proving that He is God.

The Muslims thus need to cross the mental barrier that the Quran has put in their minds that there can be only one God. Yes, there is only one supreme God. But there can be another awesome God who fulfills all the criteria we associate with the word God.

We have proved that the words of the Quran are not backed up by God Almighty as it has miserably failed our test of any past prophecies that have come true. But the Bible has passed that test with irrefutable evidence from secular history of fulfillment of hundreds, perhaps thousands, of past prophecies. If you are searching for the truth, you cannot use the Quran for proof, and only the Bible must be used as proof. If the god Allah cannot give us proof that he is the Almighty and makes statements to contradict the Bible, then he is a liar, charlatan, counterfeiter and a diabolical deceiver.

Muslims should understand what the god Allah’s game is here. He is contradicting the Bible and accusing the Jews and Christians of having altered it to put doubts about its veracity. This way he is trying to prejudice the Muslims against the Jews and Christians. Then he advocates Jihad against them to convert them to Islam by force. So’ Allah’s diabolical game is to turn the Muslims into enemies of the Jews and Christians so that they fight and destroy each other. We have already revealed the true identity of the one who is masquerading around as ‘Allah.” He is non other than Satan the devil, the arch-deceiver.

*How do we Reconcile Seeming Contradictions*

So how do we reconcile all these seeming contradictions: The existence of two God Beings; Jesus Christ being God, and yet a lesser being than God the Father when there can be only one Almighty God; and other Bible statements that God is one [Deuteronomy 6:4, “Hear, Israel! ADONAI our God, ADONAI is one God (Complete Jewish Bible). Other translations translate this verse this way: “"Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God, the Lord is one! (NKJV); “4 Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God is one LORD” (KJV); “4 Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one.” (NIV)].

The key to reconciling all these seeming contradictions is Jesus’ statement in John 10:30: “I and my Father are one.” One can ask how God the Father and Jesus Christ can be one when they are two separate Beings? How can two beings or many beings become one? The answer can be found in other examples of oneness described in the Bible.

***How God is One***

How can two God Beings be one?

The very first example of oneness in the Bible is the union of a man and a woman in marriage. When God created the institution of marriage, He said in Genesis 2:24: “: "Therefore a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and they shall become one flesh."

In marriage two beings become one flesh. They still exist as two separate beings, but they have joined together to form one unit. They have become one family. They also become one as they produce children, adding to the family. For example, George Jones marries Sally Smith and become the one Jones family, but still two separate beings, Mr. George Jones and Mrs. Sally Jones. They then have children John Jones, Sara Jones, David Jones and Jennifer Jones. They are all separate human beings but all part of the Jones family. So now many have become one.

A human family is the clue to understanding how God the Father and Jesus Christ are one, though separate Beings. The word translated God in the book of Genesis in almost all places is the word Elohim. Genesis 1:26 states: “26 And God said, Let us make man in our image…” Here God is using the pronoun “us” to describe Himself instead of the pronoun “me”. This means the word God is a uniplural noun like the word family which includes more than one person. The English word God then does not imply just one Being. More than one Being shares that common name God as the family name Jones is shared by many in our example.

So, God is a family name which at present is shared by two members. We identify these two members separately as God the Father, and the other member as Jesus Christ. Now John makes perfect sense when he said in John 1:1: “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” That is how Jesus Christ and the Father are One. To make it easier to understand with our example of the Jones family, we could call God the Father as Father God and Jesus Christ as Jesus God, if we apply God as their last name. That is what Muslims and the Quran and other religions fail to understand, but is very clear when one studies the Bible very carefully.

The Bible provides other examples of oneness, the Church being one. The Catholic Church is one Church but has more than two billion members. In the same way a denomination of a Baptist Church is one Church with many members and the Church of God is one Church with many members.

Paul the apostle compared the Church to the different individual parts of one human body in 1 Corinthians 12:12-13 (NKJV). He writes: "For as the body is one and has many members, but all the members of that one body, being many, are one body, so also is Christ. For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body—whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free—and have all been made to drink into one Spirit."

Paul here describes many individual members become one in a Church when they are baptized into the Church and receive God’s holy spirit.

Not only does the New Testament provide an example of oneness in the Church, but the Old Testament also provides an example of oneness in the ancient nation of Israel. Judges 20:1, 8-11 (NKJV) state: "So all the children of Israel came out, from Dan to Beersheba, as well as from the land of Gilead, and the congregation gathered together as one man before the Lord at Mizpah…So all the people arose as one man ... So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, united together as one man." Here the entire nation of Israel came together as “one man”, meaning in unity and purpose to deal with a villainous act committed by men of the tribe of Benjamin. All these men were individual citizens of the nation of Israel. But they became one in unity and common purpose.

These examples of oneness in the Bible and the uniplural noun Elohim teach us that the word God, like the words family, Church and nation, is a word for a single entity with two or many members. And that entity can add members and still remain one entity. So God in the Bible means the Family of God at present composed of only two members; Father God and Jesus God. But this family can and is destined to expand, as a human family can expand by reproduction.

The Biblical truth is that God is reproducing Himself through human beings to add many sons to His family. John the apostle described man’s potential to become sons of God like Jesus Christ in 1 John 3:1-3: “1 Behold, what manner of love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore, the world knows us not, because it knew him not. 2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it does not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he [that is Jesus Christ] shall appear, we shall be like him [with a body composed of the same spirit]; for we shall see him as he is.”

John could not have made the potential of man clearer. Man’s potential is to become literal immortal sons of God as Jesus Christ is the Son of God. And when we become Sons of God, we shall be like Jesus Christ, meaning have a spirit body and powers like those of Jesus Christ. But before we can realize that potential, we must become one among ourselves in the Church and one with God as Jesus Christ is one with God, totally united in love, faith, direction, thinking, attitude and purpose.

In John 17 Jesus Christ prayed to the Father to accomplish this in God’s Church with the power of His holy spirit. Verses 20-23 (NKJV) state: “20 "I do not pray for these alone, but also for those who will believe in Me through their word; 21 that they all may be one, as You, Father, are in Me, and I in You; that they also may be one in Us, that the world may believe that You sent Me. 22 And the glory which You gave Me I have given them, that they may be one just as We are one: 23 I in them, and You in Me; that they may be made perfect in one, and that the world may know that You have sent Me, and have loved them as You have loved Me.”

Yes, the purpose of all members of God’s Church is to become one with one another in unity, purpose, faith, direction and love, and then become one with God the Father and Jesus Christ as They themselves are one. That is how God’s family will have billions of sons or children, all united as one close knit family. And all of God’s family will bear the name God just as all members of the Jones family bear the name Jones. Man’s incredible potential is to become literal gods, as sons of God just as Jesus is God, and also Son of God. ***Son of man is a man. Therefore a son of God must be a God***.

Jesus Himself confirmed that He was divine and that is man’s potential as well. He said in John 10:32-35: “32 Jesus answered them, Many good works have I showed you from my Father; for which of those works do you stone me? 33 The Jews answered him, saying, for a good work we do not stone you; but for blasphemy; and because that you, being a man, make yourself God. 34 Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, You are gods? 35 If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken 36 Say you of him, whom the Father has sanctified, and sent into the world, You blaspheme; because I said, I am the Son of God?”

Jesus here quoted Psalm 82:6 to show that man’s potential is to be called gods, or become gods as children of God and affirmed that this scripture is the infallible truth and cannot be broken. Here Jesus also plainly said He is the Son of God. A Son of God has to be God.

We hope Muslims can now understand how God is one. It does not mean that there is only one God, but that more than one God Beings are one because they are one in love, unity, purpose and direction.

**CHAPTER 12**

**God Is Not a Trinity**

Sura 5:73 in the Quran states, “73 Certainly they disbelieve who say: Surely Allah is the third (person) of the three [The Trinity of mainstream Christianity]; and there is no god but the one God, and if they desist not from what they say, a painful chastisement shall befall those among them who disbelieve.”

Based on this Sura, Islamic writers find fault with mainstream Christianity. When they ask Christian scholars to explain the Trinity, they claim that it is a mystery, but maintain that God is a Triune God who exists as the Father, Son and the Holy Spirit. But to a human mind, that does not make sense. That’s why Christians say that it is a mystery. Since Christians cannot offer a satisfactory explanation, and the Quran condemns this doctrine, Muslims feel justified in thinking that the Quran is superior to the Bible.

The truth, however, is that the Trinity doctrine is not based on the Bible. Muslims and the Quran are merely criticizing a doctrine invented by human beings, who claim to be Christians, by borrowing from the ancient paganism of Nimrod and Semiramis, and foisted upon mainstream Christianity by the great false Roman Church. God’s Church here agrees with Islam in refuting the Trinity doctrine. But the Bible is not to be blamed for this belief of mainstream Christianity.

We will not provide a history of the Trinity doctrine and detailed proofs that this doctrine is false because the United Church of God (UCG) publishes a comprehensive booklet titled “*Is God a Trinity?*” which is available free of charge at the Church’s web site www.ucg.org.

The Trinity doctrine is wrong because it conflicts with the Bible. For example, when Christ died, the Trinity ceased to exist. Supposedly, only God the Father and the Holy Spirit existed. This is inconsistent with the coeternal concept of the Trinity.

Jesus Christ prayed to God the Father before His crucifixion. If God is just one Triune Being, then Jesus Christ was praying to Himself.

In Matthew 1:20 we read that Jesus was conceived by the Holy Spirit. And if the Holy Spirit is indeed a person, Jesus Christ should have been called the Son of the Holy Spirit. However, Jesus continually prayed to and addressed God the Father as His Father and not the Holy Spirit (Matthew 10:32-33; 11:25-27; 12:50). In the Bible Jesus is never called the Son of the Holy Spirit but the Son of the Father. This is clear evidence that the Holy Spirit is not a separate entity but was the agency or power through which the Father begot Jesus as His Son.

Because no one can adequately explain these problems, or how three distinct individuals can be one Being, the Trinity is called a holy mystery by mainstream Christianity to make it appear credible.

*What is the Holy Spirit*

What then does the Bible reveal about the holy spirit?

In the Bible, the Holy Spirit is most often referred to as God’s divine power. In the Old Testament, Jewish scholars have never considered the Holy Spirit to be anything other than God’s power. For example:

Zechariah 4:6: “…Not by might, nor by power, but my spirit, says the Lord of hosts.”

Micah 3:8: “But truly I am full of power by the Spirit of the Lord…”

Even in the New Testament, the Holy Spirit is most often referred to as God’s divine power. For example:

2 Timothy 1:7: “For God has not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.”

Here is how the angel told Mary that Jesus would be supernaturally conceived in her womb (NKJV): "The Holy Spirit will come upon you…and the power of the Highest," which "will overshadow you" (Luke 1:35). The holy spirit is referred to as the power of the Highest, or God the Father.

Jesus began His ministry "in the power of the Spirit" (Luke 4:14). This was the same power that enabled Christ to perform many mighty miracles during His ministry. He told His followers, "You shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you" (Acts 1:8 - NKJV). Thus, in many places the Bible depicts the Holy Spirit as the power of God.

*Other attributes of the Holy Spirit*

The Bible describes the Holy Spirit in many other ways that demonstrate that it is not a divine person. The UCG booklet “*Is God a Trinity*” states on pp 55-56:

“The Holy Spirit is spoken of in many ways that demonstrate that it is not a divine person. For example, it is referred to as a gift (Acts 10:45; 1 Timothy 4:14) that God gives without limit (John:3:34, NIV). We are told that the Holy Spirit can be quenched (I Thessalonians 5:19), that it can be poured out on people (Acts 2:17, 33), and that we are baptized with it (Matthew:3:11).

“People can drink of it (John 7:37-39), partake of it (Hebrews:6:4) and be filled with it (Acts:2:4; Ephesians:5:18). The Holy Spirit also renews us (Titus 3:5) and must be stirred up within us (2 Timothy 1:6). These impersonal characteristics are certainly not attributes of a person or personal being!

“The Spirit is also described by other designations—"the Holy Spirit of promise," "the guarantee of our inheritance" and "the spirit of wisdom and revelation" (Ephesians:1:13-14, 17)—that show it is not a person.

“In contrast to God the Father and Jesus Christ, who are consistently compared to human beings in Their form and shape, the Holy Spirit is consistently represented, by various symbols and manifestations, in a completely different manner—such as breath (John:20:22), wind (Acts:2:2), fire (verse 3), water (John:4:14; 7:37-39), oil (Psalm:45:7; compare Acts:10:38; Matthew:25:1-10), a dove (Matthew:3:16) and an "earnest," or down payment, on eternal life (2 Corinthians:1:22; 5:5; Ephesians:1:13-14, KJV).

“To say the least, these depictions are difficult to understand if the Holy Spirit is a person!

“In Matthew 1:20 we find further proof that the Holy Spirit is not a distinct entity, but God's divine power. Here we read that Jesus was conceived by the Holy Spirit. However, Jesus continually prayed to and addressed God the Father as His Father and not the Holy Spirit (Matthew:10:32-33; 11:25-27; 12:50). He never represented the Holy Spirit as His Father! Clearly, the Holy Spirit was the agency or power through which the Father begot Jesus as His Son—not a separate person or being altogether.”

*Teaching of the Apostles about the Holy Spirit*

Even the writings of the apostles Paul and Peter do not show the holy spirit to be a person. Paul's standard greeting in his letters to the churches is "Grace to you and peace from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ." In each of his greetings he never mentions the Holy Spirit. Peter also does not include the holy spirit in greetings in both his epistles. This would be an astonishing oversight if the holy spirit was indeed a person or entity coequal with God the Father and Christ.

Paul states that "there is one God, the Father… and one Lord Jesus Christ …" (1 Corinthians 8:6). He makes no mention of the Holy Spirit as a divine person.

1 John 1:3 tells us, "truly our fellowship is with the Father and with His Son Jesus Christ." Thus, the apostle John also does not mention the Holy Spirit in our fellowship with God the Father and His Son Jesus Christ.

Jesus also never spoke of the Holy Spirit as a divine third person. He spoke only of the relationship between God the Father and Himself as in Matthew 26:39 where He prayed to the Father: “O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from Me: nevertheless, not as I will, but as You will.” Other verses that describe their relationship are Mark 13:32; 15:34; John 5:18, 22; etc. The Holy Spirit as a person is conspicuously absent from Christ's relationship with God.

We should also consider that, in visions of God's throne recorded in the Bible, although the Father and Christ are seen, the Holy Spirit is never seen (Acts 7:55-56; Daniel 7:9-14; Revelation 4-5; 7:10). Jesus is repeatedly mentioned as being at the right hand of God, but no one is mentioned as being at the Father's left hand. Nowhere are three divine persons pictured together in the Scriptures.

Even in the final book of the Bible (and the last to be written), the Holy Spirit as a divine person is absent from its pages. The book describes "a new heaven and new earth" (Revelation 21:1) wherein "the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them" (verse 3). Christ, the Lamb of God, is also present (verse 22). The Holy Spirit, however, is again absent—another oversight that cannot be explained if this Spirit is the third person of a triune God.

Those who adhere to the trinity doctrine use two small passages in support of this doctrine. One is I John 5:7, “For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.” These words are a spurious addition to the Latin Vulgate translation of the Bible in the early fourth century, during the heat of the controversy between the Roman Catholic Church and a Dr. Arius of Alexandria. They do not appear in any of the older Greek manuscripts or in other modern English translations. Bible commentaries explain that these words were never written by the apostle John.

The second passage used in support of the Trinity doctrine is Matthew 28:19 (NKJV), “19 Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in [the Greek word used here is *eis* which means into] the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit…”

*Jamieson Fauset Brown* commentary states: “baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost--It should be, "into the name"; as in 1 Corinthians 10:2, "And were all baptized unto (or rather 'into') Moses"; and Galatians 3:27, "For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ."

This passage is not a description of the nature of God, existing as 3 named persons. It is a comment on the process of becoming disciples by baptism after conversion. And three names are involved in the process. he three do not have to be names of persons and are not. Buildings, mountains, hills etc. are named but are not persons.

The process of becoming disciples was described by Peter in Acts 2:38 (NKJV), “38 Then Peter said to them, "Repent, and let every one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.”

Therefore Matthew 28:19 is stating that 3 named entities are involved in making disciples which process is completed by baptism. At baptism we enter into a covenant relationship with God (that is God the Father and Jesus Christ). We enter into that relationship by first repenting of our sins, and it is the goodness of God (God the Father and Jesus Christ) that leads us to repentance (Romans 2:4). After we are led to repentance and have decided to enter into a covenant relationship with God by being baptized, our sins must first be forgiven. That is possible only through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ. After our sins have been forgiven which is symbolized by burial of our old self in a ‘watery grave’ at baptism by immersion in water, we are resurrected to a new life when we come out of the watery grave. But baptism itself does not impart us God’s divine nature. God’s divine nature comes only by God’s holy spirit. God gives it to us after the laying on of the hands of a God’s true minister and prayer for us to receive the holy spirit. God imparts to us the seed of His divine nature by giving us an earnest or down payment of His holy spirit. Then that seed must grow in us through spiritual development until Christ is fully formed in us (Galatians 4:19 (NIV), “19 My dear children, for whom I am again in the pains of childbirth until Christ is formed in you.”)

Thus Matthew 28:19 is not providing us 3 names of God Beings existing as a Trinity (or a Triune God) but is describing the process of becoming Jesus’ disciples in which God the Father, Jesus Christ and the holy spirit are fully involved. At baptism we are begotten children of God through the holy spirit and will be born as literal children after we have fully grown (Ephesians 4:13, “13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.”) through spiritual development.

Clearly, the holy spirit, from the evidence found in the Bible, is not a person in a supposed Trinity. Unfortunately, this unbiblical doctrine obscures the biblical truth that God is a family—a family which is the ultimate destiny of every human being unless they disqualify themselves! Man’s ultimate potential is to become members of God’s family as His literal, immortal Sons, inherit and rule the universe with Him.

I John 3:2 makes it clear, “Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it does not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when heshall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see Him as He is.”

John 1:12 also states, “1But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:”

Since man’s potential is to become literal immortal Sons of God, look like Jesus Christ, and be divine members of God’s family, one can understand why the Trinity doctrine is an invention of the Devil, because it limits the family of God to just 3 persons and denies that man’s potential is to become members of God’s family. This doctrine teaches that the one Triune God exists in three distinct Persons – Father, Son and Holy Spirit (sometimes referred to as “Holy Ghost”). But Trinity is a word that does not even appear in the Bible. So, this doctrine is not based on God’s word, but on human reasoning, and copied from paganism.

**CHAPTER 13**

**Quran on Jesus’ Death and Resurrection**

The Quran appears to deny the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. The following quotes are from the translation by M.H. Shakir:

**[3.55]** “And when Allah said: O Isa [Jesus’ Arabic name], I am going to terminate the period of your stay (on earth) and cause you to ascend unto Me and purify you of those who disbelieve and make those who follow you above those who disbelieve to the day of resurrection; then to Me shall be your return, so l will decide between you concerning that in which you differed.

Translation of this verse by Abdullah Yusuf Ali reads this way:

“Behold! Allah said: "O Jesus! I will take thee and raise thee to Myself and clear thee (of the falsehoods) of those who blaspheme; I will make those who follow thee superior to those who reject faith, to the Day of Resurrection: Then shall ye all return unto me, and I will judge between you of the matters wherein ye dispute.”

The Muslims interpret this verse to mean that Jesus did not die but ascended to God. This interpretation is made when this verse is read in conjunction with other verses.

**[19.33]** And peace on me on the day I was born, and on the day I die, and on the day I am raised to life.

The sequence of events mentioned in the life of Jesus in this verse is His birth, then death and then His resurrection; exactly as the sequence in the Bible. This verse does not mention the return of Jesus Christ to earth as mentioned in the Bible. Muslims claim that the sequence in Jesus’ life is birth, then ascension, then return to earth, then death and then resurrection? This passage in the Quran is also speaking of the resurrection of Jesus and not His ascension to God without first dying as claimed by Muslims. Thus, this verse is contrary to the prevailing Muslim view

With these verses, the Quran seems to say things similar to the Bible. But next look at Sura 4:157-158:

**[4.157-158]** “And their saying [meaning the Jews’ saying]: Surely we have killed the Messiah, Isa son of Marium [Mary’s Arabic name], the apostle of Allah; and they did not kill him nor did they crucify him, but it appeared to them so (like Isa) and most surely those who differ therein are only in a doubt about it; they have no knowledge respecting it, but only follow a conjecture, and they killed him not for sure. 158 Nay! Allah took him up to Himself; and Allah is Mighty, Wise.”

Here in verse 157 the Quran is saying that the Jews boast that they killed Jesus the Messiah, but denies that they killed Him or crucified Him; it just appeared to them to be so. The Quran then flatly denies that they killed Him, but that Allah took Him up to himself.

The same two verses are translated in the translation by the King Fahd Complex for the printing of the Quran in Madinah, SA with commentary in this way:

**[4.157-158]** And because of their saying (in boast), “We killed Messiah Isa (Jesus), son of Maryam (Mary), the Messenger of Allah” – but they killed him not, nor crucified him, but the resemblance of Isa (Jesus) was put over another man (and they killed that man) and those who differ therein are full of doubts. They have no certain knowledge, they follow nothing but conjecture. For surely they killed him not [i.e Isa (Jesus)] son of Maryam (Mary)]. 158 But Allah raised him [Isa (Jesus)] up (with his body and soul) unto Himself (and he is in the heavens). And Allah is ever All-powerful, All-wise.”

The words in verse 157, “but the resemblance of Isa (Jesus) was put over another man (and they killed that man)” are not a literal translation but added as a commentary based on a Hadith [which are the sayings of the companions of Mohammad based on what Mohammed said or did] narrated by Ibn Abbas mentioning that Mohammed told about the last day of prophet Isa on Earth that he gathered his pupils in a house and asked them "who among you shall be given my appearance to be crucified in my place and be my companion in Paradise?" The youngest among them stood up and said: "I"”

This may be the reason for the Muslim belief that another disciple who looked like Him was substituted for Jesus to be crucified to die on the cross, but the people thought it was Jesus who was crucified and died.

When we consider these verses that discuss Jesus Christ’s death or ascension to God, we see that the Quran does not give us its own detailed version of what actually happened at the crucifixion, or death or resurrection of Jesus Christ. It just seeks to discredit the detailed version of events contained in the Bible. The Koran does not give us a clear picture of the events surrounding those 4-5 days of the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ.

While these verses in the Quran are open to alternate interpretations, the Muslims interpret them to believe that in essence Jesus was not crucified and did not die on the cross but ascended to Allah in heaven. Since He did not die, there was no need for Him to be resurrected from death. Thus, the Koran denies the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. But according to the Bible these are a central part of God’s Plan of salvation for mankind in Christianity.

Since these verses in the Koran can be interpreted in different ways, it has led to many theories among the Muslims to try and explain the actual event of the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ as described in the gospels in the Bible. These theories include:

1) Jesus didn’t actually die, He simply swooned or went into a coma and appeared to be dead, but woke up after 3 days and was claimed to have been resurrected.

2) Jesus did actually die, but his disciples stole the body. This saying was actually reported among the Jews and is mentioned in the Bible. But it contradicts Sura 4:157 in the Quran which asserts that Jesus did not die.

3) There was a person who was crucified and died, but it was another person substituted for the real Jesus. So it wasn’t Jesus who actually died. Since He did not die, He could be claimed to have been resurrected the third day. This theory as mentioned earlier is not in the Quran but based on a Hadith, which could be just conjecture on the part of the one to whom the Hadith is attributed. (Can you imagine Jesus asking another person to die on His behalf according to what else is written about Him in the Bible. He said in John 15:13, “13 Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.” That is what Jesus did. It is simply unimaginable that He would ask a close friend to be crucified on His behalf.)

4) Muslims also say that there was no need for another man to die for the sins of other men. That is unfair. So they question the story of the death of Jesus Christ for the sins of mankind. That is why they do not believe the story of the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ.

5) The whole resurrection story is a myth.

6) Some even go so far as to say that Jesus is a myth

You can see that these theories to try and discredit the Biblical account of the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus by first accepting what the Quran claims about Jesus are contradictory among themselves. Some of these theories claim that Jesus died whereas others claim He did not.

Even the account in the Koran itself about the event is contradictory. Sura 4:157 says Jesus was not killed whereas Sura 19:33 says Jesus died or will die and be resurrected. To reconcile these two verses Muslims have invented the sequence in the life of Jesus to be the life, ascension to God, return to earth, then death of Jesus Christ, and then resurrection. But this sequence contradicts the sequence in Sura 19:33 which says: “And peace on me on the day I was born, and on the day I die, and on the day I am raised to life.”

We have already discussed what a diabolical liar would do to discredit a true story in order to deceive. He would try to spread lies that the message of the crucifixion, death and resurrection was lies and pure fiction. That is what Satan the devil, masquerading as the true God but under the name Allah does in the Quran.

Before we prove that the crucifixion, death and the resurrection of Jesus are true events, we must understand why His life, death and resurrection were necessary.

**CHAPTER 14**

**Why Were Death and Resurrection of Jesus Necessary**

***God’s Purpose in Creating Mankind***

To understand why the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ are crucial to God’s plan for man, we must understand briefly what God’s purpose was in creating mankind. We will appreciate God’s purpose much better if we understand the history of the universe before man’s creation.

HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSE BEFORE MAN’S CREATION

[This history is described in my book titled “*Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood*” Volume 1. The Bible is the basis for this history].

In the very beginning of everything only one Supreme God Being existed. That God Being we know as God the Father. This is one Being who has always existed. All power in the universe literally belongs to Him. And literally everything has come from His body if we can put it that way.

God the Father originally thought through everything and planned all creation. He chose first to create just one Being with incredible powers like His own. That Being was originally known as the Word, but later came to earth as Jesus Christ. Then the honor of creating everything was given to the Word.

*How God and the Word Lived*

God the Father determined that the only way He could have a loving relationship with other beings would be to create intelligent beings similar to Himself. It was absolutely essential for Him to give them “free will” or ‘free moral agency.’ They could choose to live according to His way of life, or choose to live any other way they wished.

Without ‘free will’ God’s creatures would be mere robots, programmed to behave in a particular way. The kind of deeply satisfying, happy and joyful relationship human beings can have with their own children or other human beings is not possible with any other creatures made of matter, be they trees, birds, fish or any kind of animals such as dogs or cats, no matter how loving or loyal the animal might be. Relationship between animals is an animal plane relationship. It is not a human level relationship, or a God plane relationship.

Humans have animal-like bodies, but a human spirit imparted to them by God which gives them human intellect or intelligence, which is the power to think, the “mind power,” which animals don’t possess. Paul explains that “spirit in man” in 1 Corinthians 2:9-12.

Human intellect, similar to God’s intellect makes a personal relationship possible among human beings as well as between God and man, which is a much higher plane relationship than the animal level relationship. So, God planned to create intelligent beings that would love Him of their own free will and choose to obey Him.

To truly know God, one must know what His character is! The character of both God the Father and Jesus Christ the Son is that of spiritual holiness, righteousness and absolute perfection, which can be summed by one word: LOVE, which is defined as outgoing concern for the welfare of others. It can also be called the way of “giving” instead of “getting”, the way of sharing, helping and serving. God’s nature includes the attributes of PEACE, HARMONY, JUSTICE, MERCY, COMPASSION, HAPPINESS AND JOY towards all those He has created. It is a way devoid of coveting, lust, greed, vanity, selfishness, envy, jealousy, resentment, bitterness, hatred, competition, strife, violence and destruction.

God the Father and the Word lived this way of life of LOVE, with total agreement with one another ever since the Word was created for practically the past eternity. But it is also a principle of God’s way that when two walk together, one has to be the head and in control for there to be harmony and peace in the relationship. One has to be the leader. God the Father was the head.

The results of living this way for eternity were perfect cooperation, peace, harmony, joy, happiness and most important of all, tremendous accomplishment. They made this way of life a LAW, a code of conduct or relationship between God the Father and the Word.

*God’s Next Phase of Creation*

When God’s small project of creation, that of the Word, proved to be perfect and a total success, He and the Word then proceeded with the next phase of Their creation, which was the creation of 24 elders mentioned in Revelation 4:1-4, 6-11. These verses show that the twenty-four elders wear crowns and sit on thrones. Jesus Christ also is pictured in Revelation 19:12 as wearing many crowns. And God the Father and Jesus Christ sit on thrones.

No angels are pictured as wearing crowns, or sitting on thrones, except for Lucifer who was given a crown and a throne to sit on as ruler over the earth. If the twenty-four elders were created at the same time as the angels, it is difficult to imagine that the twenty-four elders qualified to sit on thrones and wear crowns, but none of the angels (except Lucifer), including the archangels Gabriel and Michael, qualified to wear crowns and sit on thrones. This indicates that the twenty-four elders were likely created before the angels were created.

After the twenty-four elders were created, they were taught God’s way of life and His laws as the Word had been taught by God the Father before that. Of their own free will, they learnt to love, respect and honor their Creators, God the Father and the Word. Living that way of life produced perfect harmony, peace and abundant joy for the Creators and the twenty-four elders. They also learnt about God’s method of government.

*Creation of Angels*

After the 24 elders proved to God that they had thoroughly learnt His way of life and His laws, were convinced that it was the best way to live a happy, peaceful and joyous life, and would always live the way of love, God the Father and the Word decided to proceed with the next phase of their creation plan. They decided to create many more beings: hundreds of millions, or perhaps billions of angels.

In this phase of creation, God for the first time decided to create variety, for all angels don’t look alike and they are not created equal. Some angels have higher rank than others with differing responsibilities.

*The Material Creation*

The angels also went through the same learning process as the 24 elders. When God and the Word were convinced that the angels were perfectly trained in God’s way of life of Love, His laws, and His government, they began sharing their future creation plan with the angels. They then implemented the plan, which was the creation of the material universe. That is what is described in Genesis 1:1: “In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.”

When the angels saw the beauty of the earth, they were incredibly thrilled and shouted for joy as stated in Job 38:4.

Then God chose a pioneering party of one-third of all the angels to rule the earth with Lucifer, an angel of the highest rank to be ruler over them to administer God’s government on earth. Lucifer had proved himself thoroughly capable of administering God’s government through his training and testing at God’s universe ruling headquarters.

Here now was an opportunity for the angels to own something and work with it for eternity. In heaven, they lived under God’s government. But now they could plan out their own creation and rule over it, just as God the Father and the Word had done as a pattern for them to follow. With this incredible opportunity the angels could prove themselves and qualify to become creators and rulers in the entire universe on their own.

Archaeologists, geologists and paleontologists have unearthed fossils that give us an idea of what appears to be the plant and animal world created by the angels under Lucifer’s rule. That is the world we know as the dinosaur world.

That world was not created in a few short years. According to the U.S. Geological Survey the earth is approximately 4.54 billion years old. This means that the Dinosaur world could have been the result of billions of years of learning and creating by the angels under Lucifer’s rule.

For perhaps billions of years Lucifer and the angels lived God’s way of life and Lucifer administered God’s government on earth. But at some point in time, Lucifer began to entertain thoughts of doing things his own way; ways that were different from God’s way of LOVE, the way of outgoing concern for the welfare of others equal to one’s own welfare, the way of sharing, caring and cooperation. He felt the way of competition would be better as it would be an incentive to excel for greater accomplishment. He thought it would be better to serve the SELF to maximize one’s own pleasure.

Ezekiel 28:15-17 states: “You [Satan] were perfect in your ways from the day that you were created, till iniquity was found in you.” [This verse makes it clear that rebellion of the angels did not originate with the other angels, but with Lucifer himself.] Continue in verses 17: “Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty, you have corrupted your wisdom by reason of your brightness…”

These verses reveal that Lucifer’s heart was lifted up with pride, and because of his incredible beauty, brightness, talents and wisdom vanity seized him. He began to think he could do things better than God. This led to wrong reasoning which corrupted his wisdom.

Such thoughts were violations of God’s law of LOVE for their Creator and fellow-brings. This iniquity began to manifest itself in what Lucifer and the angels with him began to create; carnivores that would devour other creatures and for their entire creation ‘survival of the fittest’ would be a way of life.

*Satan’s Rebellion*

God allowed Lucifer and the angels with him to continue their experiments in creation and govern it the way they liked and show God their alternate way of life. With time Lucifer’s thinking became more and more perverted, until ultimately he decided to rebel against God, depose Him, take over His throne and become ruler of the universe himself as stated in Isaiah 14:12-14.

When all the angels under Lucifer were aboard on the decision to rebel against God the Father and the Word, they rose up from the earth and stormed heaven. This is indicated by Jude 6: “And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation…”

However, Lucifer and his angels were unsuccessful in their rebellion. While they fought in heaven, some of them probably went on a rampage throughout the universe in fits of rage and frustration. We see the evidence in craters over the surfaces of all planets and astral bodies we can see around the universe. That is how Lucifer – son of the morning, the light bringer – became Satan the devil, an adversary and enemy of God, and the angels with him became demons.

Then God decided to put an end to this rampage by Satan and the demons. He blasted them back to earth, their assigned habitation, from heaven, or wherever they were in the universe. This is indicated in Luke 10:18: “And he [Jesus Christ] said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.”

The result of Satan’s rebellion on the earth is described in Genesis 1:2: “And the earth was [better translation is ‘became’] without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep.”

*God’s Plan for the Creation of Man*

When God saw the debacle caused by Satan’s rebellion, He realized that the angels could not be relied upon to always obey His laws and live according to His way of life under all circumstances. A super being, created by God, had rebelled against Him, transgressed His laws and sinned, for ‘sin is the transgression of the law’ (I John 3:4.) That left only God the Father Himself, and the Word (who also was God, as a second member of the God family) who would not and cannot sin. Only they could be absolutely relied upon to never sin. So, the only way God could fulfill His purpose for the entire universe was to reproduce Himself. God and the Word had already devised a plan to do exactly that.

What Satan and the demons demonstrated by their rebellion is that they had not learnt the lesson that only God’s way of LOVE works for the welfare of every creature, and it requires godly character to live that way of LOVE. God and the Word saw that Satan and the demons lacked god’s holy righteous character. That is one quality that even God with His creative powers cannot create instantly by fiat because it requires the free choice and decision of the separate entity in whom it is to be created to allow God to create it.

Mr. Armstrong writes in his book *Mystery of the Ages*: “Prefect, holy and righteous character is the ability in such separate entity to come to discern the true and right way from the false, to make voluntarily a full and unconditional surrender to God and his perfect way – to yield to be conquered by God – to determine even against temptation or self-desire, to live and to do the right. And even then, such holy character is the gift of God. It comes by yielding to God to instill HIS LAW (God’s right way of life) within the entity who so decides and wills.”

Since free choice of the being in whom godly character is to be developed is required, it means that God cannot create His perfect character by fiat or decree. It must be developed over a period of time by God working with the intelligent being, with the free choice and agreement of the intelligent being to let God work with him.

In their next phase of creation, God and the Word’s plan would include the development of godly character like their own in the intelligent creatures they would create. Godly character would ensure that these intelligent creatures would obey Their laws and live Their way of LOVE for God and love and outgoing concern for their fellow intelligent beings and would never rebel against Their rule. Their new creatures needed to learn some vital lessons, and God and the Word devised a plan to teach them those lessons.

The first lesson God wanted His new creatures to learn was that they would always be totally dependent upon Him. Jesus Christ is the only Being who is self-existent, that is with life-inherent in Himself (John 5:26). And that gift was granted to Him after practically a past eternity of developing total and complete faith and trust in God the Father. The new creatures (or man) needed to learn that God gives them everything that sustains their lives. Lucifer and the angels with him had not learnt that lesson. They did not need any kind of food, spirit energy or anything else for their existence. So they thought they could live independently of God. The way God planned to impart this lesson to humans was to create them as vulnerable physical beings rather than spirit beings. They would be dependent on food, water and air to sustain them.

Human beings in growing up are subject to the same type of vanity that manifested itself in Lucifer. But they eventually learn the lesson through old age that the cause of their vanity, good looks, superior intelligence, success and material possessions or anything else, eventually fades away. In old age they are barely able to exercise much control over their own bodies and then they die. Material possessions are no longer of any value to them after they die. They eventually learn the lesson in humility and realize how vulnerable and totally dependent they really are on God.

The second lesson God wanted His new creature to learn was that rebellion against Him would always be futile, and end in utter and total defeat. That lesson will be brought home to man by extinguishing the lives of the rebellious forever in the lake of fire, if they refuse to repent. That way the living will learn the lesson for eternity that God is Almighty and can always solve the problem of rebellion by extinguishing the lives of the rebellious forever.

Thirdly, God wanted to develop godly, holy and righteous character in man. God saw that all the angels that followed Satan in the rebellion lacked godly character as did Lucifer.

Before Satan’s rebellion, the entire universe was governed according to God’s way of love, cooperation and concern for the welfare of others. In such a perfect environment, there was no opportunity to test the character of the 24 elders or individual angels to resist sin against pressure, threat to life or pain and suffering through torture for an indefinite period of time.

After Satan’s rebellion two-thirds of the angels still serving God in heaven have been tried and tested in a limited way because they have to face Satan’s accusations against them before God as indicated in Revelation 12:7-10, 12.

In addition, God’s angels are assigned specific duties on earth. Angels function as God’s messengers on earth. In these assignments they often have to battle Satan and his powerful demons, who have been appointed as princes over kingdoms of the earth by Satan as described in Daniel 10:12-13, 20-21. These battles are trials for God’s angels and tests of their character. Thus, God’s angels are being tested to prove their love and desire for God’s work on the earth, for this is the battleground.

However, to develop godly, holy and righteous character in human beings, God’s plan included leaving Satan and his demons still rulers of the earth, but severely curtailing their powers, and still fully under His control. God would create man but allow him to be influenced by Satan and his demons. He would also teach humans His way of life. Then human beings could decide for themselves whether they would obey God’s laws and live according to His ways or choose to live in ways of their own devising as influenced by Satan. They would experience the results of Satan’s ways in the first 6,000 years of man’s history, and then experience the fruits of God’s Kingdom in the 1,000 years following. Humanity would then be able to compare and contrast the two ways.

God knew that Satan and his demons would persecute human beings loyal to Him. God knew that Satan will threaten His people to forsake His ways and persecute them by inflicting pain and suffering and even painful death. But that would be a supreme test of character for God’s people to determine if they will always remain faithful to His way despite all that Satan and his demons can throw at them. God promises to help His people as He chooses, but they must have faith in Him and rely on Him completely. They would have to be willing to sacrifice their physical lives, if necessary, to never compromise with God’s laws and His ways. Some will violently lose their physical lives, but they will attain immortal life and a glorious eternal future. The tests, trials and persecutions inflicted on them by Satan and his human agents will develop godly, holy and righteous character in His people. God devised this perfect plan to test man like no other intelligent creature God has created has ever been tested to develop His holy, righteous character in him.

After holy and righteous character is developed in humans, God will then give them spirit bodies with power and abilities multiplied trillions of times, making them perfect and incapable of sinning, like Himself and the Word. That is what human beings are called to as stated in Matthew 5:48: “Be you therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.”

Fourth lesson God wants to impart to man is to learn how to love God and each other. Not all angels had been able to learn that vital lesson. We can visualize the feelings of angels for God by imagining the feelings of children. They are born into the world and are totally dependent on their parents in childhood and youth. As they grow up, they long to be independent of their parents’ control. They cannot fully realize how deeply their parents love them until they have children of their own. They know how precious their children are to them, and how deeply they love them. Then they realize how much their own parents loved them and did everything that was only in their best interests. In the same way the angels perhaps could not perceive how deeply God the Father and the Word loved them, because they had not experienced similar love for ‘children’ of their own or their own creation.

Humans have been deceived into believing that God hates His creation and is ready to pounce on humans and blot out their existence at the slightest sin. So, far more important than humans learning to love God and fellow man was to learn how deeply God loves them. The best way for them to learn that lesson would be for them to reproduce and experience love for their own offspring. In addition to parent-child relationships, God also planned to create other relationships for experiencing love. He created the marriage relationship for them to experience the love the Word has for them, as God’s Church is called Christ’s bride in the Bible. As a result of family, humans would also experience brother and sister relationships. Thus, God wanted His new creatures to experience love in many possible ways. Their physical bodies would also enable them to experience love in close bonds through loving physical contact. God also planned to create all humanity from one man, Adam. From Adam He would create the woman Eve. Then through that one man and one woman, all of humanity would spring forth. Hence all of humanity would be related. This way God would knit His entire creation closely together. The angels would also learn by observing and caring for humanity how God the Father and the Word love them.

It is clear from Job 38:7 that the angels had the concept of fathers and sons. They knew that they were sons of God by creation. But the depth of closeness that the father-son bond should have produced in them for God the Father and the Word was not present because they had not experienced the same closeness from the point of view of parents.

Reproduction in the dinosaur world before man’s creation was through laying of eggs and hatching them. But in the mammalian world method of reproduction was changed to producing young from their own bodies and nourishing them from their own bodies. This develops a closer bond between parent and offspring.

God also wanted man to learn to love all living things. Satan and the demons created the dinosaur world. They had no love for those creatures, because they thought absolutely nothing of destroying them in their rebellion. To teach man to love all creatures, God created cattle and other animals on which man would be dependent in many ways. He would be dependent on them for food, clothing and to bear his burdens. The animals would represent wealth for him. Even his practice of sustained agriculture would depend on animals to maintain the fertility of the soil. In short, man’s well-being would depend a great deal on taking care of animals. Indeed, his long-term survival would depend on them. He would have to kill them for food, clothing and other needs, but that does not have to be done with torture, pain and suffering. They could be killed humanely. Man would learn the need to preserve the animals because each plays an important part in the ecological system. This way he would learn to love all of God’s creation.

Fifth, God wanted to demonstrate to His creation how He loves them with the kind of love that surpasses human understanding. At the same time, He wanted to demonstrate to them that He is always just and fair, because Satan and his demons accuse Him of being unfair. God and the Word chose to demonstrate their love by the Word agreeing to empty Himself of all His divinity and power, coming to the earth as a human being, living a sinless life and dying for the sins of humanity. God the Father was also willing to sacrifice His begotten Son in an excruciatingly painful death. With His sacrifice, the Word would redeem His creation from death, by paying the death penalty on its behalf.

God would also prove His fairness by demonstrating that He and the Word are very strict about their law of love. Unfairness violates that law of love. The penalty for violating that law is death. All human beings have earned the death penalty by sinning. That penalty had to be paid. There was no compromise with that. And Jesus Christ paid it on their behalf. God the Father and Jesus Christ never compromise with their law, and never sin themselves. They are very strict about keeping their law. Therefore, there is no question of them being unfair and unjust.

Sixth, God wanted to demonstrate to His new creatures that He always knows and does what is best for them in the long-run. They must, therefore, learn to trust Him completely. He knows every creature that has ever been created and is intimately familiar with all the details of their life experiences and all their thoughts. He has all the power, and He sees things that the creature itself cannot see or perceive. And He has the benefit of knowing the experiences of all creatures that have ever lived. Therefore, He is in the best position to judge what is in the best interest of the creature, even far more than the creature itself knows. And He has all the power to affect the outcomes of all actions. Therefore, He wanted His new creatures to learn to put their complete faith and trust in Him.

The way God would choose to instill that lesson in men would be to require them to praise and worship Him. By praising, worshipping and meditating on Him, they would never lose sight of His awesome power and greatness, the wonders and miracles He has performed for those who love Him, and always keep in mind how weak and totally dependent they are in comparison. That would also prevent rebellion against Him.

Seventh, God wanted to drive pride and vanity out of man forever. One way He would drive vanity out of the angels would be to set man in authority over them. That would also be a warning to man for all eternity. If they ever became vain and arrogant against Him, He could always create new creatures and set them over man. God never wants pride and vanity to be the cause of rebellion against Him, or of oppression of fellow beings as happened in the case of Satan. None of us have any cause for boasting because whatever talents, abilities and strengths we possess, we have received from God (1 Corinthians 4:7 – NKJV – “7 For who makes you differ from another? And what do you have that you did not receive? Now if you did indeed receive it, why do you boast as if you had not received it?”

Eighth important lesson God wanted His creation to learn is that it is His prerogative to create a being as He chooses. The angels were created with different looks, talents and rank. Satan may have used these created differences to sow discontent, dissatisfaction, a false sense of discrimination and unfairness, resentment, bitterness and hatred among the angels towards God. God must have thought through all these ideas in the minds of the angels but concluded that there was no alternative to creating variety, and creatures with different talents and abilities for the good of society. God thought through the future of man for eternity ahead and concluded that there was no alternative to creating a hierarchical structure. Possible reason is that billions of beings created equal in rank would lead to anarchy. Therefore, some would have higher authority than others.

God decided that He would create differences in His new creature. He created people with different looks and talents. This would be an incentive for humans to cooperate with one another for only those who cooperate with others will get farthest ahead in life and realize greater happiness and joy. God would also demonstrate that He is capable of providing for all so that they all can live happy, abundant, productive and joyful lives.

But also remember that human beings will be rewarded according to how they use their talents and abilities as the parable of the talents in Matthew 25 shows. God is always fair.

The ninth vital lesson God wanted man to learn is that violation of His laws, which is sin, always produces pain, suffering and anguish in the long run. He wanted to demonstrate to man that His laws are living laws which always exact a penalty when transgressed. Man would be created as a weak creature. As a result, all would sin because of their imperfect knowledge, and due to Satan’s influence. All would, therefore, suffer the consequences in pain and suffering. They would, therefore, learn to avoid sin as a result of these experiences. When they are resurrected as immortal spirit beings with powers multiplied billions or trillions of times, they will become perfect and incapable of sinning. They will become literal sons of God.

The tenth consideration for God in creating man was that He did not want them to suffer forever. He planned to give man temporary physical existence. To those that developed His holy, righteous character such that He could depend on them to be completely faithful to Him and His way of life forever under all circumstances, He would give eternal life. Those who failed to repent and did not develop godly character would have their lives extinguished permanently in a lake of fire. This would forever stop the pain and suffering they were causing themselves and others because of their sins.

The eleventh element of God’s plan for man would be to give eternal life only to those who really want it. When God opens the understanding of an individual to what He has planned for humanity, the individual may be really excited about his potential and work passionately to learn and live according to God’s laws and way of life. He may diligently apply himself to root sin out of his life, and exercise love towards God and fellow man. Such a person will be granted eternal life as God’s literal son and will rule with Jesus Christ in His kingdom.

On the other hand, another individual called into God’s Church may understand the incredible potential God is offering him, but be lazy, lukewarm and not passionate about overcoming sin and growing in knowledge and love of God. Such a person, who does not bear sufficient fruit to perfection, will lose his life in the lake of fire. He will have demonstrated in his physical life that he is not really excited and passionate about living for eternity. This is indicated by the parable of the talents in Matthew 25:14-30, and the parable of the pounds in Luke 19:12-26.

The twelfth element of God’s plan for creation of man was to make him joint heir of all things with Jesus Christ, if he developed holy and righteous character. According to God’s plan, no intelligent being created by God would be tested quite like man, and the firstfruits among men more so. The firstfruits, those called into God’s Church during the first 6,000 years of man’s history, would be required to be willing to die to keep God’s laws and commandments to prove their total commitment to His way of life. As a reward God plans to make them heirs of all things, as indicated in Hebrews 2:8. “All things” means the entire universe. Romans 8:16-17 declares that we shall be joint-heirs with Jesus Christ.

By analyzing man’s attributes and physical environment, one can understand some of God’s other purposes for creating man the way He has. Herbert W. Armstrong in his book “*Mystery of the Ages*” describes some of his experiences with demons: “I have had a number of personal experiences with demons through a few demon-possessed people. I have cast out demons through the name of Christ and power of the Holy Spirit. Some demons are silly, like spoiled children. Some are crafty, sharp, shrewd, subtile. Some are belligerent, some are sassy, some are sullen and morose. But all are perverted, warped, twisted” (p. 93).

From Mr. Armstrong’s description, it seems some demons are not as passionate about work. To inculcate the habit of work, and to derive joy and satisfaction from a sense of accomplishment through hard work, God made man dependent on food to sustain his life. To procure food, man must work. This would build the habit of work in man. The angels on the other hand are not dependent on food to live.

Lucifer may have had to contend with this attitude among some of the angels under his rule who were merely existing and not working diligently. As a reaction he probably developed the philosophy of ‘success through competition’ rather than through cooperation. He has imparted that same philosophy, attitude and mind-set to humanity.

God also wants man to maintain His creation well, and to finish its beautification. For this purpose, man has to learn to be clean and maintain things in order. Apparently, some of the angels before they rebelled did not have enthusiasm in maintaining the earth in a state of beauty and order. To teach man that lesson, God decided to tie length of man’s life to keeping clean. He created germs that would thrive in unclean environments, and cause disease in humans. If man persisted in keeping his environment dirty, it could literally kill him prematurely with disease.

God also wanted man to learn self-control and temperance. It is one of the fruits of God’s holy spirit (Galatians 5:23). Apparently, some of the angels with Lucifer did not exhibit this character trait. To teach man this lesson, God created human bodies in such a way that if abused through lack of moderation in food, drink and other activities, man would get sick. The more he abused his body, the greater pain he would suffer, and the earlier he would die. Man would also develop a higher and higher level of self-control by having to change his eating and drinking habits as he got older.

Apparently, all angels did not learn to fully cooperate with one another. Man would learn that lesson by being created weak, not possessing all talents and thus never completely self-reliant. Every human depends on services from other human beings for living. He cannot himself produce all he needs. Then in old age he often cannot take care of even his basic needs and needs the services of others. This way man learns the lesson of interdependence, and the need to cooperate with others.

Some of the angels with Lucifer must also have wondered why God created so many hundreds of millions or even billions of them. However, God would create tens billions of human beings to demonstrate to the angels that numbers are no constraint for Him. He has created many more planets and even galaxies in the universe than there will ever be human beings born. He can provide for all His creation with sustenance and fulfilling work and activities for all eternity. In fact, God revealed through Moses that He has already divided the planets to various peoples on earth in Deuteronomy 4:19, “19 And lest you lift up your eyes unto heaven, and when you see the sun, and the moon, and the stars, even all the host of heaven, should be driven to worship them, and serve them, which the Lord your God has divided unto all nations under the whole heaven.”

So, after Satan’s rebellion, God planned out another creation, that of man! And He planned to develop His godly, holy and righteous character in man, found so utterly lacking in Satan and his demons. In effect, God planned to reproduce Himself. Man would learn all these vital lessons so that there would never ever be rebellion against His authority and government. Mankind would learn these crucial lessons through trial and error, sin, and the resulting pain and suffering, and these experiences would be recorded as history to be kept in remembrance for all eternity. God’s Word, the Holy Bible is that history book.

Not only did God plan to reproduce Himself through man, He also planned to restore His government on earth, which was taken away by Satan’s rebellion. Presently, Satan and his demons rule the earth, and that is why we experience so much pain and suffering. Though Satan can do only what God allows, God gives him enough freedom to rule the earth so that it is not the way government would function in God’s kingdom. That kingdom will soon be set up on earth when Jesus Christ returns as King of kings with the immortal saints as kings and deposes Satan and his demons. Then humans will be able to compare and contrast the two ways of life and choose the way they will live.

After Satan’s rebellion, God and the Word therefore planned to create intelligent creatures in such a way that they would learn what love for God and fellow-man is, feel it, experience it and would have a deep desire to live that way for eternity. God’s holy and righteous character inculcated in them would ensure that they would never depart from that way of life. Most importantly they would learn that God loves them as His own dear children just as they learn to learn their own children.

That is the reason why God created mankind the way He did, flesh and blood creatures subject to death, male and female with the institution of marriage and family to experience close deep love in many possible ways, the ability to reproduce to teach them the vital lesson that He loves them with godly love that surpasses human understanding, and to learn how to love Him and fellow man.

God is reproducing Himself through humanity. Human beings and all other physical creatures can reproduce themselves as flesh and blood creatures. But we cannot reproduce spirit born creatures with godly character, because godly character cannot be created by fiat. Only God can perform that reproductive process in us.

Despite scriptures reassuring us, we still cannot comprehend that we shall become gods like Jesus Christ, literal immortal children of God the Father. Our argument against this belief is that Jesus Christ was a God Being before He became flesh, but we were created mere flesh and blood. If God wanted to create us as His literal sons and daughters, He could have simply created us like Jesus Christ. Because we are created as flesh and blood beings like animals, we cannot therefore ever become equal to Jesus Christ as God’s literal sons and daughters

.

But we forget that God did in fact create sons composed of spirit before humans. Those spirit beings are the 24 elders and the angelic world. A part of those sons created with spirit bodies rebelled against God. God could not create His holy righteous character in them by fiat because they were created with free will and it requires their exercise of that free will in acquiescing to allow God to create His holy righteous character in them. God has created humans so that they can first allow Him to develop His holy righteous character in themselves before God will give them eternal life.

In believing that by virtue of being created flesh and blood like animals we will always be an inferior creation as compared to the spirit world, we seem to have forgotten that Jesus Christ was also created a flesh and blood human being. To prove to humans that He will convert them to spirit beings God the Father resurrected Jesus Christ from the dead. He will resurrect us in exactly the same way as spirit beings, to become His immortal sons and daughters.

The reality of the resurrection energized Jesus disciples so that they were willing to die for their belief. They knew that their potential was to become God’s literal sons and daughters like Jesus Christ. That’s why John the apostle wrote about it.

We may still think that we cannot be equal to God because God had no direct hand in creating us. We were born as a result of our parents’ actions, and not directly created like Jesus Christ was created by God the Father. So, we cannot be equal with Jesus Christ. But we are forgetting that we would not have fully experienced the love of a parent for a child if God had a direct hand in our creation and not through the human reproductive process. We also do not realize that the chance of a human sperm fertilizing a human egg by mere chance is almost negligible. This means that God has a direct hand in the conception of every human being, making the near impossible possible. But when a human child is born, its parents know that the child has come entirely from their own bodies. So, they deeply love that child. If God had a direct hand in creating flesh and blood human children without human reproduction, we would not have experienced the same level of love for our children. God has allowed us to reproduce without His direct hand in it so that we can feel and experience love for our own children and thus learn how deeply God loves us.

By being equal to Jesus Christ does not mean equal in power, strength and abilities as all human beings are not equal in power, strength and abilities. But they are equal in the sense that they are all human beings.

The Bible leaves no doubt about what the potential of human beings is. It is to become God’s literal sons and daughters with spirit bodies just like that of Jesus Christ. But we had to be created flesh and blood like animals to learn other godly righteous character

building lessons. We should not limit God’s creative powers in our thinking. If He could create the Word directly, and then raise Him through a resurrection, He certainly can convert flesh and blood human beings into spirit beings with the same spirit composition as Jesus Christ.

Now try to imagine what God’s adversary would do? His aim would be to thwart God’s purposes as best he can. Satan as God’s adversary tries to do precisely that. And what exactly would he try to do?

Look at God’s plan of salvation for humanity again. God’s purpose in creating humans is to have them eventually become part of His family as His immortal, divine sons and daughters. And the only way they can become His literal sons and daughters is to first develop His holy, righteous, godly character in them. Human beings do that by learning to completely surrender to God and obeying His Law. Obeying God’s law means to not sin, because John describes sin in 1 John 3:4. He writes: “4 Whosoever commits sin transgresses also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.” The NKJV translates this verse as: “4 Whoever commits sin also commits lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness.”

Thus to become members of God’s family, human beings must eventually become sinless as God the Father and Jesus Christ are sinless. We can never become sinless as physical human beings because our mental and physical capacities are severely limited. Only Jesus Christ remained sinless as a human being because God gave Him His holy spirit without measure (John 3:34). In contrast God has given us only a type of down payment (earnest) of His holy spirit at present (2 Corinthians 1:22, 5:5). But when we have demonstrated by our attitudes and actions that we want to develop holy and righteous character in ourselves, we will have qualified to become God’s spirit born immortal sons. Then at the resurrection God will change our composition to spirit beings with a full measure of His holy spirit. Then we will have the mental capacity as well as other powers multiplied trillions of times to enable us to remain sinless.

*Why Sinlessness?*

But you may ask why God has such an emphasis on sinlessness? The answer is quite simple. Any transgression of God’s law, or any form of lawlessness always brings pain and suffering without fail. We cannot have perfect love, peace, joy and happiness when there is any form of sin present in us.

As long as there is even an iota of sin present in any of God’s sons, God’s family cannot live the kind of life God prophesied in Revelation 21:3-4: “3 "Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people. God Himself will be with them and be their God. 4 And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes; there shall be no more death, nor sorrow, nor crying. There shall be no more pain, for the former things have passed away."

That is the kind of family God is purposing and is working to create. He wants a family that does not experience tears, pain, suffering and sorrow which the rebellion of Satan and the demons brought into the universe. And becoming part of God’s family involves our free choice. Each and every human being has to choose to become a part of God’s family when God sends that human being His invitation by calling him. Those who choose not to by rebelling against God and His law will not become a part of His family.

*Why Does Not God Simply Forgive Sin?*

Many Muslim scholars have questioned the need for the sacrifice of Jesus Christ to forgive our sins. They have said that God can simply forgive sin if He chooses to. Jesus Christ’s sacrifice is not needed for that purpose.

Can you imagine God simply forgiving a murderer, or a thief for his murder and theft? He can commit another murder or theft and God can simply forgive him again. Can you imagine such a sinner being granted eternal life as God’s son and free to continue in his behavior with God continually forgiving his sin every time? How about the victims? Would their tears, pain, suffering and sorrow ever cease? I hope Muslim scholars realize how foolish this argument is.

A law is designed to deter unlawful behavior. Until there is a penalty for violation of the law, the law cannot act as a deterrent to sinful behavior. God cannot have a perfectly sinless family as long as sin remains. That is why He has prescribed the death penalty for any violation of His Law. Either human beings choose to become sinless with God’s help, or the death penalty will be applied to their violations of the Law. Their lives will be permanently extinguished in the Lake of Fire.

The death penalty has to be paid for all our sins. Otherwise what good is a law if penalty for its violation is not enforced? Each and every human being has sinned. As a result, each and every human being has incurred the death penalty. And that penalty could be paid for all only by their Creator whose life was of more value than all His creation put together.

If God simply forgives the sins of each and every human being, He will not have the perfect family He has planned. ***Without the death penalty for sin, humans will not have the need for avoiding sin indelibly impressed on their minds.*** Therefore, to make His purposes stand, He and His son planned the sacrifice of His son Jesus Christ.

*How would Satan Try to Thwart God’s Purposes?*

Now let’s come back to the question we asked earlier: How would Satan the adversary of God try to thwart God’s purpose of creating His family that is free of tears, pain, suffering and sorrow?

Satan’s first tactic would be to try to convince humanity that God does not have any such purpose as reproducing Himself and have many more sons and daughters added to His family. To do so, he first denies that God is a family.

Islam is the only religion that in the Quran addresses the writings of the Jews and Christians in the Bible as well as some of their beliefs. The fact that the Quran directly contradicts what is written in the Bible means that if the writings of the Quran are inspired by the true God, then the writings of the Bible are not inspired by God but inspired by Satan. On the other hand, if the Bible is inspired and backed up by the power of Almighty God, then the Quran is inspired by Satan directly.

But we have earlier proved that the Bible is inspired and backed up by the power of Almighty God. This then means that the Quran is inspired by Satan because it specifically attacks the Bible. It directly attacks the Bible by saying such things as the Bible was altered, when there is no such evidence. What is in dispute in what has been transmitted down to our time constitutes only about half a page in nearly 1,500 pages and does not alter the meaning or interpretation of any doctrine at all.

Satan inspired the Quran to contradict the Bible to try to deceive humanity into believing that God has no such purpose as reproducing Himself through humanity to become His sons and daughters and joint heirs of the universe with His Son Jesus Christ. Satan knows that God created humanity to replace him and the demons as rulers over the earth first and then the universe after that, as Deuteronomy 4:19 quoted earlier states. By claiming that the Bible has been corrupted he is trying to deceive humanity into throwing away God’s instruction manual so that man would not learn God’s purpose for him.

How else would Satan try to convince humanity that God’s purpose is not to add human beings as members of His family? He tries to deny that God is a family. He has done this by saying in the Quran that God is one God, and it is beneath Him to have sons. That is why He denies that Jesus Christ is God’s son. That is why he tries to deny that Jesus Christ is also God. Because if Jesus Christ is not God, then He is not a member of the God family!

These are the lies Satan propagates through the Quran to try to thwart God’s purpose in adding more sons and daughters to His family. If human beings don’t understand God’s purpose in creating them, then they will not choose to give their cooperation and surrender to Him in letting Him create His perfect, holy righteous character in them.

To fulfill God’s purpose, humanity has to ultimately become perfect and sinless as God the Father and Jesus Christ are perfect and sinless. But to accomplish that human beings must first have their sins forgiven, and also have it indelibly imprinted on their minds that any sin will incur the death penalty. To have their sins forgiven, the penalty for sin had to be paid. Only a Being greater than all of humanity could pay the death penalty on behalf of all humans. And that Being, Jesus Christ, the God of the Old Testament, Creator of the spirit world, the entire material universe and humanity, paid the death penalty on behalf of His creation. That is why the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ are crucial to Christianity.

Perhaps now you can understand why God’s adversary would concoct lies to try to convince humanity that Jesus Christ did not die on the cross or was resurrected.

We only have the Quran’s words without any proof that Jesus Christ did not die on the cross but was called to heaven by God. However, we have amply proved that the words of the Quran are not backed by the power of Almighty God. Now we can understand what Satan’s motive was to cunningly craft such lies in the Quran. He is trying to convince humanity that Jesus Christ did not die on the cross. There is no such thing as the penalty for humanity’s sins being paid on its behalf. This means that God can simply forgive humanity’s sins, since the Quran in many places calls Allah the merciful, forgiving and beneficent.

If God simply forgives sins, then human beings will continue sinning and expecting their sins will be forgiven. Without the death penalty it was impossible to impress on human beings the deep need to stop committing sin. Without impressing on human beings that the penalty for any violation of God’s laws is death, human beings would not fully understand how abhorrent sin is to God and should be to us and that we must end sin in our lives with God’s help. Those who end it will become sons of God. Those who do not deeply understand the need to end it and continue in sin will have the death penalty ultimately applied to them.

We hope Muslims can now understand why there was a need for the death of Jesus Christ, and why the adversary of God tries to convince humanity otherwise in his cunningly crafted lies in the Quran.

But after death, why was the resurrection of Jesus Christ necessary?

***Why Jesus Christ’s resurrection was Necessary***

The foremost reason for Jesus Christ’s resurrection is the faith and trust for God it develops in us. If God the Father had not resurrected Jesus Christ how could we trust a God who let His Son die without giving Him life again? Jesus Christ’s resurrection assures us that God the Father cares for us and has Almighty power to kill and make alive (Deuteronomy 32:39), and resurrect weak human beings, as Jesus Christ was when He came to earth as a human being, into powerful beings as Jesus Christ is now, as His literal immortal sons. So, the foremost reason for the resurrection is that we can totally and completely trust in God to fulfill His promises and have faith that He has the power to perform them.

The second reason for Jesus Christ’s resurrection is that He can now live His life in us through his power, the holy spirit. Jesus Christ has experienced life as a human being. So He knows our frame and our frailties and temptations. He knows what it will take for each of us to overcome sin. He literally lives His life through us with the power of His holy spirit to enable us to put on His mind, overcome sin and become more like Him to eventually become the sons of God.

The third reason for the resurrection is that Jesus Christ functions as our faithful High Priest and advocate for us with the Father. He intercedes for us with the Father to forgive us our sins so that we can continue living and overcoming sin and developing godly character. He knows how weak our frame is. When He pleads with God the Father to give us another chance to overcome a particular sin, God the Father listens and grants Jesus’ wish because He has experienced similar temptations in His life as a human being. That’s why He can be a faithful advocate with the Father for us.

John states in 1John 2:1: “1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:”

Hebrews 2:17-18 (NIV) states: “17 For this reason he had to be made like his brothers in every way, in order that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in service to God, and that he might make atonement for the sins of the people. 18 Because he himself suffered when he was tempted, he is able to help those who are being tempted.”

Fourth reason why Jesus’s resurrection was necessary is that because Jesus Christ lived life as a human being and is also God, God the Father has committed all judgment about our qualification to receive eternal life into the hands of Jesus Christ. And it is Jesus Christ who will grant us eternal life as well. God the Father has given this honor also to Jesus Christ. This is stated in John 5:21-22 (NKJV): “21 For as the Father raises the dead and gives life to them, even so the Son gives life to whom He will. 22 For the Father judges no one, but has committed all judgment to the Son.”

Finally, one of the most important reasons for the resurrection of Jesus Christ and its timing is that God’s offer of salvation to human beings through a resurrection to eternal life has become real to them. It energized Jesus’ disciples. Islam says that salvation means going to paradise. But there is no proof that any such paradise exists. Hindus says salvation is to stop the cycle of birth and death to finally merge with the great soul it calls God. But there is no proof that any of the dead has achieved this salvation. However, the resurrection of Jesus Christ provides us proof of the salvation that God offers to human beings. It is proof that God will turn physical human beings into His own immortal sons as spirit beings through a resurrection and has the power to do so. We can therefore trust Him to deliver on the salvation He offers to us.

Thus, we see that both the death and then the resurrection of Jesus Christ are crucial to God’s plan of salvation for mankind. That’s why God’s adversary works diligently to deny the death and resurrection with outright lies.

**CHAPTER 15**

**Proofs of the Crucifixion and Death of Jesus**

Muslims claim that either Jesus Christ survived the crucifixion, or someone in His place was crucified. We will see from the biblical account that the man who was crucified was Jesus Christ and He indeed died. The account will show that Jesus Christ could not have survived all that He went through. We will look at the following seven proofs that Jesus Christ actually died on the cross and did not survive it.

1) Reliability of the source.

2) Crucifixion was an agonizing, excruciatingly painful experience.

3) According to the biblical account, besides being crucified, Jesus Christ was actually killed by a spear to His side.

4) Death at the hands of Roman torturers and executioners was certain. They knew how to kill a man, and that was the task assigned to them. They made sure He was dead.

5) One of Jesus Christ’s disciples and many women were eye-witnesses of His death. They knew He was dead. They knew that it was Jesus Christ who was crucified and was dead. Eye-witnesses also included the chief priests and other Jewish leaders. He was even buried by a prominent one among them, who was a member of the Sanhedrin.

6) Jesus’ disciples and women knew that He was laid in a tomb and where the tomb was, and that the tomb was guarded by Roman soldiers.

7) And finally, God prophesied the coming and death of Jesus Christ in many Old Testament prophecies. God the Father assured that Jesus Christ died for the sins of mankind, and Jesus Christ knew that was the very reason He came to earth.

Let’s look at each of these proofs.

***1) Reliability of the Source***

We have already proved that the Bible is the word of God, whereas the Quran is not. Therefore, when we evaluate the reliability of the two sources for the account of events surrounding the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, we must accept the account in the Bible and reject the lies in the Quran.

***2) The Crucifixion was an Excruciating Experience***

*The Beatings and Scourging Before the Crucifixion*

Jesus Christ’s crucifixion and death was a public event witnessed by the Jewish leaders who wanted Him dead, Roman soldiers and officers whose job it was to ensure that He was dead, common Jewish folk, women among Jesus Christ’s family and friends and even one of the twelve witnessed that He died on the cross and knew where He was laid in a tomb. It was not done secretly in a corner. Even before Jesus Christ was crucified, He went through a trial by the Jews, then by the Roman governor Pilate, then by King Herod who happened to be in Jerusalem at that time. He was severely beaten during these trials and finally scourged, before being crucified. Let’s look at a description of these events in the Bible.

Before His scourging by Roman soldiers, Jesus Christ had suffered beatings and savage treatment at the hands of the Jews. He was first tried before the Jewish Sanhedrin. After the Jewish High Priest pronounced Him worthy of death because He admitted that He was the Christ, His treatment at the hands of Jews at the trial is described in Matthew 26:67-68 (NKJV): “67 Then they spat in His face and beat Him; and others struck Him with the palms of their hands [meaning slapped Him on His face as hard as they could], 68 saying, "Prophesy to us, Christ! Who is the one who struck You?"

The extent of this beating is indicated in the prophecy of Isaiah 50:6: "I offered my back to those who beat me, my cheeks to those who pulled out my beard; I did not hide my face from mocking and spitting" (NIV).

The Sanhedrin then turned over Jesus to the Romans to be tried because the Jewish leaders could not pass the death sentence on any one. After His trial before Pilate, Jesus Christ was given over to Roman soldiers to be scourged before being crucified.

Here is a description of the Roman scourging from the United Church of God (UCG) booklet titled “*Jesus Christ: the Real Story*”:

“Death at the hands of Roman torturers and executioners was certain and could come from several causes. Journalist Lee Strobel, in an interview with Dr. Alexander Metherell, describes the death of Jesus from a medical point of view (*The Case for Christ*, 1998, pp. 193-200).

“Jesus had been beaten repeatedly and lashed with a Roman scourge before His crucifixion (Matthew 27:26). The leather scourge, a type of whip, was designed to inflict maximum pain and damage on the victim. It was braided with pieces of bone and metal woven into the ends that tore into the flesh with each stroke. The scourge would rip into the underlying muscles and produce strips of quivering, bleeding flesh.

“Eusebius, a third-century historian, reports that "the sufferer's veins were laid bare, and the very muscles, sinews, and bowels of the victim were open to exposure" (quoted by Strobel, p. 193). Many victims would die from the scourging before they could be crucified.

“The extreme pain, coupled with loss of blood, would often cause the victim to go into shock—his blood pressure would drop and cause fainting, collapse and intense thirst. The Gospels record that Jesus experienced these symptoms on His way to Golgotha. Weakened to the point of collapse, He couldn't bear the weight of the beam He was carrying and a bystander, Simon of Cyrene, was forced to carry it part of the way for Him (Mark 15:21). When He was crucified, He said, "I thirst" (John 19:28).

God prophesied this type of treatment of the Christ in Isaiah 52:14 (*Revised English Bible*): "His form, disfigured, lost all human likeness; his appearance so changed he no longer looked like a man." What this tells us is that He was so badly beaten, so bloodied and maimed, that He was scarcely recognizable as a human being.”

“Pilate appears to have thought that when he had Jesus brought out to the crowd after the beatings and scourging, He would present such a pitiable spectacle that it would satiate His accusers' thirst for blood (John 19:1, 4-6). But their hatred of the bloodied man from Nazareth would not be satisfied. They insisted He be crucified.”

Pilate then handed Jesus Christ over to the Roman soldiers to be crucified. The Roman soldiers then further treated Jesus Christ brutally because He was now a man condemned to die. That brutal treatment is described in Matthew 27:27-31 (NIV): “27 Then the governor's soldiers took Jesus into the Praetorium and gathered the whole company of soldiers around him. 28 They stripped him and put a scarlet robe on him, 29 and then twisted together a crown of thorns and set it on his head. They put a staff in his right hand and knelt in front of him and mocked him. "Hail, king of the Jews!" they said. 30 They spit on him, and took the staff and struck him on the head again and again. 31 After they had mocked him, they took off the robe and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him away to crucify him.”

*The Agony of the Crucifixion*

According to Dr. Alexander Metherell, a medical doctor quoted by Lee Strobel in his book “*A Case for Christ*”, p. 196, (as quoted in the UCG booklet) “Because of the terrible effects of these beatings and the scourging, from a medical standpoint Jesus would have already been in serious to critical condition even before He was taken away to be crucified.

“In a crucifixion, the Romans typically used iron nails, five to seven inches long and about three eighths of an inch square, driven into the victim's wrists and feet to fasten him to the wooden members.” Nails were driven into the wrists, between the arm bones, because the hands themselves could not support the weight of the body.

“The nails pounded through the wrists would have crushed the median nerve, the largest nerve going to the hand, causing indescribable pain. "The pain was absolutely unbearable," says Dr. Metherell. "In fact, it was literally beyond words to describe; they had to invent a new word: excruciating. Literally, excruciating means 'out of the cross…' Nails driven through the feet would have brought similar pain.

“Because of body weight and the stress produced on the body from being hung by His arms, Jesus Christ’s arms would have stretched several inches and both His shoulders dislocated.

“The prophecy of Christ's suffering in Psalm 22:14 refers to this exact condition: "I am poured out like water, and all My bones are out of joint; My heart is like wax; it has melted within me."

“Dr. Metherell continues with a description of the agonies Jesus endured: "Once a person is hanging in the vertical position...crucifixion is essentially an agonizingly slow death by asphyxiation (which means dying due to inability to breathe normally). The reason is that the stresses on the muscles and diaphragm put the chest into the inhaled position; basically, in order to exhale, the individual must push up on his feet so the tension on the muscles would be eased for a moment. In doing so, the nail would tear through the foot, eventually locking up against the tarsal bones.

"After managing to exhale, the person would then be able to relax down and take another breath in. Again, he'd have to push himself up to exhale, scraping his bloodied back against the coarse wood of the cross. This would go on and on until complete exhaustion would take over, and the person wouldn't be able to push up and breathe anymore" (Strobel, pp. 265-266).

That is how excruciating a death by crucifixion is. After the beating, the brutal scourging by Roman soldiers that sometimes killed the victims, Jesus was so exhausted and weakened that He was even unable to carry His cross the full way. The Roman soldiers forced Simon of Cyrene to carry the cross part of the way. Then Jesus was crucified around 9.00 a.m. to begin suffering further agony. He was on the cross for about 6 hours and died around 3.00 p.m. But crucifixion is not what finally killed Jesus Christ on the cross.

***3) The Cause of Jesus' Death***

As was common for the victims, many died from the trauma of the crucifixion or eventually suffocated because of inability to breathe normally. Many people assume that is how Jesus died on the cross. But that is not what eventually killed Him.

As with many other aspects of Jesus’ life, God had prophesied many details of His crucifixion and death which will be covered in detail later. God had also prophesied how Jesus would die on the cross. Zechariah the prophet talking about the people of Jerusalem wrote in Zechariah 12:10: "They will look on me, the one they have pierced" (NIV).

The Bible speaks of the great importance of Jesus Christ's shed blood. In Acts 20:28, Paul warns the Church pastors to shepherd the ‘Church of God which Jesus has purchased with His own blood.” Peter the apostle says in 1 Peter 1:18-19 (NKJV): “18 knowing that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, like silver or gold, from your aimless conduct received by tradition from your fathers, 19 but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.”

Jesus Himself said that the wine of the New Testament Passover represented "my blood...which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins" (Matthew 26:28, NIV). Clearly pouring out of Jesus’ blood for the sins of humanity was the central focus of Christ's sacrifice.

This is how John describes how Jesus died in John 19:30-37 (NKJV): “30 So when Jesus had received the sour wine, He said, "It is finished!" And bowing His head, He gave up His spirit. 31 Therefore, because it was the Preparation Day, that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), the Jews asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away. 32 Then the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first and of the other who was crucified with Him. 33 But when they came to Jesus and saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs. 34 But one of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out. 35 And he who has seen has testified, and his testimony is true; and he knows that he is telling the truth, so that you may believe. 36 For these things were done that the Scripture should be fulfilled, "Not one of His bones shall be broken." 37 And again another Scripture says, "They shall look on Him whom they pierced."

John’s description of the event makes it appear that Jesus died on the cross and then later was stabbed by one of the Roman soldiers, "bringing a sudden flow of blood and water" (verse 34, NIV). But the problem with this interpretation of events is that once the heart has stopped its pumping action after death, dead bodies no longer bleed like that. So, Jesus’s blood could not have been poured out. The explanation is provided in the UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” p.38-39:

“This problem is resolved when we consider many older manuscripts of Matthew's Gospel, which contain words that appear in a few Bible translations but were left out of most modern versions. These missing words tell us the proper sequence of events.

“The *Twentieth Century New Testament*, which includes these words, reads: "And about three [o'clock in the afternoon] Jesus called out loudly: 'Eloi, Eloi, lama sabacthani'—that is to say, 'O my God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?' Some of those standing by heard this, and said [mistakenly]: 'The man is calling for Elijah!'

"One of them immediately ran and took a sponge, and, filling it with common wine, put it on the end of a rod, and offered it to him to drink. But the rest said: 'Wait and let us see if Elijah is coming to save him.' However, another man took a spear, and pierced his side; and water and blood flowed from it. But Jesus, uttering another loud cry, gave up his spirit" (Matthew 27:46-50).

“The words missing in the modern translations are “However another man took a spear, and pierced his side; and water and blood flowed from it.” These words show the correct sequence of events: that Jesus was stabbed in the side with a spear, uttered a loud cry and then died. Other versions that contain the missing words include the Moffatt Translation and the Rotherham Emphasized Bible, and various other Bible versions include a footnote or marginal reference noting the omitted words.

“So, does Matthew's account conflict with John's? No. Both describe the same events, but from different perspectives.

“Matthew jumps immediately from Jesus' death to a description of the temple veil being torn in half, while John focuses on the fact that, in contrast to the two criminals crucified with Jesus, not one of His bones was broken. John then explains parenthetically how Jesus had already died so that His bones did not need to be broken in fulfillment of the prophecy in Psalm 34:20 and the symbolism of the Passover lambs, which were to be slain and not have a single bone broken, because His side had been pierced with a spear in fulfillment of the prophecy in Zechariah 12:10.”

The Passover lambs that had their blood shed to save the Israelites (Exodus 12:6-7, 13) pictured Jesus as, "the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world" (John 1:29).

*The Final Fatal Blow*

What was this final, fatal thrust like that ended Jesus' life? The UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” continues:

“John Lyle Cameron, M.D., explains: "The soldier was a Roman: he would be well trained, proficient, and would know his duty. He would know which part of the body to pierce in order that he might obtain a speedily fatal result or ensure that the victim was undeniably dead...

"The soldier, standing below our crucified Lord as He hung on the cross, would thrust upwards under the left ribs. The broad, clean cutting, two-edged spearhead would enter the left side of the upper abdomen, would open the...stomach, would pierce the diaphragm, would cut, wide open, the heart and great blood vessels, arteries and veins..., and would lacerate the lung.

"The wound would be large enough to permit the open hand to be thrust into it [compare John 20:24-27]. Blood...together with water from the...stomach, would flow forth in abundance. The whole event as described by St. John must, indeed, have happened, for no writer could have presented in such coherent detail so recognizable an event, unless he or someone had actually witnessed its occurrence" (quoted by R.V.G. Tasker, *Tyndale New Testament Commentaries*: John, 2000, pp. 212-213).

The idea that Jesus didn't really die, that He fainted or was drugged and was later resuscitated as Muslims try to theorize, has no basis in fact when you consider the clear statements that He died. The apostle John had been an eyewitness to that death, having been right there with others as these events unfolded (John 19:25-27, 35).

As quoted earlier John said in John 19:35: “35 And he who has seen has testified, and his testimony is true; and he knows that he is telling the truth, so that you may believe.”

John was the disciple Jesus loved (John 21:20). He certainly would have known that the man who died on the cross was Jesus Christ, not someone substituted in His place.

So far we have seen that the crucifixion itself was an excruciating experience, which in Jesus’s case was preceded by brutal beatings and Roman scourging that many times killed its victims. Then Jesus was actually killed with the thrust of a spear, the mode of death which God had prophesied.

For the next proof let’s see how Roman soldiers made sure that Jesus was dead.

***4) The Roman Execution***

After the scourging when the Roman Governor Pilate had brought Jesus before the people, he wanted to release Him, but the people cried out for Him to be crucified. Then John 19:16 says: “16 Then he delivered Him to them to be crucified.”

Being crucified meant Jesus was condemned to die by crucifixion. A Roman centurion was put in charge of the execution with Roman soldiers to assist him. Romans were very thorough with their executions because Roman law required the death penalty for a soldier failing to carry out the sentence. The Roman centurion and his soldiers were putting their own lives at risk if they failed to carry out the execution of Jesus Christ.

Severity of Roman discipline for failing to carry out the task assigned is illustrated in an example in the Bible. Acts 12 describes an incident in which king Herod had put Peter in prison. But at night an angel came and brought Peter out of jail. Then the next morning the people wondered what had become of Peter. Acts 12:18-19 (NKJV) then describes what happened: “18 Then, as soon as it was day, there was no small stir among the soldiers about what had become of Peter. 19 But when Herod had searched for him and not found him, he examined the guards and commanded that they should be put to death.”

Herod had the entire guard executed because they had let one prisoner escape. Another incident took place in the life of Paul, described in Acts 16:22-28 (NKJV), when Paul and Silas were put in prison “22 Then the multitude rose up together against them [that is Paul and Silas]; and the magistrates tore off their clothes and commanded them to be beaten with rods. 23 And when they had laid many stripes on them, they threw them into prison, commanding the jailer to keep them securely. 24 Having received such a charge, he put them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks. 25 But at midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the prisoners were listening to them. 26 Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened and everyone's chains were loosed. 27 And the keeper of the prison, awaking from sleep and seeing the prison doors open, supposing the prisoners had fled, drew his sword and was about to kill himself. 28 But Paul called with a loud voice, saying, "Do yourself no harm, for we are all here."

Here we see the reaction of the jailor when he thought the prisoners had escaped. He knew the sentence for him was death if the prisoners had escaped. So he thought he was better off dead by his own hand rather than be put to death by Roman soldiers.

Therefore, one should not doubt that the centurion and the soldiers charged with the execution of Jesus would have made sure that He did not survive the crucifixion. That was made sure in many ways.

Jesus was crucified around 9 am. Then from 12 noon to 3 pm there had been an earthquake and there was darkness over the land. The Jewish holy day feast, the first Day of Unleavened Bread was approaching at sunset. The Jewish authorities who were witnessing the crucifixion wanted the three being crucified to die quickly because they and the people wanted to hasten home to keep the Feast.

John states in 19:30-23 (NKJV): “31 Therefore, because it was the Preparation Day, that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), the Jews asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away. 32 Then the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first and of the other who was crucified with Him. 33 But when they came to Jesus and saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs.”

Thus because of the darkness in the land, and the approaching holy day, the Jews obtained permission from Pilate to break the legs of the three being crucified to speed up their death. The Roman soldiers broke the legs of the two robbers crucified with Jesus, but Jesus was already dead. The reason was that in the darkness, one of the Roman soldiers had already pierced Jesus’s side with his spear. When the soldiers came to break the legs of the three men, they found Jesus to be already dead. Roman soldiers knew when a man was dead. They knew He was not breathing. Labored breathing would be visible on the cross. When the man was not breathing, he would be still. The Roman soldiers made sure that Jesus was dead. The Roman executioners were experts who knew when a man was dead.

Some have claimed that the Roman soldiers were actually trying to save Jesus’ life by not breaking His legs. Why would the Roman centurion and the soldiers with him try to do that because they knew that in doing so they would be signing their own death warrants? Moreover, Jesus was perceived as a threat to the Roman Empire, because if He gained a following, the Romans would have the fear that he would lead an insurrection against Roman rule as others had done in the past. You can be sure the Roman soldiers charged with executing Him wanted Him dead and they made sure of that. The Roman soldier who pierced His side with a spear was also making doubly sure of that.

After Jesus was dead, Joseph of Arimathea went to Pilate and begged him to give Jesus’ body to him. Mark 15:42- 45 (NKJV) describes Pilate’s reaction and what happened: “42 Now when evening had come, because it was the Preparation Day, that is, the day before the Sabbath, 43 Joseph of Arimathea, a prominent council member, who was himself waiting for the kingdom of God, coming and taking courage, went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. 44 Pilate marveled that He was already dead; and summoning the centurion, he asked him if He had been dead for some time. 45 So when he found out from the centurion, he granted the body to Joseph.”

On hearing the request from Joseph of Arimathea, Pilate was somewhat surprised that Christ was already dead. To make sure that He was dead, he called the centurion charged with His execution to confirm it. The Centurion who witnessed the execution would have confirmed it earlier with the soldiers that Jesus was dead for sure. Only after Pilate confirmed that Jesus had been dead for some time did he give permission to Joseph of Arimathea to take the body. Joseph of Arimathea, a very rich and prominent member of the Sanhedrin certainly knew who Jesus was, that He was dead, and knew that he had laid the dead body of Jesus in his own tomb.

***5) Eye-Witnesses to Jesus’ Death***

The next proof that Jesus died on the cross is that there were numerous eye-witnesses of His death from all walks of life. These eye-witnesses included Romans, top Jewish leaders, many common Jewish folk who walked by throughout the time He was on the cross, many women who were His relatives and among those who ministered to Him during His three-and-a-half-year ministry, Jesus’ own mother, and even John the apostle, one of His twelve disciples.

The Jews were not allowed to sentence a man to death. That is why the Jewish leaders had to take Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor, to have Him sentenced to death by crucifixion. To carry out the death sentence a Roman Centurion was put in charge with Roman soldiers. They had to make sure that the sentence was carried out and Jesus indeed died on the wooden cross or beam. Here is the account from the Bible that the centurion witnessed the crucifixion and death.

Matthew 27:54: “54 Now when the centurion, and they that were with him, watching Jesus, saw the earthquake, and those things that were done, they feared greatly, saying, Truly this was the Son of God.”

The parallel account in Mark 15:39 (NKJV) states: “39 So when the centurion, who stood opposite Him, saw that He cried out like this and breathed His last, he said, "Truly this Man was the Son of God!"

The centurion did see and make sure that Jesus had breathed His last on the cross. Matthew also mentions there were others with the centurion, which obviously means Roman soldiers who were charged with carrying out the execution. Here are the other references to soldiers witnessing the crucifixion and death.

Luke 23:36-37 (NKJV): “36 The soldiers also mocked Him, coming and offering Him sour wine, 37 and saying, "If You are the King of the Jews, save Yourself."

John the apostle provides more details in John 19:23-24 (NKJV): “23 Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took His garments and made four parts, to each soldier a part, and also the tunic. Now the tunic was without seam, woven from the top in one piece. 24 They said therefore among themselves, "Let us not tear it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be," that the Scripture might be fulfilled which says: "They divided My garments among them, And for My clothing they cast lots." Therefore the soldiers did these things.”

Matthew 27:35-36 also repeats soldiers casting lots for Jesus’ clothing.

These accounts tell us that the Roman soldiers were keeping watch to make sure that no one rescued Jesus Christ from the cross and that He died on it. They also taunted Him occasionally and divided His garments but cast lots for His top garment. John even mentions that the number of soldiers was four, in addition to the centurion.

Then Jesus Christ’ eye-witnesses included Jewish leaders, even the chief priests. Matthew 27:41-43 (NKJV) states: “41 Likewise also the chief priests mocking him, with the scribes and elders, said, 42 He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the cross, and we will believe him. 43 He trusted in God; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said, I am the Son of God.”

Notice again, among the crowd that witnessed His crucifixion and death were the chief priests, the scribes and elders [which would have included members of the Sanhedrin, the highest Jewish court of justice]. They wanted Jesus dead and watched Him die on the cross.

Besides the Jewish leaders, a great many of the common folk also followed Jesus witnessed the crucifixion. Luke writes in Luke 23:27, 35 NKJV): “27 And a great multitude of the people followed Him, and women who also mourned and lamented Him, Verse 35: “And the people stood looking on.”

In addition to the multitudes Luke 23:49 states: “49 And all his acquaintance, and the women that followed him from Galilee, stood afar off, beholding these things.” This means that many of Jesus’ acquaintances and relatives witnessed these events. They certainly would have known that it was Jesus who was crucified and died on the cross.

The number of the common people who witnessed the crucifixion may have numbered in the thousands, and hundreds could have stayed right till the very end till Jesus died. Remember this was the time of the feast of the Passover and the feast of Unleavened Bread. Huge crowds would have been gathered in Jerusalem from all over the land and even from other nations for the Feasts. They knew Jesus because of the many miracles He had done throughout the land. That’s why the number of witnesses to the crucifixion would have numbered in the thousands.

Many of Jesus’ acquaintances, family and close relatives, including His own mother and aunt witnessed the crucifixion till His death. All the gospels mention this fact. John says in John 19: 25-27 (NKJV): “25 Now there stood by the cross of Jesus His mother, and His mother's sister, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene. 26 When Jesus therefore saw His mother, and the disciple whom He loved standing by, He said to His mother, "Woman, behold your son!" 27 Then He said to the disciple, "Behold your mother!" And from that hour that disciple took her to his own home.”

Mark provides slightly different details in Mark 15:40-41 (NKJV): “40 There were also women looking on from afar, among whom were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James the Less and of Joses, and Salome, 41 who also followed Him and ministered to Him when He was in Galilee, and many other women who came up with Him to Jerusalem.”

Matthew 27:55-56 (NKJV) states: “55 And many women who followed Jesus from Galilee, ministering to Him, were there looking on from afar, 56 among whom were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James and Joses, and the mother of Zebedee's sons.”

Again, remember this was the time of the feast of the Passover and the feast of Unleavened Bread. Many women had come to Jerusalem from Galilee to keep these feasts with Jesus. They all witnessed His crucifixion and certainly stayed till His death. That is proved by the fact that they even followed to see where He was laid in the tomb. Matthew states in 27:59-60 (NKJV): “59 When Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, 60 and laid it in his new tomb which he had hewn out of the rock; and he rolled a large stone against the door of the tomb, and departed. 61 And Mary Magdalene was there, and the other Mary [Mark identifies her as the mother of Joses], sitting opposite the tomb.”

Luke writes in 23:55 (NKJV), “And the women who had come with Him from Galilee followed after, and they observed the tomb and how His body was laid.”

So Jesus’ mother, her sister His aunt and other women saw His crucifixion and stayed till He died on the cross. At least two of these women followed when Joseph of Arimathea took His body and laid it in his own tomb so that they could come later to anoint it with spices. All these relatives and friends would have been certain that it was Jesus who died on the cross, not a substitute. All these people would have had to conspire to lie if another man had been substituted for Jesus on the cross. That is so far-fetched.

Joseph of Arimathea, probably the richest member of the Sanhedrin, and thus one of its most prominent members knew Jesus was dead. That is why He begged Pilate for Jesus’s body. He along with Nicodemus, another member of the Sanhedrin had bought spices to bury the body of Jesus. They both knew He had died on the cross. They handled His dead body, carried it to be laid in Joseph’s own tomb. John 19:38-40 says: “38 And after this Joseph of Arimathea, being a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for fear of the Jews, besought Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus: and Pilate gave him leave. He came, therefore, and took the body of Jesus. 39 And there came also Nicodemus, which at the first came to Jesus by night, and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about an hundred pound weight. 40 Then took they the body of Jesus, and wound it in linen clothes with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury.”

This process could have taken more than an hour. So these two members of the Sanhedrin handled Jesus’ dead body for more than an hour. They certainly knew it was Jesus they were handling and that He was dead.

Finally, John, one of the twelve apostles also observed Jesus’s crucifixion and death till the end. As quoted earlier, John wrote in 19:25-27 that Jesus gave charge to the disciple He loved to take care of His mother after He died. Then in John 21:20, 24 (NKJV) he writes “20 Then Peter, turning around, saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following, who also had leaned on His breast at the supper…Then in verse 24 he writes: “24 This is the disciple who testifies of these things, and wrote these things; and we know that his testimony is true.”

John thus clearly identifies himself as the disciple whom Jesus loved, and charged him to take care of His mother after His death and who wrote this account in the gospel. John was there at the cross when Jesus gave him that charge. He witnessed the crucifixion and His death.

With so many eye-witnesses from all walks of life to the crucifixion and death of Jesus on the cross, we can be certain that He indeed died and was laid in the tomb. So many people would not have been fooled into believing that He was dead if He had not actually been crucified and died on the cross. The entire event was held publicly from the time Jesus Christ was arrested for the trial. Nobody would have fooled any one by substituting another man for Jesus on the cross. Those who handled His dead body knew it was Jesus’ body.

***6) Jesus Was Laid in a Tomb***

Sura 4:157-158 in the Quran says, “…they did not kill him nor did they crucify him, but it appeared to them so they killed him not for sure. 158 Nay! Allah took him up to Himself”.

This means that if Allah took Him up to Himself, His body was no longer on the cross. That is one of the ways Muslims interpret this verse. This means that if Jesus’s body was no longer to be found, then it could not have been laid in a tomb. So the fifth proof that Jesus died is that He was laid in a tomb. One does not put a live person in a tomb but a dead one.

Can you imagine the sensation it would have caused if a live man hanging on a cross or beam suddenly vanished into thin air! But there is no mention of any such thing happening in the Bible. For 580 years all the world accepted the events as described in the Bible, till Mohammed came along with his account contradicting them. But the account surrounding the crucifixion, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ that Mohammed brought to the world is totally inconsistent with reality. To try and justify the lie he brought, he had to tell another lie that the account in the Bible was altered. Another mere statement without any proof! On the contrary we have provided a mountain of evidence to prove that the entire Bible has been very carefully preserved and the version we have in the original languages is indeed the inspired word of God.

We have already mentioned the Bible verses about Jesus being laid in the tomb. Members of the Sanhedrin were prominent men among the Jews. And Joseph of Arimathea was a prominent member even among these well-known leaders. He was probably the richest among them. He laid Jesus in his own tomb with his own hands, assisted by Nicodemus, another member of the Sanhedrin. People in Jerusalem would have known where Joseph’s tomb was because he was a famous man. The disciples certainly knew about it because Peter and John visited the tomb after 3 days and 3 nights.

The Jewish leaders, the chief priests and the Pharisees also knew where the tomb was in which Jesus had been laid. They too knew He was dead because they had witnessed Him die on the cross. They knew of the sign Jesus had given to them that He was the Messiah. And the sign was that He would lie in the tomb 3 days and 3 nights and then be resurrected. They wanted to make sure that no hoax was perpetrated by His disciples to make that claim. Matthew describes in 27:62-66 (NIV) the measures they took to prevent that:

“62 The next day, the one after Preparation Day, the chief priests and the Pharisees went to Pilate. 63 "Sir," they said, "we remember that while he was still alive that deceiver said, 'After three days I will rise again.' 64 So give the order for the tomb to be made secure until the third day. Otherwise, his disciples may come and steal the body and tell the people that he has been raised from the dead. This last deception will be worse than the first." 65 "Take a guard," Pilate answered. "Go, make the tomb as secure as you know how." 66 So they went and made the tomb secure by putting a seal on the stone and posting the guard.”

We see there were many eye-witnesses to the fact that Jesus had died and had been laid in a tomb. Only dead men are laid in tombs. Thus Sura 4:157 in the Quran is a blatant lie of the arch deceiver, told to Mohammed, faithfully transmitted by him to his followers.

***7) God Foretold Jesus’ Death in Many Prophecies***

The seventh and final proof that Jesus did indeed die on the cross is that God the Father made sure that He died on the cross. God the Father and Jesus Himself foretold His death in many Old Testament prophecies. If Jesus did not die, then all these prophecies have been unfulfilled. Literally proof of God’s truthfulness and His Almighty Power are at stake. But as God and Jesus Christ fulfilled all their prophecies about ancient empires and nations, they certainly would have made sure to fulfill their prophecies about the life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. Let’s look at specific Old Testament prophecies that foretold the death of the Messiah which Jesus fulfilled.

Peter told the crowd of Jews in Acts 3:18: “18 But those things which God foretold by the mouth of all His prophets, that the Christ would suffer, He has thus fulfilled.”

The UCG booklet: “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” states on p. 16:

“To claim that you are God is one thing—but to convince people that you are indeed what you say you are is quite another. So how did Jesus' closest followers come to be so convinced that they would lay down their lives for that belief?

“Many Old Testament prophecies of the Messiah were fulfilled in precise detail by Jesus of Nazareth. Neither the Jews nor the disciples of Jesus understood at the time that Jesus was fulfilling the messianic prophecies of the Old Testament—even though at times He told them this was the case (Luke 18:31; Matthew 26: 56).

“After Jesus was resurrected, He began to help His disciples understand the Scriptures, and the disciples were inspired to declare that Jesus was indeed the Messiah. The proof they offered was the very Scriptures [or prophecies] they had not previously understood.”

Then on p 18: “The New Testament writers cite messianic prophecies from the Old Testament more than 130 times. By some estimates the Old Testament contains 300 prophetic passages that describe who the Messiah is and what He will do. Of these, 60 are major prophecies. What are the chances of these prophecies being fulfilled in one person?

“…the mathematical odds that all of these prophecies could have converged by chance in the events of the life of Jesus are staggeringly minute—to the point of eliminating any such possibility.

“Astronomer and mathematician Peter Stoner, in his book Science Speaks, offers a mathematical analysis showing that it is impossible that the precise statements about the One to come could be fulfilled in a single person by mere coincidence

.

“The chance of only eight of these dozens of prophecies being fulfilled in the life of one man has been estimated at 1 in 10 to the 17th power. That would be 1 chance in 100,000,000,000,000,000.

“How can we put this in terms we can comprehend? Dr. Stoner illustrates the odds with this scenario: "Take 1017 silver dollars and lay them on the face of Texas [with its approximate land area of 262,000 square miles]. They will cover all of the state two feet deep. Now mark one of these silver dollars and stir the whole mass thoroughly, all over the state. Blindfold a man and tell him that he can travel as far as he wishes, but he must pick up one silver dollar and say that this is the right one.

"What chance would he have of getting the right one? Just the same chance that the prophets would have had of writing these eight prophecies and having them all come true in any one man."

“But that is only eight of the dozens of prophecies of the Messiah. Using the science of probability, the chance of as many as 48 of these prophecies coming to pass in one person is 1 in 10 to the 157th power—a 1 followed by 157 zeros (1963, pp. 100-109).

“One or two fulfillments in Jesus' life could be dismissed as coincidental. But when the instances of fulfilled prophecies are counted up, the law of probability quickly reaches the point where mere probability becomes certainty. This is one of the proofs Jesus was the promised Messiah—the messianic prophecies were accurately and precisely fulfilled in Him.”

Virtually every aspect of Jesus' suffering and death was spelled out in considerable detail centuries before it actually happened. Here are the scriptures that prophesied Jesus’s crucifixion and death:

First of all, the Old Testament sacrifice of lambs at the Passover was a prophecy that Jesus Christ would be the sacrificial Lamb of God who would be sacrificed for the sins of mankind.

John 1:29 tells us, “29 The next day John sees Jesus coming unto him, and says, Behold the Lamb of God, which takes away the sin of the world.” In contrast the Jews expected the Messiah (which means Deliverer) to be a King who would deliver them from the hated Roman rule. They never imagined that the Messiah would first come to deliver them from the bondage of sin by dying for the sins of humanity.

Hebrews 10:4 (NKJV) tells us: “4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats could take away sins.” Then verse 12 says: "But this Man, after He had offered one sacrifice for sins forever, sat down at the right hand of God."

Only the shed blood of the Creator could pay the death penalty for the sins of all His creation. Thus. the Lambs sacrificed at the Passover were a prophecy of the sacrifice of the coming Messiah.

*Prophecies Concerning His betrayal, suffering and death*

Jesus fulfilled many prophecies in the 24 hours before He died. These include:

• *Messiah would be betrayed by a familiar friend*. This was prophesied in Psalm 41:9, "Even my own familiar friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted up his heel against me." This prophecy was fulfilled by Judas Iscariot in John 13.

• *Messiah would be forsaken by His followers* was prophesied in Zechariah 13:7: "Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered." This was fulfilled when all His disciples forsook Him and fled when He was arrested (Mark 14:50).

• *The price of His betrayal would be 30 pieces of silver*. This was prophesied in Zechariah 11:12-13: "…so they weighed out for my wages thirty pieces of silver. 13 And the Lord said to me, "Throw it to the potter"--that princely price they set on me.” This was fulfilled when Judas Iscariot covenanted for 30 pieces of silver with the chief priests to betray Jesus (Matthew 26:14-15).

• *That Messiah would be put to death with criminals* was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "And He was numbered with the transgressors." This was fulfilled when "two robbers were crucified with Him, one on the right and another on the left" (Matthew 27:38).

• *Messiah would be crucified*. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:16: "They pierced My hands and My feet." Remarkably, this prophecy described a form of execution, the crucifixion, which would not come into practice for some 800 years after it was written.

• *Messiah’s body would be pierced*. This was prophesied in (Zechariah 12:10): "They will look on Me whom they pierced". In fulfillment John tells us in John 19:34 that "One of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out."

• *Messiah would be offered vinegar and gall*. This was prophesied in Psalm 69:21: "They also gave me gall for my food, and for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink. This was fulfilled when Jesus was offered vinegar with gall to drink as stated in Matthew 27:34, “34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall.”

• *None of His bones would be broken* was prophesied in Psalm 34:20: "He guards all his bones; not one of them is broken." When the Jews came to break the legs of the 3 crucified men, they did not break Jesus’ legs because He had already died on the cross when the Roman soldier pierced His side with a spear, as described in John 19:32-34.

• *People would cast lots for His clothing*. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:18: "They divide My garments among them, and for My clothing they cast lots". John confirms in John 19:23-24 that this prophecy was fulfilled.

• *Messiah would not retaliate* was prophesied in Isaiah 53:7 (NKJV): "He was oppressed and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth; He was led as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before its shearers is silent, so He opened not His mouth." Its fulfillment is described in Matthew 27:12-14: “12 And while He was being accused by the chief priests and elders, He answered nothing. 13 Then Pilate said to Him, "Do You not hear how many things they testify against You?" 14 But He answered him not one word, so that the governor marveled greatly.”

• *Messiah would pray for those who would have Him put to death*. This was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "He... made intercession for the transgressors." This was fulfilled when Jesus prayed on the cross, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they do." (Luke 23:34).

Thus, we see that the God of the Bible prophesied in detail the manner of the death of the Messiah and all the prophecies were fulfilled in precise detail in the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ. Probabilistically it is impossible for a particular one man to fulfill all the prophecies by mere coincidence. Therefore, we can be certain that Jesus was the prophesied Messiah and He died as God foretold.

God of the Bible is also a truthful God. Paul the apostle tells us in 1 Titus 1:2 that God cannot lie! He simply does not lie.

In contrast to the God of the Bible, compare the Allah of Islam. In Sura 4:157-158 Allah of Islam said: “…they did not kill him nor did they crucify him, but it appeared to them so they killed him not for sure. 158 Nay! Allah took him up to Himself”.

Yusuf Ali’s translation renders the words “but it appeared to them so” as “so it was made to appear to them.” This is also how Muslims interpret this passage. They say that Allah made it appear to the Jews and others who witnessed the event that Jesus was crucified and died on the cross. But He was not actually crucified and did not die because Allah made Him ascend to himself.

Why would Allah feel the need to deceive the Jews into seeing Jesus crucified and dying on the cross, but actually take Him off to ascend to himself? Why would Allah need to deceive anybody? The Koran in this verse thus states that Allah is a deceiver. That actually is the truth. In contrast to the God of the Bible who cannot lie, the Allah of Islam actually states in Sura 4:157-158 that he deceived the Jews into believing that Jesus was crucified and died on the cross when he actually made Him ascend to himself. Thus, Allah of Islam stands exposed as a deceiver. In truth he is deceiving his Muslim followers with his lies in the Quran.

It is tragic that Muslims are willing to accept one mere statement in the Quran in Sura 4:157-158 that Jesus was not crucified and did not die on the cross. They need to critically examine the evidence for the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ and reject the lies in the Quran as told to Mohammed by a lying demon masquerading as the archangel Gabriel. The one who masquerades around as the Allah of Islam is none other than Satan the devil.

**CHAPTER 16**

**Proofs of the Resurrection of Jesus Christ**

The resurrection of Jesus Christ is a unique event in the history of mankind so far. Human beings have great difficulty believing in miraculous events. That is why Muslims want to believe the Quran when it says Jesus Christ did not die and hence was not resurrected.

Even Jesus Christ’s disciples could not imagine the event when Jesus Christ told them in Luke 18:31-34 (NKJV): “31 Then He took the twelve aside and said to them, "Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of Man will be accomplished. 32 For He will be delivered to the Gentiles and will be mocked and insulted and spit upon. 33 They will scourge Him and kill Him. And the third day He will rise again." 34 But they understood none of these things; this saying was hidden from them, and they did not know the things which were spoken.”

The disciples could not imagine a human being dying and then being resurrected into a spirit being. This is the human tendency at work when Muslims are able to easily discredit the version of events in the Bible in their minds and accept what the Quran says. Satan has tried to exploit this human tendency to the hilt in his attempts to deceive mankind. Allah in the Quran cites miraculous events in the Bible as his deeds but cannot cite a single miraculous event that he brought to pass during the life of Mohammed.

How then can we prove that the resurrection of Jesus Christ is a fact? We cannot see the resurrected Jesus Christ today. The event occurred more than 1980 years ago. To find proof for the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ we must examine the account in the Bible to verify that it is consistent with reality of human life and how humans behave under circumstances surrounding such events. We will examine the following seven proofs:

1) The first proof again is the reliability of the source for description of events. The Bible describes the resurrection in great detail. The only religious book that denies the resurrection is the Quran. We will look at the reliability of events surrounding the resurrection as described in the Bible vs. its description in the Quran.

2) The second proof of the resurrection is the empty tomb.

3) The third proof is the large number of witnesses of the resurrected Jesus.

4) The fourth proof is the transformation of Jesus’ disciples from cowards into men of courage who were willing to suffer and die for their conviction that Jesus Christ was crucified, died and was resurrected, and belief that they too would be resurrected if they remained faithful to God till the very end.

5) The fifth proof of the resurrection is the transformation of possibly all 3 of Jesus’ brothers mentioned in the Bible from skeptics into believers, but at least James and Jude who wrote the epistles that bear their names.

6) Sixth proof of the resurrection is the conversion of Paul the apostle, and

7) The seventh proof of the resurrection is the martyrdom of eleven of the 12 apostles, of many early Christians who believed and fellowshipped with the 12 disciples and of many tens of thousands of others over the centuries, and the existence of the Church.

The Christian religion would not exist without the resurrection because it provides the strongest proof of the salvation that the God of the Bible has promised to believers who endure to the end in the faith, which is changing their physical bodies to immortal spirit bodies as He changed the physical body of Jesus Christ to a spirit body through His resurrection.

Witnessing the resurrection of Jesus Christ transformed the lives of the apostles, and belief in the resurrection is the pivotal event that led to the birth of Christianity. So, let’s begin examining these proofs of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

***1) The Reliability of the Source***

The first proof of whether the Bible or the Quran version of events of the resurrection of Jesus Chris is the true one is reliability of the source. We have already proved that the words of the Bible are backed by Almighty God, whereas in the Quran they are not.  Since the words of the Bible are truth, we can accept the description of the resurrection of Jesus Christ in the Bible as the truth.

***2) The Empty Tomb***

The second proof, and one of the strongest ones of the resurrection of Jesus Christ, is the empty tomb.

We saw in the proofs of the death of Jesus Christ that Jesus’ dead body was placed in the tomb of a man famous in Israel, a prominent member of the Sanhedrin, Joseph of Arimathea. Women followed the body of Jesus Christ and knew in which tomb it was laid. There was a huge stone rolled to seal the entrance to the tomb so that people could not easily break into the tomb and steal the body. Then the Jewish High priests and other leaders of the Pharisees made sure that the tomb was guarded by Roman soldiers. But at the end of 3 days and 3 nights, on that Sunday morning the tomb was discovered to be empty, first by women and then by the disciples.

The UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” describes what happened when the tomb was discovered empty on pp 43-44:

“Mark…records for us the detail that three women—Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome—approached the tomb before sunrise to anoint the body of Jesus with spices. Finding the heavy stone rolled away, they entered the tomb and were shocked and afraid when they saw "a young man clothed in a long white robe sitting on the right side." The man told the women, "He is risen!" and instructed them to go and tell Jesus' other disciples (Mark 16:1-8).

“In the society of the day, the testimony of women was held in such low regard that they were not even permitted to serve as witnesses in a court of law. How remarkable it is, then, that women were the acknowledged discoverers of Jesus' empty tomb!

“Had someone fabricated the story at a later date, as many critics assume to have been the case, the plot surely would have made male disciples such as Peter and John the discoverers of the empty tomb. That it was women who were the chief witnesses to the fact of the empty tomb is best explained by the straightforward truth that the women named were indeed the actual discoverers.

“The Gospel writers faithfully recorded what for them was an awkward and potentially embarrassing detail.

“What was the reaction of Jesus' enemies to the disciples' stunning declaration that Jesus was alive again after having been publicly executed?

“Their reaction is very revealing. Did they respond that the disciples were lying, that Jesus' body still lay in the rock-hewn tomb? No. Did they claim that the disciples were hallucinating? No. Instead, they bribed the Roman soldiers responsible for guarding the sealed tomb to spread what they knew was a lie. They told them to spread a cover story, to claim that Jesus' disciples had come and stolen His body while they slept, and that they would cover for the soldiers if they got in trouble with the Roman governor. Jesus' enemies thus acknowledged that the tomb was empty.

The actual resurrection event and what happened to the Roman soldiers guarding the tomb is described by Matthew 28 in verses 1-10 (NIV): “1 After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to look at the tomb. 2 There was a violent earthquake, for an angel of the Lord [Luke says there were actually two angels] came down from heaven and, going to the tomb, rolled back the stone and sat on it. 3 His appearance was like lightning, and his clothes were white as snow. 4 The guards were so afraid of him that they shook and became like dead men.

“5 The angel said to the women, "Do not be afraid, for I know that you are looking for Jesus, who was crucified. 6 He is not here; he has risen, just as he said. Come and see the place where he lay. 7 Then go quickly and tell his disciples: 'He has risen from the dead and is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him.' Now I have told you." 8 So the women hurried away from the tomb, afraid yet filled with joy, and ran to tell his disciples. 9 Suddenly Jesus met them. "Greetings," he said. They came to him, clasped his feet and worshiped him. 10 Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid. Go and tell my brothers to go to Galilee; there they will see me."

The women then went to inform the disciples. When the guards recovered from their fear of the angel whose face shone like lightening and discovered that the stone had been rolled away and that the tomb was empty, the events are then described in Matthew 28:11-15 (NKJV):

“11 Now while they were going, behold, some of the guard came into the city and reported to the chief priests all the things that had happened. [They, the Roman soldiers, reported to the chief priests that they were guarding the tomb and no one had broken into it for the 3 days and 3 nights. But then there was a great earthquake and two beings whose faces shone like lightening came and rolled away the stone. They were afraid of the earthquake and could not look at the faces of the angel and fell down on their faces because they were so afraid. After the beings with the shining faces went away, they investigated the tomb and found it empty.]

Matthew continues with the elders’ reaction: “12 When they had assembled with the elders and consulted together, they gave a large sum of money to the soldiers, 13 saying, "Tell them, 'His disciples came at night and stole Him away while we slept.' 14 And if this comes to the governor's ears, we will appease him and make you secure." 15 So they took the money and did as they were instructed; and this saying is commonly reported among the Jews until this day.”

We should realize that the Jews would have no motive to themselves steal Jesus’ body. They wanted it to rot away. They wanted Him dead and eventually forgotten. The Romans had no motive to steal the body either. Stealing the body by either of them would only have fueled more rumors that He had been resurrected.

If the tomb had not been empty, the Jews and the Romans could simply have produced Jesus’ dead body to nip the stories in the bud that He had been resurrected. But they could not produce His dead body.

Roman soldiers with changing guards were guarding the tomb and they would have made sure that no one broke into the tomb to steal the body of Jesus. In addition, the disciples had proved themselves to be too cowardly [having forsaken Jesus and fled] to have gone past the Roman guards to steal the body. The women could certainly not have done it.

Then John 20:3-7 (NKJV) describes what John and Peter saw: “3 Peter therefore went out, and the other disciple, and were going to the tomb. 4 So they both ran together, and the other disciple outran Peter and came to the tomb first. 5 And he, stooping down and looking in, saw the linen cloths lying there; yet he did not go in. 6 Then Simon Peter came, following him, and went into the tomb; and he saw the linen cloths lying there, 7 and the handkerchief that had been around His head, not lying with the linen cloths, but folded together in a place by itself.”

The linen clothes and the head scarf neatly folded together is hardly the scene that those who wanted to hurriedly steal Jesus’ body would have left behind.

Thus, we see that after 3 days and 3 nights, the body of Jesus Christ was no longer in the tomb. The Jewish leaders or the Roman authorities could not produce Jesus’ body to refute the stories of His resurrection. The best response to the stories of His resurrection they could come up with is that His body was stolen by His disciples. But the disciples were too cowardly to have done so. They would have had to fight the Roman guards to steal the body. But no such story has ever been told. Thus, the empty tomb is one of the strongest proofs of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

***3) Large Number of Witnesses to the Resurrected Jesus***

The third proof of the resurrection of Jesus Christ is that there were a large number of witnesses who had seen the resurrected Jesus.

We have already described in the last proof what happened when women first went to the tomb to anoint Jesus’ body with spices. They found the stone rolled away, were shocked to see two angels with an appearance like lightning who informed them that He is risen as He said He would.

After the women found the tomb empty and the two angels informed them that ‘Jesus had risen,’ they went to the eleven disciples to inform them of the event. As already quoted, John then records in John 20:1-10 (NKJV) that he and Peter went to the tomb and found it empty. Then the disciples went away again to their own homes.

Till now the women, Peter and John had only seen the empty tomb and the women had heard the angels tell them that Jesus had risen from the dead. But no one had seen the risen Christ.

Then John records how Mary Magdalene who still lingered near the tomb after Peter and John had gone to their homes first saw the risen Jesus. John continues in John 20:11-18 (NKJV): “11 But Mary stood outside by the tomb weeping, and as she wept she stooped down and looked into the tomb. 12 And she saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. 13 Then they said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?" She said to them, "Because they have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid Him." 14 Now when she had said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing there, and did not know that it was Jesus.

“15 Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you seeking?" She, supposing Him to be the gardener, said to Him, "Sir, if You have carried Him away, tell me where You have laid Him, and I will take Him away." 16 Jesus said to her, "Mary!" She turned and said to Him, "Rabboni!" (which is to say, Teacher). 17 Jesus said to her, "Do not cling to Me, for I have not yet ascended to My Father; but go to My brethren and say to them, 'I am ascending to My Father and your Father, and to My God and your God.' [Jesus said this because He had not yet risen to God the Father’s throne in heaven to present Himself and be accepted as the offering for the sins of mankind. This needed to be fulfilled because the waive sheaf offering during the days of Unleavened Bread was a prophecy that He would be the first of the firstfruits.] Then John continues: "18 Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that He had spoken these things to her.”

While Mary went to inform the disciples that she had seen the risen Jesus Christ, Jesus met two other disciples. Luke tells that part of the story in great detail in Luke 24:13-32 (NKJV): “13 Now behold, two of them were traveling that same day to a village called Emmaus, which was seven miles from Jerusalem. 14 And they talked together of all these things which had happened. 15 So it was, while they conversed and reasoned, that Jesus Himself drew near and went with them. 16 But their eyes were restrained, so that they did not know Him.

“17 And He said to them, "What kind of conversation is this that you have with one another as you walk and are sad?" 18 Then the one whose name was Cleopas answered and said to Him, "Are You the only stranger in Jerusalem, and have You not known the things which happened there in these days?" 19 And He said to them, "What things?" So they said to Him, "The things concerning Jesus of Nazareth, who was a Prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people, 20 and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered Him to be condemned to death, and crucified Him. 21 But we were hoping that it was He who was going to redeem Israel. Indeed, besides all this, today is the third day since these things happened. 22 Yes, and certain women of our company, who arrived at the tomb early, astonished us. 23 When they did not find His body, they came saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said He was alive. 24 And certain of those who were with us went to the tomb and found it just as the women had said; but Him they did not see."

“25 Then He said to them, "O foolish ones, and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken! 26 Ought not the Christ to have suffered these things and to enter into His glory?" 27 And beginning at Moses and all the Prophets, He expounded to them in all the Scriptures the things concerning Himself. 28 Then they drew near to the village where they were going, and He indicated that He would have gone farther. 29 But they constrained Him, saying, "Abide with us, for it is toward evening, and the day is far spent." And He went in to stay with them. 30 Now it came to pass, as He sat at the table with them, that He took bread, blessed and broke it, and gave it to them. 31 Then their eyes were opened, and they knew Him; and He vanished from their sight. 32 And they said to one another, "Did not our heart burn within us while He talked with us on the road, and while He opened the Scriptures to us?"

After being seen by these two disciples, they went and told the 11 disciples. Luke continues in verse 33:

“33 So they rose up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven and those who were with them gathered together, 34 saying, "The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon!" 35 And they told about the things that had happened on the road, and how He was known to them in the breaking of bread.”

Luke continues with the rest of the story, but John also records it in John 20:18-31 (NKJV): “18 Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that He had spoken these things to her. 19 Then, the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled, for fear of the Jews [Did you notice that the disciples had the doors shut because of their fear of the Jews. This is after they had found the tomb empty. These men certainly would not have had the courage to fight armed Roman guards to steal the body of Jesus], Jesus came and stood in the midst, and said to them, "Peace be with you." 20 When He had said this, He showed them His hands and His side. Then the disciples were glad when they saw the Lord. 21 So Jesus said to them again, "Peace to you! As the Father has sent Me, I also send you." 22 And when He had said this, He breathed on them, and said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23 If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained."

“24 Now Thomas, called the Twin [other translations have Didymus], one of the twelve, was not with them when Jesus came. 25 The other disciples therefore said to him, "We have seen the Lord." So he said to them, "Unless I see in His hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe." 26 And after eight days His disciples were again inside, and Thomas with them. Jesus came, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, "Peace to you!" 27 Then He said to Thomas, "Reach your finger here, and look at My hands; and reach your hand here, and put it into My side. Do not be unbelieving, but believing." 28 And Thomas answered and said to Him, "My Lord and my God!" 29 Jesus said to him, "Thomas, because you have seen Me, you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed." 30 And truly Jesus did many other signs in the presence of His disciples, which are not written in this book; 31 but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.”

When the disciples first saw the risen Jesus, they were frightened thinking they had seen a ghost or spirit. But Jesus reassured them that it was Him. Luke records what happened in Luke 24:36-48 (NKJV):

“36 Now as they said these things, Jesus Himself stood in the midst of them, and said to them, "Peace to you." 37 But they were terrified and frightened, and supposed they had seen a spirit. 38 And He said to them, "Why are you troubled? And why do doubts arise in your hearts? 39 Behold My hands and My feet, that it is I Myself. Handle Me and see, for a spirit does not have flesh and bones as you see I have." 40 When He had said this, He showed them His hands and His feet. 41 But while they still did not believe for joy, and marveled, He said to them, "Have you any food here?" 42 So they gave Him a piece of a broiled fish and some honeycomb. 43 And He took it and ate in their presence. 44 Then He said to them, "These are the words which I spoke to you while I was still with you, that all things must be fulfilled which were written in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms concerning Me." 45 And He opened their understanding, that they might comprehend the Scriptures. 46 Then He said to them, "Thus it is written, and thus it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise from the dead the third day, 47 and that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name to all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. 48 And you are witnesses of these things.”

Then John records the third time that the disciples saw Jesus in John 21:1-14 (NKJV):

“1 After these things Jesus showed Himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberias [or Sea of Galilee], and in this way He showed Himself: 2 Simon Peter, Thomas called the Twin, Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee, and two others of His disciples were together. 3 Simon Peter said to them, "I am going fishing." They said to him, "We are going with you also." They went out and immediately got into the boat, and that night they caught nothing. 4 But when the morning had now come, Jesus stood on the shore; yet the disciples did not know that it was Jesus. 5 Then Jesus said to them, "Children, have you any food?" They answered Him, "No." 6 And He said to them, "Cast the net on the right side of the boat, and you will find some." So they cast, and now they were not able to draw it in because of the multitude of fish.

“7 Therefore that disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, "It is the Lord!" Now when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he put on his outer garment (for he had removed it) and plunged into the sea. 8 But the other disciples came in the little boat (for they were not far from land, but about two hundred cubits), dragging the net with fish. 9 Then, as soon as they had come to land, they saw a fire of coals there, and fish laid on it, and bread. 10 Jesus said to them, "Bring some of the fish which you have just caught." 11 Simon Peter went up and dragged the net to land, full of large fish, one hundred and fifty-three; and although there were so many, the net was not broken. 12 Jesus said to them, "Come and eat breakfast." Yet none of the disciples dared ask Him, "Who are You?"--knowing that it was the Lord. 13 Jesus then came and took the bread and gave it to them, and likewise the fish. 14 This is now the third time Jesus showed Himself to His disciples after He was raised from the dead.”

Besides being seen by Mary Magdalene, then two disciples, then by all the eleven disciples, Paul the apostle describes other incidents of people witnessing the risen Christ to the Corinthian Church in 1 Corinthians 15:3-8 (NKJV): “3 For I delivered to you first of all that which I also received: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, 4 and that He was buried, and that He rose again the third day according to the Scriptures, 5 and that He was seen by Cephas [Peter], then by the twelve. 6 After that He was seen by over five hundred brethren at once, of whom the greater part remain to the present, but some have fallen asleep. 7 After that He was seen by James [the half-brother of Jesus], then by all the apostles. 8 Then last of all He was seen by me also, as by one born out of due time.

”

How did Paul have this information? Because he had met many of those who had seen the risen Jesus Christ and had heard the account from their own mouths! When he wrote his epistle to the Corinthians, many were still alive and what he was writing could be verified from these eye-witnesses

.

There were likely many other times Jesus appeared to one or more of His disciples than what is mentioned in the gospels because Luke states in Acts 1:3: “"He showed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days". For forty days He was seen alive after His resurrection by many women and disciples.

Then later Stephen the martyr saw Him alive at the right hand of God the Father. Then He was seen by Paul the apostle as stated in Acts 9:38 and 1 Corinthians 15:8. And finally He was once again seen by John the apostle as described in Revelation 1:12-18 when he received the prophecies contained in the book of Revelation.

Muslims and others claim that the disciples could be hallucinating when they saw these appearances of Jesus after He was dead. But this nonsense does not account for the fact that these appearances were in different places, different times in front of different people, over 40 days, in different ways including showing many signs as recorded in John 20:31. All these eye-witnesses could not be hallucinating in all these different times and at different places. These appearances were convincing to all His disciples, leaving no doubts in their minds that they were seeing the risen Jesus and not a vision.

Such a large number of eye-witnesses to the risen Jesus Christ is proof that He was indeed resurrected.

Before they saw the risen Jesus, these men were hiding in fear from the Jewish authorities behind closed doors as described in John 20:19. Ten of the 11 disciples had run away when Jesus was crucified. But these men were transformed from cowards into men of courage after they saw the risen Jesus and were willing to suffer and die for their conviction that Jesus Christ was crucified, died and was resurrected. That is the fourth proof that Jesus Christ was indeed resurrected which we will cover next.

Question naturally arises: If God really wanted to convince the world that He had raised Jesus from the dead, why did He not let the risen Christ be seen by many many more witnesses around the world? Peter says in Acts 10:39-41 (NKJV): “39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree: 40 Him God raised up the third day, and showed him openly; 41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before of God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.”

Why only around 500 people witnessed the risen Christ and not many many more? The answer has to do with God’s plan of salvation for mankind. God is allowing one chance for salvation for every human ever born or will ever be born. If tens of millions had seen the risen Christ and had been converted, they like the true Christians would have faced persecution from, the unconverted. Most would have given in and compromised with God’s way of life under threats of persecution. They would have lost their one and only chance for salvation and would have eternally perished.

God plans to give the vast majority of mankind their chance of salvation in His kingdom when Satan will no longer be around to deceive and persecute mankind. Vast majority of mankind will then qualify to receive eternal life. If tens of millions had received their chance for salvation with Satan and the demons still around to influence them, vast majority would have perished. That is why God in His mercy is offering the chance for salvation only to a relatively few firstfruits in this age of man during the first 6,000 years of mankind’s history.

It is more difficult to make it into God’s kingdom at this time. In fact, the parable of the ten virgins indicates that only about 50% of those called in the age of man when subjected to persecution will qualify to receive eternal life. But their reward will also be greater as the first resurrection to eternal life is called the better resurrection. That is why only a limited number of witnesses chosen before of God saw the risen Jesus Christ and not much of mankind living at that time. Mankind still has eternal lessons to learn from human experience under the influence of Satan and his cohort of demons.

***4) Transformed Lives of the Disciples***

Whatever one’s opinion about Jesus may be, one thing is certain. In just three and a half years of preaching He electrified the world and led to the birth of the largest religion on earth. Birth of Islam took place over 23 years of Mohammed’s life from age 39 when he received his first revelation till his death. Hinduism evolved over hundreds of years. Tenets of Buddhism were formed and spread over 45 years of Gautam Buddha’s life from the time of his enlightenment to his death. Sikhism developed over 200 years from the beginning of preaching by Guru Nanak around 1496 A.D. to the death of the tenth Guru in 1708 A.D. In contrast only three and a half years of preaching by Jesus Christ electrified and transformed much of the world. The singular event responsible for this sudden transformation was the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

During His life almost no one understood who He was or the message He was trying to convey. Not His followers, family or friends, not His enemies or the Jewish and Roman authorities and not the general population understood Him.

He once asked His disciples “Who do men say that I, the Son of Man am?” (Matt 16:13). Some thought He was John the Baptist who had returned from the dead; some thought He was Elijah the prophet, or Jeremiah or one of the other prophets. But Peter answered: “You are the Christ, the Son of the Living God.”

Even though this truth was revealed to Peter, He did not fully understand what that meant or what Christ’s mission was. He lapsed into thinking that Jesus was a physical Messiah, a descendant of King David, who had come to deliver the Jewish nation from Roman rule and lead it to glory.

Thus, Jesus’s death was an unexpected total shock for them despite the fact that He had plainly told them that He was going to die and rise again after the third day. He said to them in Mark 9:31-32: “The Son of Man is being delivered into the hands of men, and they will kill Him. And after He is killed, He will rise the third day. But they did not understand this saying and were afraid to ask Him.”

The disciples were greatly bothered by Jesus’ talk of being tortured and killed. One time, Peter grabbed Jesus and said, “This shall not happen to You! (Matthew 16.22).

Jesus was a mystery to the masses. They asked Him in John 10:24: “How long do You keep us in doubt? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly.” Some thought He was not completely sane. Some said “He has a demon and is mad. Why do you listen to Him?” (John 10:20 - NKJV). Even His physical family was concerned about His sanity as Mark 3:21 (NKJV) states: “When His own people heard about this, they went out to lay hold of Him, for they said, ‘He is out of His mind.’”

But still Jesus attracted vast crowds of people. He had healed many, performed many miracles among them. He was a charismatic leader and the common people hung on to His words so that the Jewish religious leaders complained in John 12:19 (NKJV): “Look, the world has gone after Him!”

Jesus was a very interesting speaker, speaking to them in parables using graphic stories from common everyday life events to illustrate His points. The stories sounded very good, but He did not explain their spiritual meaning to the masses. However, He expounded them to His inner circle of disciples. And that is what caused confusion among the general public. Therefore, some said He was a good man. Others said He was a religious fraud deceiving His followers (John 7:12). Others said He was demon possessed and some others also claimed that He was a drunkard and a gluttonous man (Matthew 11:19).

Though the common people hung on to His words, they were confused about who He was and about what He said. Matthew 7:28-29 (NKJV) records: “…people were astonished at His teaching, for He taught them as one having authority, and not as the scribes.” Many would say, “We have seen strange things today,” (Luke 5:26).

The religious authorities and the educated of His day did not view Jesus as an intellectual or a noted political leader. John 9:29 (NKJV) quotes them as mockingly saying, “We know that God spoke to Moses. As for this fellow, we do not know where He is from.” But He stunned the educated with the depth of His learning and understanding, for John 7:15 (NKJV) quotes them as saying, “How does this Man know letters, having never studied?”

Religious leaders and other members of high society were repelled by the company He kept. A woman of ill repute and a sinner in the city once poured oil over His feet, wiped them with her hair and even kissed His feet. The Pharisees were appalled at the sight and at Him for allowing it for they said in Luke 7:36-39 (NKJV): “This man, if He were a prophet, would know who and what manner of woman this is who is touching Him.”

The religious leaders accused Him of breaking God’s law. They thought He was trying to throw out the basic 1500-year old constitution of the nation, the Old Testament. They accused Him of breaking the Sabbath when He healed people on the Sabbath, despite His telling them in Matthew 5:17 (NKJV): “Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the prophets, I did not come to destroy but to fulfill.”

But there was one way Jesus was totally different from any other prophet or founder of any other religion before or since He came. He made an astounding claim about Himself that none of the others made about themselves. Founders of all religions claimed to be mere human beings. But Jesus claimed that He was more than a human being which is what incensed the religious leaders of His day so much that they tried to kill Him. John 5:18 says they tried to kill Him because He “said that God was His Father, making himself equal with God.” They thought this was blasphemy and tried to stone Him saying: “Because You, being a Man, make Yourself God” (John 10:33 - NKJV)

.

People were sometimes shocked by what Jesus said. John 6:35, 38-41 (NKJV) states: “35 And Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life. He who comes to Me shall never hunger, and he who believes in Me shall never thirst…38 For I have come down from heaven, not to do My own will, but the will of Him who sent Me. 39 This is the will of the Father who sent Me, that of all He has given Me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up at the last day. 40 And this is the will of Him who sent Me, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in Him may have everlasting life; and I will raise him up at the last day." 41 The Jews then complained about Him, because He said, "I am the bread which came down from heaven."

Then Jesus shocked them even further by saying that whoever eats His flesh and drinks His blood will have eternal life.

John continues in Verse 47: “47 Most assuredly, I say to you, he who believes in Me has everlasting life. 48 I am the bread of life. 49 Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness and are dead. 50 This is the bread which comes down from heaven, that one may eat of it and not die. 51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever; and the bread that I shall give is My flesh, which I shall give for the life of the world." 52 The Jews therefore quarreled among themselves, saying, "How can this Man give us His flesh to eat?" 53 Then Jesus said to them, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in you. 54 Whoever eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day. 55 For My flesh is food indeed, and My blood is drink indeed. 56 He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood abides in Me, and I in him. 57 As the living Father sent Me, and I live because of the Father, so he who feeds on Me will live because of Me. 58 This is the bread which came down from heaven--not as your fathers ate the manna, and are dead. He who eats this bread will live forever."

“59 These things He said in the synagogue as He taught in Capernaum. 60 Therefore many of His disciples, when they heard this, said, "This is a hard saying; who can understand it?" 61 When Jesus knew in Himself that His disciples complained about this, He said to them, "Does this offend you?...The words that I speak to you are spirit, and they are life. 66 From that time many of His disciples went back and walked with Him no more.”

Thus, hearing such strange things from Jesus’ mouth, many of Jesus’ followers simply quit following Him.

Consider this: ***Would anyone die for such a misunderstood and maligned man?***

When most of Jesus’ disciples quit following Him, eleven of the twelve had different ideas. John states in John 6:67-69 (NKJV): “67 Then Jesus said to the twelve, "Do you also want to go away?" 68 But Simon Peter answered Him, "Lord, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life. 69 Also we have come to believe and know that You are the Christ, the Son of the living God."

They believed that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the Living God. But as stated earlier, they thought that Jesus was a physical Messiah, a descendant of King David, who had come to deliver the Jewish nation from Roman rule and lead it to glory. Even after Jesus was executed, all His disciples thought the same thing and said in Luke 24:21 (NKJV), “We were hoping that it was He who was going to redeem Israel.”

As stated earlier, Jesus death was a shock to all His disciples including the eleven.

They had seen Jesus heal the sick, turn water into wine, walk on water, calm a raging storm, feed thousands with a few loaves of bread and fish, and perform many other miracles. Their leader seemed to be invincible to them. They had dared to dream of glory for the Jewish nation and for themselves.

But then they had seen their invincible leader being arrested without a struggle, suffer unbelievable humiliation through trials by the Jewish authorities, the Roman authorities and Herod, and then suffer the shameful and disgraceful public execution through crucifixion. This was a crushing blow for the disciples. The Jewish authorities had triumphed over the man who had sometimes put them down with His words. They would believe that they had been right all along and the man Jesus was a religious fraud and got what He deserved. Now the disciples if not themselves executed would be laughed to scorn by everybody. People would point fingers at them saying these men gave up everything to follow a fraud, a charlatan, a fake Messiah.

In the night before Jesus was crucified, Peter had followed Jesus after His arrest. Onlookers asked Peter if He was a disciple of the half-naked, bruised, beaten, tired and weak man Jesus? Peter cursed and swore and shouted in Mark 14:71 (NKJV): “I do not know this Man of whom you speak!” In Matthew 26:70, 74 (NKJV) Peter is stated to have said: “I do not know what you are saying…I do not know the Man!”

Then when the rooster crowed and Jesus looked at Peter, He ran away in fear and humiliation. The rest of the disciples also ran away. One young man, probably the gospel writer Mark was so frightened that He ran away naked, leaving his clothes in the hands of those who tried to grab him (Mark 14:51).

In fact, after His crucifixion and death, the disciples thought they were going to be next. They thought the Jewish authorities were now going to come after all those who had been Jesus’ followers and have them executed. John states in John 20:19 (NKJV): “19 Then, the same day at evening, being the first day of the week [this was the 4th day after Jesus had died], when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled, for fear of the Jews…”

Here we see on the fourth day after Jesus was crucified and died, the disciples were hiding behind closed doors for fear that they would be recognized as having been with Jesus and would be arrested and executed. These were very frightened men.

But then there was a sudden transformation in the attitude and behavior of these men. What shocking event had they witnessed? They had seen Jesus killed and laid in a tomb. They knew He was dead. But then they see the resurrected Jesus and finally knew that He was the Son of the living God, and that He was alive. They saw Him alive over 40 days, talked with Him, and He taught them and gave them understanding of the Scriptures.

They had heard Jesus tell them that He would be killed but would rise and live again after 3 days. He had told them that they would be sorrowful at His death, but their sorrow would be turned into joy. They had seen both events happen. He had died and then seen Him alive again as a spirit Being. Nothing like this had happened before in the history of mankind. But the disciples had experienced it. There was no denying the fact for them that Jesus died and is alive again as a spirit Being.

The disciples now understood the very important reasons for Jesus’ life and death, and then His resurrection. They understood that Jesus came to die for the sins of mankind so that man could be forgiven on repentance and then be reconciled to his Creator. Jesus had told the disciples during His time with them in John 11:25 (NKJV): “I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in Me, though he may die, he shall live.” This meant nothing to them when they heard it. But after His resurrection they understood their potential and that they too would die but live again through a resurrection as the sons of God.

We human beings have not seen a dead Jesus alive again. We may think the disciples perhaps fabricated a tale as Muslims and others claim. But consider what this would mean. If the resurrection did not take place, the disciples would have known it. Would they have been willing to die for a tale they knew to be a lie. Does it make sense?

We might be deceived about a belief and give our money, time and even life for it as many do for their religious beliefs. But can you imagine anyone suffering torture, humiliation, beatings, loss of everything and then die for something they knew to be a lie? What purpose would it serve?

We can reach only one conclusion. The disciples experienced the most unbelievable event of all: they had seen a man die and then live again as a spirit Being. They are our witnesses that the event actually happened.

Peter said in 2 Peter 1:16 (NKJV): “For we did not follow cunningly devised fables…but were eyewitnesses of His majesty.” John wrote decades later about the event in 1 John 1:2 (NKJV): “We have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you that eternal life which was with the Father, and was manifested to us.”

Jesus Himself charged His disciples to spread the word about His life, death and resurrection. Before His death He told them in John 15:27 (NKJV): “And you also will bear witness, because you have been with Me from the beginning.” Then after His resurrection Jesus told them in Acts 1:8 (NKJV): “And you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and to all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.”

On the day of Pentecost, after the disciples received the holy spirit, they proceeded to do precisely that. There was a sudden transformation in the attitude and behavior of these men. They were no longer afraid of the religious authorities and openly and boldly preached the resurrection of Jesus Christ and remission of sins right at the Temple where the public could hear them. Peter preached his first sermon to all those gathered in Jerusalem from many countries to celebrate the feast of Pentecost. Thousands were immediately convicted and converted.

The preaching brought immediate persecution from the authorities. But the transformation of the apostles is evident in how they now reacted in the face of persecution.

When they had healed a cripple; Acts 4:1-4 states (NKJV): “1 Now as they spoke to the people, the priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees came upon them, 2 being greatly disturbed that they taught the people and preached in Jesus the resurrection from the dead. 3 And they laid hands on them, and put them in custody until the next day, for it was already evening. 4 However, many of those who heard the word believed; and the number of the men came to be about five thousand.

“5 And it came to pass, on the next day, that their rulers, elders, and scribes, 6 as well as Annas the high priest, Caiaphas, John, and Alexander, and as many as were of the family of the high priest, were gathered together at Jerusalem. 7 And when they had set them in the midst, they asked, "By what power or by what name have you done this?" 8 Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, "Rulers of the people and elders of Israel: 9 If we this day are judged for a good deed done to a helpless man, by what means he has been made well, 10 let it be known to you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, whom God raised from the dead, by Him this man stands here before you whole. 11 This is the 'stone which was rejected by you builders, which has become the chief cornerstone.' 12 Nor is there salvation in any other, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

“13 Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were uneducated and untrained men, they marveled. And they realized that they had been with Jesus. 14 And seeing the man who had been healed standing with them, they could say nothing against it. 15 But when they had commanded them to go aside out of the council, they conferred among themselves, 16 saying, "What shall we do to these men? For, indeed, that a notable miracle has been done through them is evident to all who dwell in Jerusalem, and we cannot deny it. 17 But so that it spreads no further among the people, let us severely threaten them, that from now on they speak to no man in this name." 18 And they called them and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus. 19 But Peter and John answered and said to them, "Whether it is right in the sight of God to listen to you more than to God, you judge. 20 For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard." 21 So when they had further threatened them, they let them go…”

Then later the disciples were beaten, and their reaction is stated in Acts 5:17-42 (NKJV):

“17 Then the high priest rose up, and all those who were with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees), and they were filled with indignation, 18 and laid their hands on the apostles and put them in the common prison. 19 But at night an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors and brought them out, and said, 20 "Go, stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this life." 21 And when they heard that, they entered the temple early in the morning and taught. But the high priest and those with him came and called the council together, with all the elders of the children of Israel, and sent to the prison to have them brought. 22 But when the officers came and did not find them in the prison, they returned and reported, 23 saying, "Indeed we found the prison shut securely, and the guards standing outside before the doors; but when we opened them, we found no one inside!"

“24 Now when the high priest, the captain of the temple, and the chief priests heard these things, they wondered what the outcome would be. 25 So one came and told them, saying, "Look, the men whom you put in prison are standing in the temple and teaching the people!" 26 Then the captain went with the officers and brought them without violence, for they feared the people, lest they should be stoned. 27 And when they had brought them, they set them before the council. And the high priest asked them, 28 saying, "Did we not strictly command you not to teach in this name? And look, you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and intend to bring this Man's blood on us!" 29 But Peter and the other apostles answered and said: "We ought to obey God rather than men. 30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus whom you murdered by hanging on a tree. 31 Him God has exalted to His right hand to be Prince and Savior, to give repentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins. 32 And we are His witnesses to these things, and so also is the Holy Spirit whom God has given to those who obey Him."

“33 When they heard this, they were furious and plotted to kill them. 34 Then one in the council stood up, a Pharisee named Gamaliel, a teacher of the law held in respect by all the people, and commanded them to put the apostles outside for a little while. 35 And he said to them: "Men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what you intend to do regarding these men. 36 For some time ago Theudas rose up, claiming to be somebody. A number of men, about four hundred, joined him. He was slain, and all who obeyed him were scattered and came to nothing. 37 After this man, Judas of Galilee rose up in the days of the census, and drew away many people after him. He also perished, and all who obeyed him were dispersed. 38 And now I say to you, keep away from these men and let them alone; for if this plan or this work is of men, it will come to nothing; 39 but if it is of God, you cannot overthrow it--lest you even be found to fight against God." 40 And they agreed with him, and when they had called for the apostles and beaten them, they commanded that they should not speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go. 41 So they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for His name. 42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they did not cease teaching and preaching Jesus as the Christ.”

Such is the transformation that took place in the lives of men who had been cowards four days after Jesus’ death, before they witnessed His resurrection. The apostles would continue to preach the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, forgiveness of sins leading to eternal life and the gospel of the establishment of the kingdom of God throughout the rest of their lives leading to growth of Christianity to become the largest religion in the world. Eleven of them would be martyred for this cause. According to tradition even John was thrown in a boiling cauldron of oil but climbed out of it alive. After witnessing this intervention from God, the ruler who had sentenced him to death let him go.

The death and resurrection of Jesus Christ is the central event directly responsible for the growth and endurance of Christianity. Transformed lives of the apostles is one of the strongest proofs of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

***5. Transformation of Jesus’ Brothers from Skeptics into Believers.***

Now let’s look at the fifth proof of the resurrection of Jesus, which is the transformation of Jesus’ brothers from skeptics into believers.

We know Jesus’ family did not believe in Him and were concerned about His sanity as Mark 3:20-21 (NKJV) states: “20 Then the multitude came together again, so that they could not so much as eat bread. 21 But when His own people heard about this, they went out to lay hold of Him, for they said, "He is out of His mind."

John plainly states in John 7:5 that: “5 …even His brothers did not believe in Him.”

Further proof that Jesus’ brothers did not believe He was the Son of God is that when Jesus was about to die on the cross, He asked John to take care of His mother Mary as his own mother after His death in John 19:26-27.

Why would Jesus charge John the apostle to look after His mother after His death rather than one of His half-brothers and Mary’s own sons? The reason is obvious. They did not believe that Jesus was the Son of God.

But then James saw the risen Christ as Paul mentions in 1 Corinthians 15:7. Knowing that his brother died, but then seeing Him alive again transformed James. Now he knew that His half-brother Jesus was truly the Son of God. Now he knew that his brother preached the truth, had lived a sinless life and that the potential of man is to become eternal sons of God through a resurrection.

Not only was James converted but possibly all his other 3 brothers named in the gospels, Jude, Simon and Joses, were also converted. After the eleven apostles had seen Jesus for the last time and ascend to heaven from the Mount of Olives, they returned to Jerusalem and Luke records in Acts 1:13-14: “13 And when they had entered [that is Jerusalem], they went up into the upper room where they were staying: Peter, James, John, and Andrew; Philip and Thomas; Bartholomew and Matthew; James the son of Alphaeus and Simon the Zealot; and Judas the son of James. 14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women and Mary the mother of Jesus, and *with His brothers*.”

These verses imply that at least two of Jesus’ half-brothers, possibly all 4 of them continued in prayer together with the 11 apostles till the day of Pentecost when all of them received God’s holy spirit. We know for certain that at least two of Jesus’ brothers were converted and were in the ministry. James wrote the epistle of James and his brother Jude wrote the epistle in the Bible that bears his name.

James was later the head of the headquarters Church of God in Jerusalem and was stoned to death for his belief that his brother was the Son of God and was resurrected after His death. James had lived perhaps 30 years of his life with his brother. After his conversion he then knew that his brother had lived a sinless life and was the spotless Lamb of God who became the perfect sacrifice for the sins of mankind. If James had seen sins in his brother’s life, he would not have become a convert because if Jesus had sinned, He would not have been the Son of God, and the Christ.

J.P. Moreland describes events in James’ life in his book *Scaling the Secular City*, 1987, pp 178-179:

“Why did these men change? Why did they undergo hardship, persecution, pressure and martyrdom? Consider James the brother of Jesus. Josephus, the first century Jewish historian, tells us that he died a martyr’s death for his faith in his brother. Yet the gospels tell us that during Jesus’ life, he was an unbeliever and opposed Jesus.

“Why did he change? What could cause a Jew to believe that his own brother was the very Son of God and to be willing to die for such a belief? [The Jews believed that there was only one God. That is why the Jews tried to kill Jesus when He claimed He was the Son of God.] It certainly was not a set of lovely teachings from a carpenter from Nazareth. Only the appearance of Jesus to James can explain his transformation.”

***6) Conversion of Paul the Apostle***

The sixth proof of the resurrection of Jesus Christ is the conversion of Paul the apostle. Paul, a young Rabbi and a strict Pharisee was a rising star of Judaism. He did not believe that Jesus was resurrected and considered the new religion about Jesus a heresy. He hated it so much that he was convinced it deserved to be stamped out by any means possible. He made it his personal mission and zealously persecuted the Church of God that had been formed.

He considered the story of the resurrection of Jesus Christ a pure fabrication and the new movement that had been built around it contrary to every belief and tradition he held sacred. So, he imprisoned the followers of Jesus and caused some to be killed.

Luke records in Acts 8:1-3 (NKJV): “1 Now Saul was consenting to his [Stephen’s] death. At that time a great persecution arose against the church which was at Jerusalem; and they were all scattered throughout the regions of Judea and Samaria, except the apostles. 2 And devout men carried Stephen to his burial, and made great lamentation over him. 3 As for Saul, he made havoc of the church, entering every house, and dragging off men and women, committing them to prison.”

After making havoc of the Church in Jerusalem, Paul wanted to do the same in other cities. Luke continues in Acts 9:1-2 (NKJV): “1 Then Saul, still breathing threats and murder against the disciples of the Lord, went to the high priest 2 and asked letters from him to the synagogues of Damascus, so that if he found any who were of the Way, whether men or women, he might bring them bound to Jerusalem.”

But as Paul was journeying from Jerusalem to Damascus, something happened. Luke continues: “3 As he journeyed, he came near Damascus, and suddenly a light shone around him from heaven. 4 Then he fell to the ground, and heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting Me?" 5 And he said, "Who are You, Lord?" Then the Lord said, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting. It is hard for you to kick against the goads." 6 So he, trembling and astonished, said, "Lord, what do You want me to do?" Then the Lord said to him, "Arise and go into the city, and you will be told what you must do."

That experience changed Paul’s life. He had now seen the resurrected Jesus himself as he stated in 1 Corinthians 9:1: “Have I not seen Jesus Christ our Lord”, and in 1 Corinthians 15: 8-9 (NKJV): “8 Then last of all He was seen by me also, as by one born out of due time. 9 For I am the least of the apostles, who am not worthy to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the church of God.”

Seeing the resurrected Jesus Christ transformed Paul and changed his beliefs. He threw away everything that he had strived for all his life. He states in Philippians 3:7-8 (NKJV):” 7 But what things were gain to me, these I have counted loss for Christ. 8 Yet indeed I also count all things loss for the excellence of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them as rubbish, that I may gain Christ.”

Paul’s overriding aim in life now was “10 that I may know Him and the power of His resurrection, and the fellowship of His sufferings, being conformed to His death, 11 if, by any means, I may attain to the resurrection from the dead.”

Why would Paul be willing to throw to the dogs everything he had striven for in his life if Jesus was simply a dead man who had died a shameful death by crucifixion? It does not make sense at all.

Jesus had charged His disciples in Acts 1:8: “And you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.” After his conversion, for Paul this preaching of the gospel or good news centered around the meaning of the life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. It was proof that humans will receive eternal life through a resurrection from the dead.

Paul stated in 1 Corinthians 15:1, 3-4 (NKJV): “1 Moreover, brethren, I declare to you the gospel which I preached to you…3 For I delivered to you first of all that which I also received: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, 4 and that He was buried, and that He rose again the third day according to the Scriptures.”

Paul literally staked his life on the resurrection of Jesus Christ. He was shocked to hear that in the city of Corinth some believers doubted the resurrection of Jesus. He then logically explained how the dead rise again to life in verses 12-20: “12 Now if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead? 13 But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen: 14 And if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain. 15 Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not. 16 For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised: 17 And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; you are yet in your sins. 18 Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished. 19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable. 20 But now is Christ risen from the dead and become the firstfruits of them that slept.”

Consider: Would Paul have wasted his life if the resurrection of Jesus Christ was a lie? Would he have given up his successful life as a Pharisee for a lie? The UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Stor*y” states on page 50:

“Paul was not a man given to vivid imaginations of superstitious people. He was a levelheaded intellectual. Yet he later was prepared to defend his zeal for Christ before hostile mobs as well as governors, kings and other rulers. He was prepared to endure suffering for his beliefs as he describes in 2 Corinthians 11:23-27: “23 Are they ministers of Christ? - I speak as a fool – I am more: in labors more abundant, in stripes above measure, in prisons more frequently, in deaths often. 24 From the Jews five times I received forty stripes minus one. 25 Three times I was beaten with rods; once I was stoned; three times I was shipwrecked; a night and a day I have been in the deep; 26 in journeys often, in perils of waters, in perils of robbers, in perils of my own countrymen, in perils of the Gentiles, in perils in the city, in perils in the wilderness, in perils in the sea, in perils among false brethren; 27 in weariness and toil, in sleeplessness often, in hunger and thirst, in fastings often, in cold and nakedness…”

In the end Paul was beheaded for his belief that Jesus died, was resurrected and was the Messiah who is now alive and well at the right hand of God the Father. The testimony of Paul and his transformed life is proof of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

***7) Martyrdom of Christians and Existence of the Church over the Centuries***

The seventh and final proof of the resurrection of Jesus Christ is the martyrdom of the original apostles, thousands of early Christians and the birth and existence of the Church.

Traditions tell us that out of the eleven original apostles, ten of them were martyred for their beliefs. Even John the apostle was cast into a cauldron of boiling oil but climbed out of it alive through God’s intervention. He was then perhaps banished to the island of Patmos by the ruler. James the half-brother of Jesus and Paul the apostle were also martyred. Then thousands of early Christians died in the Roman arenas and prisons for their belief that Jesus Christ died for the sins of mankind and rose from the dead and is alive to give them also eternal life through a resurrection.

We know Mohammed is not a myth. He was a real person and the main events attributed to him were true because the existence of Islam is proof of that. In the same way existence of Christianity is proof of the main event of the life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ on which it is based. The original apostles and thousands of Christians who believed because of their preaching would not have willingly suffered martyrdom if they knew that the resurrection of Jesus was a lie.

God’s true Church has always existed since its founding in 31 A.D. Over the past more than 1980 years, tens of thousands of Christians have been willing to lay down their lives for their belief that Jesus Christ lived, died for the sins of mankind and was resurrected. Ever since 31 A.D. as each succeeding generation of Christians saw the martyrdom of Christians of the previous generation, they believed the truth of the life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ and many have been willing to be martyred for their faith as well if called upon to do so.

Thus, the existence of Christianity and the martyrdom of the original apostles and Christians who believed through their preaching, and then the preaching of the first generation of Christians to the next generation and their willingness to be martyred and so on for succeeding generations is proof that the life, death and resurrection of Jesus Christ was a true event.

**CHAPTER 17**

**Three Days and Three Nights Between Death and Resurrection**

Muslims have latched on to mainstream Christianity’s tradition of Good Friday death of Jesus Christ and Sunday morning resurrection as proof that the Bible is not the word of God, because it is inconsistent.

In Matthew 12:38, some of the scribes and Pharisees asked Jesus for a sign to prove He was the Messiah. But Jesus told them that the only sign that would be given was that of the prophet Jonah: "For as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the great fish, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth" (verse 40).

Three days and three nights means a time period of 72 hours. But between a 3.00 PM Friday afternoon death and 6.00 AM Sunday morning resurrection, only 39 hours can fit in. We cannot fit "three days and three nights" between a Friday-afternoon crucifixion and a Sunday-morning resurrection that mainstream Christianity believes in. Some try to argue that Christ’s statement about "three days and three nights" does not have to cover 3 full days and 3 full nights as part of a day can be counted as a day. Thus, they say that Jesus died in the afternoon making the remainder of Friday as one day, then Saturday as the second day and Sunday morning as the third day. But in this time frame only 2 nights, Friday and Saturday night, can be fitted in. Some in Islam, Jews and other non-Christians have scoffed at Christianity because of this obvious difference in Christian beliefs, and what is stated in the Bible.

The problem lies with mainstream Christianity not understanding that an annual holy day is mentioned in the Biblical record, also known as a high day. Let’s carefully study the details provided in the gospels.

Each of the Gospel writers gives an account of the events of Jesus’ crucifixion, death and resurrection, but each presents different aspects that need to be correctly synchronized and harmonized to produce a clear sequence and understanding of what happened. We see that, when each account is considered, the chronological details mesh perfectly proving that Jesus Christ was in the tomb exactly three days and three nights.

For instance, John 19:31 preserves a crucial point that provides insight into the other accounts. The preparation day on which Jesus was crucified is described as the day before the Sabbath. But John clarifies it by stating that this approaching Sabbath "was a high day." This does not refer to the weekly Sabbath (Friday sunset to Saturday sunset) but to the first day of Unleavened Bread, which is one of God's annual high days, or Annual Sabbath, days (Exodus 12:16-17; Leviticus 23:6-7), which could—and usually did—fall on other days of the week.

Luke 23:46-53 describe Jesus' moment of death, as well as His hasty burial because of the oncoming Sabbath. Verse 54 then states, "That day was the Preparation, and the Sabbath drew near." This Sabbath that drew near was the High Sabbath, the First day of the Feast of Unleavened Bread which that year in 31 A.D. fell on Thursday. So, the women rested on this Sabbath according to the commandment.

Then verse 56 of Luke 23 tells us that the women, after seeing Christ's body having been laid in the tomb, " 56 And they returned, and prepared spices and ointments; and rested the Sabbath day according to the commandment.” This work of purchasing and preparing the spices and fragrant oils could not be done on the Sabbath day. So, this work was done on Friday after the High day Sabbath on Thursday. Then verse 56 says they rested again on the Sabbath day. So clearly two Sabbaths are mentioned here.

When we consider the details in all four Gospel accounts, the picture of Jesus Christ’s crucifixion, death and resurrection that emerges is this. Jesus was crucified and entombed late on Wednesday afternoon, just before a Sabbath began at sunset. However, that was a high-day or annual Sabbath (the first day of the seven-day Feast of Unleavened Bread), falling on Thursday that week, rather than the weekly Sabbath from Friday evening through Saturday evening. The women saw Jesus’ body laid in the tomb late Wednesday afternoon, then rested on the high day Sabbath on Thursday. Then they prepared spices and fragrant oils on Friday for the proper burial of Jesus’ body, and then rested again on the weekly Sabbath from Friday sunset to Saturday sunset. Jesus remained entombed from Wednesday at sunset until Saturday at sunset, when He rose from the dead. Thus, when Mary Magdalene came to the tomb on Sunday morning before sunrise, "while it was still dark," she found the stone rolled away and the tomb empty. Before Sunday sunrise He had already risen. John 20:1 states: “1 Now on the first day of the week [meaning Sunday] Mary Magdalene went to the tomb early, while it was still dark [meaning before sunrise Sunday], and saw that the stone had been taken away from the tomb.” This clearly shows that Jesus had already risen before sunrise on Sunday.

Jesus rose late Saturday afternoon around sunset—not Sunday at sunrise—which was precisely three days and three nights, 72 hours, after He was placed in the tomb just before sunset on Wednesday. Jesus was not resurrected on Sunday at sunrise as the false Roman Church claims, and mainstream Christianity blindly believes but on late Saturday afternoon.

**CHAPTER 18**

**Four Gospels Not God Inspired as Each is Different**

Muslim scholars make another argument that the Bible has four gospels, all different from one another. Therefore, they cannot be God-inspired. They also state that the Quran has only one gospel concerning Jesus Christ which Mohammed wrote as it was revealed to him. That’s why they accept the Quran version about the life of Jesus and not the account in the four gospels.

Each contemporary writer writes history based on the facts known to him and remembered by him when he is writing the historical account. In addition, the same writer may write the account differently for different audiences, using the same facts. Some facts may be left out for certain audiences, whereas others left out of other accounts may be included. That has been my experience when I have written various books and booklets available free on my web site.

Different viewers viewing events will have different versions of the same event when writing an account of it, based on the same facts. Therefore, we should expect four different versions of the history of the same time period from four different authors.

In the same way, we have the histories of the kings of the House of Israel and the House of Judah. The accounts differ in I and II Kings from the accounts in I Chronicles and II Chronicles. Different aspects are emphasized in the two sets of books. These were compiled over about four and a half centuries, and edited later. Yet Jesus Christ Himself pronounced the entire Old Testament God-breathed, or inspired.

Please read the chapter titled “Was the Bible Altered?” It explains how canonization of the New Testament was done. The final canonization of the Bible was done by John the Apostle.

John was the disciple Jesus’ loved. They were cousins and had known each other well before Jesus began His ministry. John was with Jesus during virtually every event in His ministry. When he began the final canonization after the initial canonization by Paul the apostle, he would have had access to all the gospels circulating. Perhaps Paul had already selected the gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke in his canonization. But John may have been inspired into believing that there were some very important details that needed to be included to provide a well-rounded account of the events surrounding Jesus’ ministry. That’s when he wrote his gospel, incorporating all the details he was inspired to include. The last verse in John’s gospel reads: John 21:25, “25 And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written.” Amen.”

John was inspired to state this after he had considered that only the other three gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke should be included in the final canonization. After the canonization, the Book of Revelation was the only other book written by John. Then God’s angels confirmed that his canonization was the inspired word of God when he stated in Revelation 22:6-9, “6 And he [the angel] said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. 7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keeps the sayings of the prophecy of this book. 8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. 9 Then saith he unto me, See that you do it not: for I am your fellow-servant, and of your brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.”

The angel confirmed that angels too keep the sayings of the whole Bible as it had been canonized by John, including the Book of Revelation. Then as a warning, Jesus Christ stated Revelation 22:18-19, “18 For I testify unto every man that hears the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: 19 And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.”

Jesus Christ warned everyone not to add or take away anything from the final canonization done by John the apostle.

Prophecy is also proof of the divine inspiration of each of the gospels, as they do contain prophecy which is coming true today. For more information on fulfilled prophecies, and prophecies soon to be fulfilled, please read my books *“Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”* and *“World in Bible Prophecy”*, both available free on my website.

**CHAPTER 19**

**Coming of Muhammed Prophesied in the Bible**

Muslims claim that the coming of Muhammed as a prophet was prophesied in the Bible.

The first reference they mainly cite from the Old Testament is Deuteronomy 18:15-19, “15 “The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your midst, from your brethren. Him you shall hear, 16 according to all you desired of the Lord your God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, ‘Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God, nor let me see this great fire anymore, lest I die.’

17 “And the Lord said to me: ‘What they have spoken is good. 18 I will raise up for them a Prophet like you from among their brethren, and will put My words in His mouth, and He shall speak to them all that I command Him. 19 And it shall be that whoever will not hear My words, which He speaks in My name, I will require it of him [meaning hold him accountable]. “

Muslims claim that these verses are about Muhammed being sent as a prophet from among the brethren of the Israelites, and since Ishmael was Abraham’s son, his descendants, the Arabs, are brethren of the Israelites.

There are several problems with this interpretation. First of all, the Bible affirms that this prophecy of a prophet like Moses was fulfilled by Jesus Christ Himself.

Peter said so in Acts 3:20-23: "20 and that He [that is God the Father] may send Jesus Christ, who was preached to you before, 21 whom heaven must receive until the times of restoration of all things, which God has spoken by the mouth of all His holy prophets since the world began. 22 For Moses truly said to the fathers, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your brethren. Him you shall hear in all things, whatever He says to you. 23 And it shall be that every soul who will not hear that Prophet shall be utterly destroyed from among the people."

Stephen the martyr also confirmed the same about Jesus Christ being that Prophet like Moses in Acts 7:37: "37 "This is that Moses who said to the children of Israel, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your brethren. Him you shall hear.' 37 "This is that Moses who said to the children of Israel, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your brethren. Him you shall hear.'

So, this prophecy was already fulfilled about 580 years before Muhammed came along.

Secondly, this prophecy was addressed to Israelites and not Ishmaelites. God was saying that He would raise up a Prophet from their midst, meaning in the midst of the Israelites, from your brethren, meaning Moses’ brethren. Moses was of the tribe of Levi. Levi’s brothers were the other eleven tribes of Israel. Jesus came from the tribe of Judah, from the brethren tribe of Levi, from the midst of the Israelites.

Thirdly, God was to raise up a prophet among the Israelites and not Ishmaelites. Muhammed was never a prophet to the Israelites. He tried to impose his religion on a few Jews, whom he murdered. He simply was not a prophet to the Israelites.

Fourth, prophets whose coming was prophesied beforehand in the Bible could cite the specific verses and acknowledge the role they were fulfilling. Muhammed never cited Deuteronomy 18:15-18 or any other verse in the Bible and claim that he was fulfilling the role of that particular prophet.

When John the Baptist was asked by the Pharisees who he was, the exchange is mentioned in John 1:19-23, “19 And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, Who are you? 20 And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, I am not the Christ. 21 And they asked him, What then? Are thou Elias [Elijah]? And he says, I am not. Are you that prophet? [the prophet spoken by Moses in Deuteronomy 18:15-18] And he answered, No. 22 Then said they unto him, Who are you? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What say you of yourself? 23 He said, I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness, Make straight the way of the Lord, as said the prophet Esaias.” John the Baptist quoted Isaiah 40:3.

God said He would also sent another prophet like Elijah before the coming of the dreadful day of the Lord in Malachi 4:4-5, “5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: 6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse [or utter destruction].”

The man who fulfilled that role in our modern day, just before the coming of the dreadful Day of the Lord knew that He was fulfilling that role. That man’s name was Herbert W. Armstrong. I have provided the proof of his fulfillment of this prophecy in my book *“Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”*

For the sake of Muslims, the role of the prophet like Moses, prophesied in Deuteronomy 18:15-18 is also being fulfilled today by the author. Ample proof has been provided in the book titled *“Jews Behold Your God*” in the chapter titled “A Prophet Like Moses.” A prophet does recognize the role he is fulfilling. Among the many proofs detailed in that chapter include God preserving the author through hundreds, or perhaps thousands, of attempts on his life, including many by Muslims; God’s angels broadcasting his weekly messages at 9.00 AM Saturday mornings, USA Eastern Standard Time, which every human being can hear in his or her own language; God preserving millions in America and British Commonwealth nations at his prayers when murder attempts were made by German masqueraders (people of German descent living in these countries), and many more.

The role of the prophet Elijah had a three-fold fulfillment. Similarly, the role of the prophet like Moses was to have a three-fold fulfillment. The Elijah role was first fulfilled by the original Elijah. Then before the first coming of Jesus, John the Baptist fulfilled that role as Jesus stated in Matthew 17:11-12. Then before the second coming of Jesus Christ, the role of the prophet Elijah was fulfilled by Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong, through whom God started the modern era of His Church.

The role of the prophet like Moses was originally fulfilled by Moses himself. Then as already stated, Jesus Christ fulfilled that role Himself in His time. The third time the role was to be fulfilled before the second coming of Jesus Christ to earth. That role is being fulfilled by the author.

The true mark of a prophet in the Bible is that either God gives prophecy through him, or gives understanding and interpretation of prophecy through him. All the prophetic books of the Bible are prophecies of the future. Quran contains no prophecies. Neither was Muhammed given understanding of any prophecies previously given. And the only prophecies previously given are in the Bible. Muhammed was not given understanding of them. Therefore, Muhammed miserably fails the test of being a true prophet of God.

In contrast to Muhammed, Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong was given an understanding of prophecy better than any human who has ever lived, except for Jesus Christ. That is the sign of a true prophet. The author has also been given much additional understanding of prophecy. He has incorporated the prophecies taught by Mr. Armstrong into his understanding of prophecy, particularly the sequence of end-time events, and has written them in his book titled “Word in Bible Prophecy,” available free on his website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

Thus, Mohammed was not the prophet prophesied by Moses to come. He was deceived by Satan the devil, and was used to deceive the Muslim world.

The second reference usually cited to prove the coming of Muhammed as a prophet is John 14:15-17, “15 If you love Me, keep My commandments. 16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever; 17 Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it sees him not, neither knows him: but you know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”

There is a lengthy Muslim explanation of these verses on the website www.alislam.org under the article “Biblical Prophecies about Mohammed” by Maulana Ataullah Kaleem:

Besides the above verses, the writer cites other verses in which the word Comforter or Holy Spirit is used:

“But the Comforter which is the Holy Ghost whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things…” (John 14:26)

“Nevertheless, I tell you the truth; it is expedient for you that I go away, for if I go not away the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.” (John 16:7)

“I have yet many things to say unto you, but you cannot bear them now. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth; for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak; and he will shew you things to come. He shall glorify me.” (John 16:12-14)

“John 14:26 says that the Holy Ghost is the Comforter. This claim is contrary to the plain and unambiguous words of John 16:7, wherein Jesus says that his going away, i.e., the death of Jesus is inevitably necessary of the coming of the Comforter. The New Testament says that John was filled with the Holy Ghost even before he was born (Luke 1:14), and speaks of Jesus himself as receiving the Holy Ghost in the form of a dove (Matthew 3:16). Thus, the Holy Ghost was wont to visit men before Jesus as well as in his own time. To what, then is the reference in the words, “If I go not away the Comforter will not come unto you.” Surely not to the Holy Ghost; for it is a matter of common knowledge that the Holy Ghost was co-existing with Jesus, and it would be sacrilegious to think for a moment that Jesus was without the Holy Ghost. So, the Comforter was someone other than the Holy Ghost.”

“This also supports our assertion that there have been many interpolations in the existing Christian Bible. It is quite obvious that the Comforter cannot be the Holy Ghost, as Jesus uses the pronoun “he” instead of “it” in connection with the Comforter.”

This Muslim scholar has to fall back on the Muslim assertion that the Bible was changed to support his arguments, because John clearly says in 14:26 that the Comforter is the Holy Spirit. He implies that John 14:26 is an alteration of the Bible. But we have already proved that the Bible was not altered. Hence this author uses false premises to support his arguments. He also relies on the Trinity doctrine to state that the Holy Ghost was co-existing with Jesus. We have already proved that the Trinity doctrine is false, and the holy spirit is the power of God and not a third person in the Godhead. He also states that the holy spirit was already wont to visit men before Jesus Christ as John the Baptist had it from birth.

This scholar has very little understanding of the holy spirit and uses and twists whatever errors are commonly associated with the holy spirit to argue that John the apostle was wrong in stating that the Comforter is the holy spirit.

First of all, even before John the Baptist, all the prophets, including David (Psalm 51) had God’s holy spirit. But the holy spirit was not generally given to man men. Only after Jesus Christ was resurrected and went to Heaven to be with the Father that He sent the holy spirit on the day of Pentecost in 31 A.D. to the entire Church, as stated by John in the above quoted verses.

The holy spirit is not a person. The King James Version translators used the pronoun ‘he’ for the holy spirit incorrectly because they were steeped in the Trinity doctrine. “It” is the correct pronoun to use for the holy spirit. The holy spirit is the power of God through which God communicates to the minds of those converted in the Church. Through the holy spirit God teaches the truth. It imparts spiritual discernment, which is the ability to understand spiritual truth. Humans not converted do not have spiritual understanding because they lack the holy spirit.

Thus John is talking about the holy spirit, the power of God, when he mentions the Comforter and not a person to come. In no way is the Comforter referring to the coming of Muhammed. Muhammed certainly could not have abided in the Christians forever, or been with them forever.

Jesus said the disciples, or Christians would receive the Comforter or holy spirit. Muhammed did not come to the Christians. He certainly was no comforter to the Jews and Christians, because his message is completely anti-Christian denying the centrality of Christianity: the divinity of Jesus Christ, His crucifixion and death to pay the death penalty on behalf of all humanity, and His resurrection to go to the Father and be an advocate as our High Priest.

The problem with religious authorities of all pagan faiths is that they cannot give up their faith easily. After all, that is how they make their living. Imams, Maulvis, Hindu and Sikh priests, and pastors and bishops in mainstream Christianity will continue to preach their religion even when pointed out that what they are preaching is lies. That’s how they earn their living. It’s a daunting task for a 50-year- old preacher who has trained all his life and earned a living by preaching his religion to give it all up and start a new profession. He has kids to look after, especially when they require more expenses to maintain, such as going to college, or marriage etc. They simply cannot change a profession in middle age, and have to face the daunting prospect of not being able to earn a living. That’s why they’ll continue to deceive to earn a living, and invent arguments, or twist the truth to maintain their lies. Those are the kinds of arguments Muslim scholars are using to prove that the coming of Muhammed was prophesied in the Bible.

Only those who want to know and follow the truth and have an open mind will be able to recognize how Satan deceived Muhammed, and how Muslim scholars are deceiving Muslims with their lies by twisting the Bible. We hope that those with an open mind will reject such concocted lies.

**CHAPTER 20**

**Muhammed: The Unlettered (Illiterate) Prophet**

Muslims claim divine inspiration of the Quran, pointing to Muhammed being illiterate, and called the unlettered prophet. They say that he could not have made up what he recited to his followers of the revelations to him from Allah by reading the writings of the old prophets in the Bible. Others eventually preserved what he recited of the revelations to him in the Quran. Mohammed claimed that the revelations he received were from the archangel Gabriel.

The understanding that Muhammed was an unlettered-prophet comes from the word Ummi in Sura 7:155-158 (Y. Ali translation):

“And Moses chose seventy of his people for Our place of meeting: when they were seized with violent quaking, he prayed: "O my Lord! if it had been Thy will Thou couldst have destroyed, long before, both them and me: wouldst Thou destroy us for the deeds of the foolish ones among us? this is no more than Thy trial: by it Thou causest whom Thou wilt to stray, and Thou leadest whom Thou wilt into the right path. Thou art our Protector: so forgive us and give us Thy mercy; for Thou art the best of those who forgive. And ordain for us that which is good, in this life and in the Hereafter: for we have turned unto Thee." He said: "With My punishment I visit whom I will; but My mercy extendeth to all things. That (mercy) I shall ordain for those who do right, and practise regular charity, and those who believe in Our signs; - Those who follow the apostle, *the unlettered Prophet (al-nabiyya al-ummiyya)*, whom they find mentioned in their own (scriptures), - *in the law and the Gospel*; - for he commands them what is just and forbids them what is evil; he allows them as lawful what is good (and pure) and prohibits them from what is bad (and impure); He releases them from their heavy burdens and from the yokes that are upon them. So it is those who believe in him, honour him, help him, and follow the light which is sent down with him, - it is they who will prosper." Say: "O men! I am sent unto you all, as the Apostle of God, to Whom belongeth the dominion of the heavens and the earth: there is no god but He: it is He That giveth both life and death. So believe in God and His Apostle, *the Unlettered Prophet (al-nabiyyi al-ummiyyi)*, who believeth in God and His words: follow him that (so) ye may be guided."

Muslims have traditionally interpreted the word ummi to refer to somebody who is illiterate, i.e. someone who can neither read nor write. They claim that Muhammad was such a prophet.

New scholarship indicates that the word ummi may refer not to a person who cannot read or write, but to a person who was not schooled in the scriptures, much like in the New Testament when the high priests claimed the same about the apostles in Acts 4:13, “Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marveled; and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Jesus.”

Some of the apostles were businessmen, such as fishermen. I doubt if any businessman can conduct business by being completely illiterate, though Muhammed conducted business on behalf of a rich woman Khadija, who became his first wife.

I do not know Arabic. Muslim scholars claim that the Quran is NOT translatable into other languages. The English translations are their best efforts, which are all I have read. From reading the English translations, it is quite evident that the verses in the Quran were not dictated by a well-educated person. It is not coherent in most places.

Muhammed’s claim is that the archangel Gabriel revealed the Quran to him. Contrast that with what the Bible describes with whom the archangel Gabriel communicated. He communicated with Daniel the prophet, an intellectual giant of His day, belonging to royalty, number two or three man in the greatest empires of his time. Gabriel also communicated with Mary the mother of Jesus who was also of the royal lineage of David.

Most of the men who wrote the Bible were intellectual giants of their times. Abraham communicated with servants of the Pharaoh of Egypt and taught them science, astronomy and mathematics. That was a major factor in rise of Egypt to prominence. That knowledge was passed on to his sons Isaac and Jacob. Joseph was an intellectual giant of his day. One of the canals in the irrigation system he created in Egypt still exists today and carries the name Yusuf Bahr. Job, the writer of the book that bears his name (Genesis 46:13) was a nephew and contemporary of Joseph and was the builder of the Great Pyramid of Gizeh which still stands today.

Isaiah the prophet was royalty. Samuel, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Ezra were priests and the most literate people of their day who wrote or edited major portions. David and wisest man who ever lived after Jesus Christ, king Solomon, were royalty. All the other prophets were men of means to have been able to afford a copy of the scriptures. Each of the prophets was very well versed with the scriptures. They were well connected in the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, and were well aware of what went on in the neighboring kingdoms to have prophesied about them.

The apostles were businessmen, tax collectors and otherwise learned men, though not formally taught in the schools of the Pharisees and Sadducees as was Paul the apostle. They were not illiterate. They knew the scriptures. They were able to write scripture in Greek, a foreign language.

The real God simply does not work with illiterate people, or people who were not already well-versed with the scriptures. It is evident that Muhammed had absolutely no knowledge of the existing scriptures that Allah claims he gave to the Jews and Christians, the Taurat (the Old Testament) and the Injil (the New Testament). Can you imagine the Bible prophesying about the coming of a prophet who would have no knowledge of what He had revealed before him in the scriptures?

It was a demon masquerading around as the archangel Gabriel who communicated with Mohammed, and not the real archangel Gabriel. That is another reason why the Quran is not inspired by God. It’s worse than that. It is Satan-inspired. It has the words of Satan the devil masquerading as the God of the Bible.

Muslims should recognize that Muhammed as a prophet is so antithetical to what the prophets in the Bible were. They should stop believing in the lies in the Quran, perpetuated by their Imams, Maulvis and other religious leaders because that’s how they make a decent living, and derive their power and hold over the people.

**CHAPTER 21**

**The Miracle of the Quran**

Muslims are taught that the Quran is a miracle because not a letter in it has been changed from what was revealed to Muhammed, and it is the same in Arabic no matter in what nation it is read. That’s why they claim it is the unaltered and infallible word of God. There are incredible lies in the Quran, and there are also equally incredible lies about the Quran and Muhammed by those who preach Islam.

Religious leaders must preach that the Quran is the infallible, unaltered word of God for their followers to continue following them. Otherwise they will lose their lucrative livelihoods, and the honor and respect they receive from their followers. Since the Quran attacks the Bible, they also have to preach lies that the Bible has been altered.

If the Muslims are searching for the truth, there is plenty of well researched material available on the Internet to nail the lie that the Quran that Muslims have now has been transmitted through the centuries unaltered even to a letter being missing or out of place.

The Ayatollahs, Mullahs, Imams, Maulvis and Qazis have an axe to grind by maintaining lies about the Quran and Muhammed. But government leaders in Muslim countries also lack courage because they can easily search out the truth by research. But they don’t want to upset the strongly held beliefs of the people as they will then lose their power. Therefore, the Muslim population continues to be deceived.

I suggest Muslims just go to the Internet and look at abundantly compiled evidence that shows how ridiculous the whole idea is that a scripture as large as the Quran could have been transmitted orally without any variation.

Here is a brief summary of the evidence that the Quran has not been transmitted through the centuries without a single letter having been changed in it. It is summarized from the material compiled by John Gilchrist.

The Quran was never compiled into a single text during the life of Muhammed as he received most of his revelation towards the end of his life. He started receiving revelation when he was 40 years old in 610 A.D., and continued receiving them till his sudden death in 632 A.D. But after his death, there could be no new revelations. During his life, the Quran was recited orally, though some portions may have been put to writing by some reciters.

According to *Sahih al Bukhari*, Muhammed’s successor Abu Bakr then felt the need to compile it in written form. John Gilchrist writes:

“It was only after Muhammad’s death that the first attempts were made to compile written manuscripts of the whole Qur’an text. The same source [*Sahih al Bukhari*] states that Abu Bakr, Muhammad’s immediate successor, encouraged a well-known reciter of the Qur’an, Zaid ibn-Thabit, to collect it. This young man recorded that he had to acquire it from *various* sources, namely palm-leaf stalks, thin white stones and other materials upon which parts of it had been recorded as well as from the memories from those who learnt it by heart. At least one verse was found with only one person, Abi Khuzaima al-Ansari (*Sahih al-Bukhari*, Vol. 6, p. 478). Taken together, these were hardly the ideal source for a perfect, inerrant compilation.

“At the time this manuscript had very little significance other than being commissioned by the Caliph himself. It receded into the private custody of Hafsah, one of the widows of Muhammad (*Sahih al-Bukhari*, Vol. 6, p. 478). Other codices were soon put together by close companions of Muhammad.”

Muhammed mentioned four greatest authorities of the Quran from whom Muslims should learn it. Besides Zaid ibn-Thabit, the other three were: Abdullah ibn Masud, Salim, the freed slave of Abu Hudhaifa, and Ubayy ibn Kab. The Quran compiled by Ubayy ibn Kab became the preferred text in Syria.

Besides these four, others compiled their own codices of the Quran. Those of Ali, Ibn Abbas, Abu Musa, Anas ibn Malik and Ibn az-Zubair are well-documented by historians of Islam.

Uthman Ibn Affan was the third successor caliph of Mohammed. Word came to him that in there were considerable differences in the readings of the Quran in the various provinces. He ruled from Medina. John Gilchrist writes:

“Uthman decided to unite the people on a *mushaf wahid* (single text) and, after calling for Zaid’s codex which was conveniently in Medina in Hafsah’s [one of the widows of Muhammed] possession where the caliph had his seat of government, he ordered Zaid with three others to transcribe his manuscript into seven exact replica copies and to send one copy to each province with the order that all the other manuscripts of the Qur’an in existence be burnt (*Sahih al-Bukhari*, Vol. 6, p. 479). The codices of Abdullah ibn Mas’ud and Ubayy ibn Ka’b were specially singled out and both were destroyed.

“Abdullah ibn Mas’ud at first strongly resisted the order. Zaid’s copy had never been standardised as an official text and it was used purely as a matter of convenience, being close at hand in Medina and not identified with any particular group of Muslims. Abdullah complained that he had directly obtained seventy surahs from Muhammad while Zaid was still a young child – why should he now forsake what he had acquired? (Ibn Abi Dawud, *Kitab al-Masahif*, p. 15). He also plainly stated that he preferred the Qur’anic recitation of Muhammad himself to that of Zaid, implying that he did not regard Zaid’s codex as completely authentic and adding that "the people have been guilty of deceit in the reading of the Qur’an" (Ibn Sa’d, *Kitab al-Tabaqat al-Kabir*, Vol. 2, p. 444).

“Although there is abundant evidence that Zaid’s codex was only one of a number of early manuscripts and had no grounds for being regarded as the best available, least of all a totally authentic copy, it became standardised by Uthman as the official text of the Qur’an and remains so to this day.”

If Muslims want to believe a lie, that’s their prerogative. But this is irrefutable evidence that the Quran was not transmitted without a single letter being missing or out of place from what was revealed to Muhammed. The need to burn all other manuscripts arose out of differences in the various manuscripts of the Quran.

That is not the end of the story of differences in the Quran. The Quran as available today is also incomplete as it has whole suras and verses missing. Gilchrist writes: Abdullah ibn Umar had this to say in the very early days of Islam: Let none of you say "I have acquired the whole of the Qur’an". How does he know what all of it is when much of the Qur’an has disappeared? Rather let him say "I have acquired what has survived." (As-Suyuti, *Al Itqan fii ‘Ulum al-Qur’an*, p. 524).

Also, there is not one version of the Quran that has been transmitted through the centuries. Here is a quote from an Encyclopedia of Islam:

“Certain variant readings (of the Qur'an) existed and, indeed, persisted and increased as the Companions who had memorised the text died, and because the inchoate (basic) Arabic script, lacking vowel signs and even necessary diacriticals to distinguish between certain consonants, was inadequate. ... In the 4th Islamic century, it was decided to have recourse (to return) to "readings" (qira'at) handed down from seven authoritative "readers" (qurra'); in order, moreover, to ensure accuracy of transmission, two "transmitters" (rawi, pl. ruwah) were accorded to each. There resulted from this, seven basic texts (al-qira'at as-sab', "the seven readings"), each having two transmitted versions (riwayatan) with only minor variations in phrasing, but all containing meticulous vowel-points and other necessary diacritical marks. ... The authoritative "readers" are:

Nafi` (from Medina; d. 169/785); Ibn Kathir (from Mecca; d. 119/737); Abu `Amr al-`Ala' (from Damascus; d. 153/770); Ibn `Amir (from Basra; d. 118/736); Hamzah (from Kufah; d. 156/772); al-Qisa'i (from Kufah; d. 189/804); Abu Bakr `Asim (from Kufah; d. 158/778)

(Cyril Glassé, *The Concise Encyclopedia of Islam*, p. 324).

In his article “*The Different Arabic Versions of the Quran*” author Samuel Green then goes on to identify the differences in two of the versions that are read in various countries. (article available at: https://answering-islam.org/Green/seven.htm).

Nothing further needs to be said on this issue. There is plenty of evidence available to refute the lie that the Quran has been transmitted through 1,400 years unchanged even in a single letter (or dot) being missing or misplaced since the time it was revealed to Muhammed. Muslims who want to know the truth can research and verify it quite easily.

Muslims, also understand that your religious leaders deceive you, and they keep you in check by inciting murder on those who question or leave the faith. Blasphemy laws are designed to do just that. That’s why Muslim religious leaders are doubly the children of the devil, just in order that they can keep making a great living and force their followers to honor and respect them. But that is not going to gain salvation for you or provide you protection in the approaching catastrophes on the world.

**CHAPTER 22**

**Abraham built the Kaaba**

Another obvious lie told in the Quran is that Abraham was willing to sacrifice his son Ishmael, whereas the Bible says Abraham was willing to sacrifice his son Isaac. The verses in the Quran that refer to Abraham’s willingness to sacrifice his son in the Quran are Sura 37:99-105:

“99. He said: "I will go to my Lord! He will surely guide me 100. "O my Lord! Grant me a righteous (son)!" 101. So We gave him the good news of a forbearing son. 102. Then, when (the son) reached (the age of) (serious) work with him, he said: "O my son! I have seen in a vision that I offer thee in sacrifice: now see what is thy view!" (The son) said: "O my father! Do as thou art commanded: thou will find me, if Allah so wills, one of the steadfast!" 103. So when they had both submitted (to Allah), and he had laid him prostrate on his forehead (for sacrifice), 104. We called out to him "O Abraham! ...105. "Thou hast already fulfilled the vision!" - thus indeed do We reward those who do right.”

Nowhere in the Quran is Ishmael identified as the son that Abraham was willing to sacrifice, whereas the Bible mentions Isaac by name. Islamic leaders are simply twisting scriptures to make their followers believe lies in attempts to make their religion look superior to Christianity and every other religion. But blatant lies, plain for everyone to see, cannot make it so.

Another related lie is that Abraham built the Kaaba in Mecca with Ishmael. The way to prove that is to find out where all Abraham journeyed.

God told Abraham in Genesis 13:17, “17 Arise, walk through the land in the length of it and in the breadth of it; for I will give it to you.” At that time verse 12 records that Abraham lived in the land of Canaan: “12 Abram dwelled in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelled in the cities of the plain, and pitched his tent toward Sodom.” Later God promises to his descendants ‘this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the River Euphrates’ (Genesis 15:18-21) Thus, God promised the land of Canaan to Abraham, from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates, and not around Mecca in Arabia which was 700 miles away to the southeast.

Bible records Abraham’s journeys. He came from Ur of the Chaldees to the land of Canaan. He experienced a famine and went to Egypt to find sustenance. He came back to Canaan from Egypt and lived about ten years in the land. Then Ishmael was born to his Egyptian wife Hagar. However, because of persecution from Sarah, Hagar fled towards Egypt where God’s angel met her and told her to submit herself to her mistress Sarah. Abraham was still moving up and down in the land of Canaan.

Following the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, we Abraham moved to Gerar, between Kadesh and Shur, where Isaac was born. Abraham settled down in Gerar and made treaties with the local chiefs, and dug wells for his flocks and cattle. Certainly, Abraham could not have journeyed to Mecca to build the Kaaba as Ishmael was still a child.

Then Hagar and Ishmael were cast out after God told him to follow Sarah’s advice. Hagar wandered in the south of Canaan in Beersheba to go towards Egypt. Abraham certainly did not go with her as Isaac was still a child, and Abraham had settled in Gerar.

Eventually Ishmael settled in the wilderness of Paran and took an Egyptian wife. Wilderness of Paran is mentioned on the Exodus route (numbers 12:16). The Israelites Exodus route definitely did not include Arabia. The Wilderness of Paran is therefore within the Sinai Peninsula, which most Bible atlases show. Therefore, Ishmael was nowhere near Arabia at this time.

Then Abraham is asked to sacrifice his son Isaac at Mt. Moriah, which is in Jerusalem. It took Abraham three days to reach Mt. Moriah from where he lived. He definitely still lived in the land of Canaan, and nowhere near Mecca.

Then Sarah dies, and Abraham buys the Cave of Machpela to bury her, still in Canaan. Then Abraham sends his servant to Mesopotamia to find a wife for Isaac. In Genesis 24:3, he takes an oath from his servant not to get a wife from among the daughters of the Canaanites for his son among whom he dwelt. (Genesis 24:3: And I will make you swear by the Lord, the God of heaven, and the God of the earth, that you shall not take a wife unto my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell.” Thus Abraham was still dwelling in the land of Canaan.

Think! Would God allow Abraham to build a tomb in Canaan and then ask him to build a temple 1000 miles away in the barren Hijaz, in Mecca, and then why would Abraham not take a wife for Isaac from among the daughters of the local tribes in the Hijaz? The reason is obvious. Abraham was never in Mecca. Then Abraham died and both his sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him in the Cave of Machpela. That means both were still living close to the land of Canaan, and not 1,000 miles away in Mecca. This proves that Ishmael was also never in Mecca.

None of Muhammed’s people had claimed to be prophets before him (*Salih al Bukhari*, Vol 1, Book 1 # 6). In addition, the Quran also states that there were no prophets among the Arabs around Mecca. Sura 11:49 states:

[**11.49**] These are announcements relating to the unseen which We reveal to you, you did not know them-- (neither) you nor your people-- before this; therefore, be patient; surely the end is for those who guard (against evil).

In an article titled “*Did Abraham Build the Kaaba*,” Jesse Toller [available at www.answering-islam.org] quotes the scholar Alfred Guillaume: ‘"... there is no historical evidence for the assertion that Abraham or Ishmael was ever in Mecca, and if there had been such a tradition it would have to be explained how all memory of the Old Semitic name Ishmael (which was not in its true Arabian form in Arabian inscriptions and written correctly with an initial consonant Y) came to be lost. The form in the Quran is taken either from Greek or Syriac sources." (Alfred Guillaume, *Islam* [Penguin Books Inc., Baltimore, 1956], pp. 61-62).

There is a complete lack of mention of Mecca in ancient records even during Roman times and prior to that. Mecca simply did not exist at the time of Abraham and Ishmael. It may have been built much later by Ishmael’s descendants, and became an important trading post and place of worship much later.

Thus, the Muslim claim that Abraham and Ishmael built the Kaaba at Mecca also stands exposed as diabolical Satanic lie, which continues to be perpetuated by the Islamic clergy because of their vested interests.

**CHAPTER 23**

**Conclusion**

We have exposed the numerous lies in the Quran, and the lies spread by Islam’s clergy about the Quran and Muhammed. Quran is a very cunningly crafted lie of Satan the devil to generate hatred and war between the Arab and Turk world against the Jews and descendants of the ten tribes of Israel who live in America, British Commonwealth nations, and countries of northwest Europe, and other Christians. Satan has been very successful in doing so.

We have proved that Quran is not the word of God, because it fails our test of giving numerous prophecies which came true as evidence of the power of Almighty God behind them. Muhammed has also failed all the signs of being a prophet.

Using the same test, only the Bible has been proved to be the true word of God. The Bible would definitely not be silent about the rise of the great Islamic empires, those of the Arabs and Turks. Here are those prophecies.

***Rise of Arab and Turkish Empires Prophesied in the Bible***

The Arabs are the descendants of Ishmael the son of Abraham. God in His blessings on Ishmael stated in Genesis 17:20 (NKJV) states: “20 And as for Ishmael, I have heard you [Abraham]. Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly. He shall beget twelve princes, and I will make him a great nation.”

The promise to Ishmael is repeated through his mother Hagar in Genesis 21:17-17 (NKJV), “17 And God heard the voice of the lad [Ishmael]. Then the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said to her, "What ails you, Hagar? Fear not, for God has heard the voice of the lad where he is. 18 Arise, lift up the lad and hold him with your hand, for I will make him a great nation."

The descendants of Ishmael never became a great nation until the Islamic Empire founded by Mohammad. After the successors of Mohammad, the Umayyad Caliphate ruled from 661 – 750 A.D which was followed by the Abbasid Caliphate which ruled from 750 A.D till 1258 A.D.

At the time of the Abbasids Europe lay in the Dark Ages while the torch of civilization in the form of preserving literature and scientific learning in the form of knowledge of mathematics, chemistry, physics, medicine, geography and astronomy was kept burning by Islam. Thus, God fulfilled His promise to Ishmael to make him a great nation, the greatest on earth during the zenith of its power.

The Turks are descendants of Isaac’s son Esau or Edom. They too became a great nation during the time of the Ottoman Empire. Their dominion was also prophesied in the Bible.

Genesis 27:39-41 states, “39 And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, your dwelling shall be [other translations add ‘away from’ here] the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; 40 And by your sword shall you live, and shall serve your brother [Jacob]; and it shall come to pass when you shall have the dominion that you shall break his yoke from off your neck.”

Thus, the descendants of Esau were also to have dominion or rule, but they were not to be the ‘great nation’ of their time. The Ottoman Empire has not been the greatest Empire of its time whereas the Arab empire of the descendants of Ishmael was. But the Ottoman Empire was a great Empire. They did have dominion as prophesied in God’s promise to Esau.

Though the Quran never specifically prophesied the greatness of the Islamic Empires, the Bible did prophesy the rise of the Islamic Empires in the blessings to the original ancestors of the nations.

With fulfillment of prophecies being the only true test to prove that a holy book is the word of God, only the Bible contains truth. Th scriptures of Hinduism, Sikhism and Islam are not God-inspired. They are deceptions of Satan the devil, with the Quran being a particularly diabolical one.

My job is to force Hindus, Sikhs and Muslims to confront reality. But the decision to accept reality after thorough evaluation and proof, or to continue following your false beliefs and traditions inherited from ancestors is entirely yours. You have to make that choice. My responsibility is to warn you, that if you continue in your traditions, do not expect guaranteed help from the true God to help you and your family come out alive through the coming Third World War and the further horrible catastrophes that will follow.

I have now done my job. I am no longer guilty of any Hindu, Sikh or Muslim blood if any perish in the coming catastrophes.

It requires courage to break free from the bonds of tradition, the way you have lived all your life. It is extremely difficult to admit that one has inherited lies and lived the way of falsehood all your life. It is hard to admit that one has been fooled by Satan the devil. A person who may decide to change also has to take into consideration the almost certain estrangement, criticism, taunting, ridicule and likely persecution from family, friends, acquaintances and business associates. In the case of Islam, because of the stranglehold of the Islamic clerics over the religion, those who change from Islam face nearly certain death.

I was originally a Sikh from my father’s side whereas all on my mother’s side were Hindus. So, I had to face the decision to change my religion myself. In my case, when I set out to search for the truth, I had determined before I began my search that if I found the truth, I will give my religion and follow only the truth wholeheartedly. When I found it, I did not waver in adopting it.

Many in mainstream Christianity agree with what the Church of God believes. They know that the festivals such as Christmas, Easter and the like they observe, and Sunday worship in place of keeping the Sabbath from Friday sunset to Saturday sunset holy have come from paganism. But they lack the personal courage to break free from those traditions. They love the praise of men more than the praise of God. I hope the Hindus, Sikhs and Muslims will be more courageous than that and give up the falsehoods they have inherited from their respective religions.

In the case of Muslims, I would counsel them to migrate to other countries if possible before they change their religion, and declare their change. I hope some countries will allow such Muslims who change their religion to migrate temporarily to their countries to avoid persecution.

But again, the only guaranteed way to escape all end-time catastrophes alive is through God’s help. And God promises help only to those who follow the truth. To learn more about the true way, please read my book “*The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-Time Catastrophes*,” available free at my website [www.ChurchofGodMessage.com](http://www.ChurchofGodMessage.com). The link is: http://www.churchofgodmessage.com/the-only-guaranteed-way-to-escape-end-time-catastrophes.html

**SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER READING**

Please read the following books and booklets available free at my web site [www.ChurchofGodMessage.com](http://www.ChurchofGodMessage.com)

1. “Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”

2. “Which Religion is True?”

3. “The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-time Catastrophes”

4. “Jews: Behold your God”

5. “World in Bible Prophecy”

6. “India in Bible Prophecy”

The following booklets are available free at the United Church of God website [www.ucg.org/Beyond-Today](http://www.ucg.org/Beyond-Today)/

7. “United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy”

8. “Jesus Christ: The Real Story”

9. “Is there Really a Devil?”

10. “Fundamental Beliefs of the United Church of God”

11. “Is God a Trinity”

The following book written by Herbert W. Armstrong is available free at the Philadelphia Church of God website [www.pcog.org](http://www.pcog.org):

12. “Mystery of the Ages”